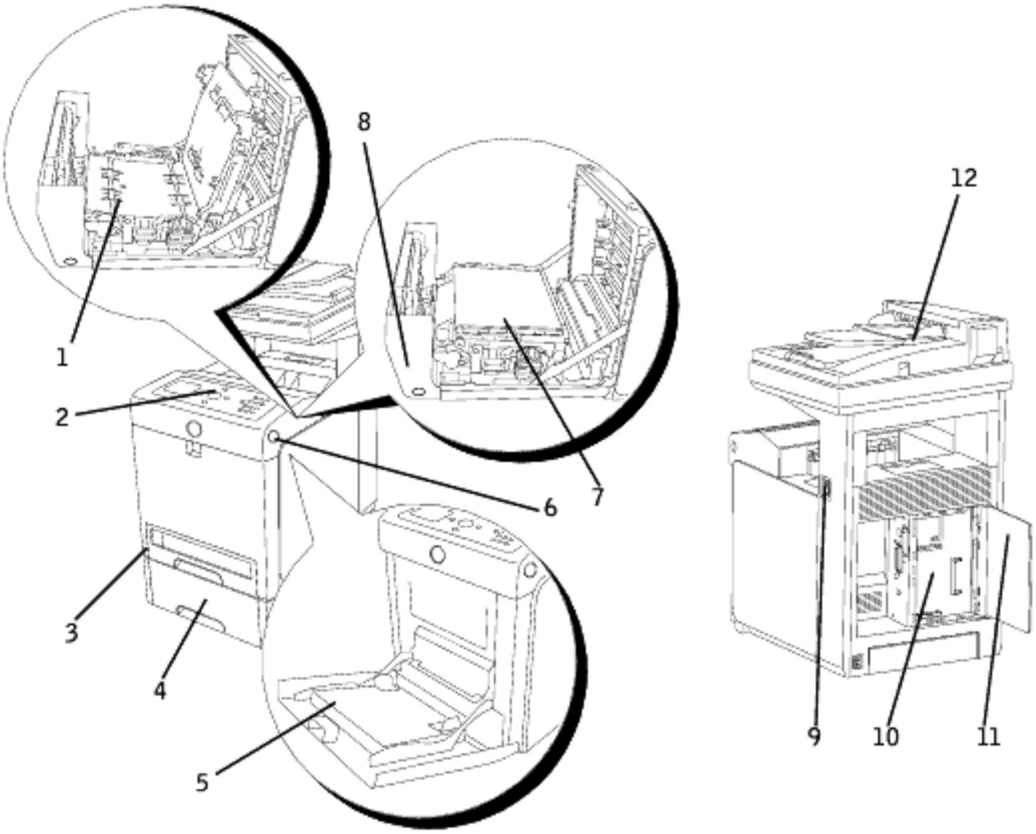
Dell™ Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn User's Guide

- Notes, Notices, and Cautions

Click the links to the left for information on the features, options, and operation of your multifunction printer. For information on other documentation included with your multifunction printer, see "Finding Information."

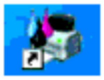


1	Optional duplexer	7	Transfer belt unit
2	Operator panel	8	Front cover **NOTE:** You can open the front cover by pushing the button (right side).
3	Standard 250-sheet tray	9	Power switch
4	Optional 550-sheet paper feeder **NOTE:** Your multifunction printer allows for a maximum of three trays	10	Control board

	(standard 250-sheet tray, optional 550-sheet paper feeder, and multipurpose feeder).		
5	Multipurpose feeder	11	Control board cover
6	Button (right side)	12	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)

To order replacement print cartridges or supplies from Dell:

1. Double-click the icon on your desktop.



2. Visit Dell's website, or order Dell printer supplies by phone.

   www.dell.com/supplies

   For best service, have your Dell printer Service Tag available.

   For help locating your Service Tag number, see "Express Service Code and Service Tag number."

Notes, Notices, and Cautions

NOTE: A **NOTE** indicates important information that helps you make better use of your multifunction printer.

NOTICE: A **NOTICE** indicates either potential damage to hardware or loss of data and tells you how to avoid the problem.

CAUTION: A CAUTION indicates a potential for property damage, personal injury, or death.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice.

© 2008 Dell Inc. All rights reserved.

Reproduction in any manner whatsoever without the written permission of Dell Inc. is strictly forbidden.

Trademarks used in this text: *Dell*, the *DELL* logo and *Dell ScanCenter* are trademarks of Dell Inc.; Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server, and Windows Vista are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries; *Macintosh, MacOS, EtherTalk* and *TrueType* are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries; *AppleTalk* is a registered trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries; *UNIX* is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries; *Red Hat* and *RPM* are trademarks or registered trademarks of Red Hat Inc. in the United States and other countries; *Linux* is a trademark or registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States and other countries; *The Common UNIX Printing System, CUPS,* and the *CUPS* logo are the trademarks of Easy Software Products; PCL is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard in the United

States; *ENERGY STAR* is a registered trademark of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. As an ENERGY STAR Partner, Dell Inc. has determined that this product meets the ENERGY STAR guidelines for energy efficiency.

As for libtiff

Copyright © 1988-1997 Sam Leffler

Copyright © 1991-1997 Silicon Graphics, Inc.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS-IS" AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL SAM LEFFLER OR SILICON GRAGHICS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER OR NOT ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF DAMAGE, AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

This software uses the Independent JPEG Group's JPEG software library. Other trademarks and trade names may be used in this document to refer to either the entities claiming the marks and names or their products. Dell Inc. disclaims any proprietary interest in trademarks and trade names other than its own.

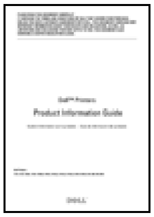
UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS

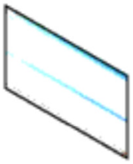
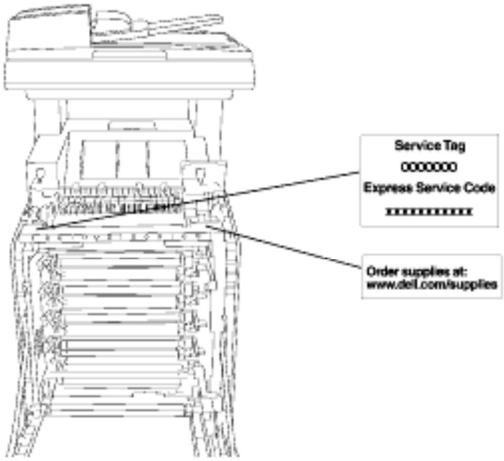
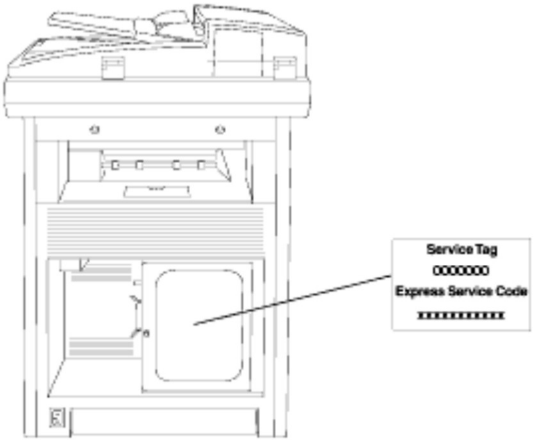
This software and documentation are provided with RESTRICTED RIGHTS. Use, duplication or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227-7013 and in applicable FAR provisions: Dell Inc., One Dell Way, Round Rock, Texas, 78682, USA.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules.

November 2008 Rev. A02

Finding Information

What are you looking for?	Find it here
· Drivers for my multifunction printer · My *User's Guide*	*Drivers and Utilities* CD The *Drivers and Utilities* CD contains documentation and drivers for your multifunction printer. You can use the CD to uninstall/reinstall drivers or access your documentation. Readme files may be included on your CD to provide last-minute updates about technical changes to your multifunction printer or advanced technical reference material for experienced users or technicians.
· Safety information · How to use my multifunction printer · Warranty information	*Owner's Manual* ⚠ **CAUTION: Read and follow all safety instructions in your *Owner's Manual* prior to setting up and operating your multifunction printer.** NOTE: The *Owner's Manual* may not be available in your country or region.
· Safety information · Warranty information	*Product Information Guide*  **CAUTION: Read and follow all safety instructions in the *Product Information Guide* prior to setting up and operating your multifunction printer.** NOTE: The *Product Information Guide* may not be available in your country or region.
How to set up my multifunction printer	*Setup diagram*

	
Troubleshooting Guide	Troubleshooting Guide: - User Settings - Configuration - Troubleshooting Instructions - Others
Express Service Code and Service Tag number	 Service Tag 0000000 Express Service Code xxxxxxxxxxx Order supplies at: www.dell.com/supplies  Service Tag 0000000 Express Service Code xxxxxxxxxxx The Express Service Code and Service Tag numbers are located inside the front door of your multifunction printer.
· Latest drivers for my multifunction printer · Answers to technical service and support questions · Documentation for my multifunction	Dell Support Website The Dell Support Website provides several online tools, including: · Solutions — Troubleshooting hints and tips, articles from technicians, and online courses · Upgrades — Upgrade information for components, such as memory · Customer Care — Contact information, order status, warranty, and repair

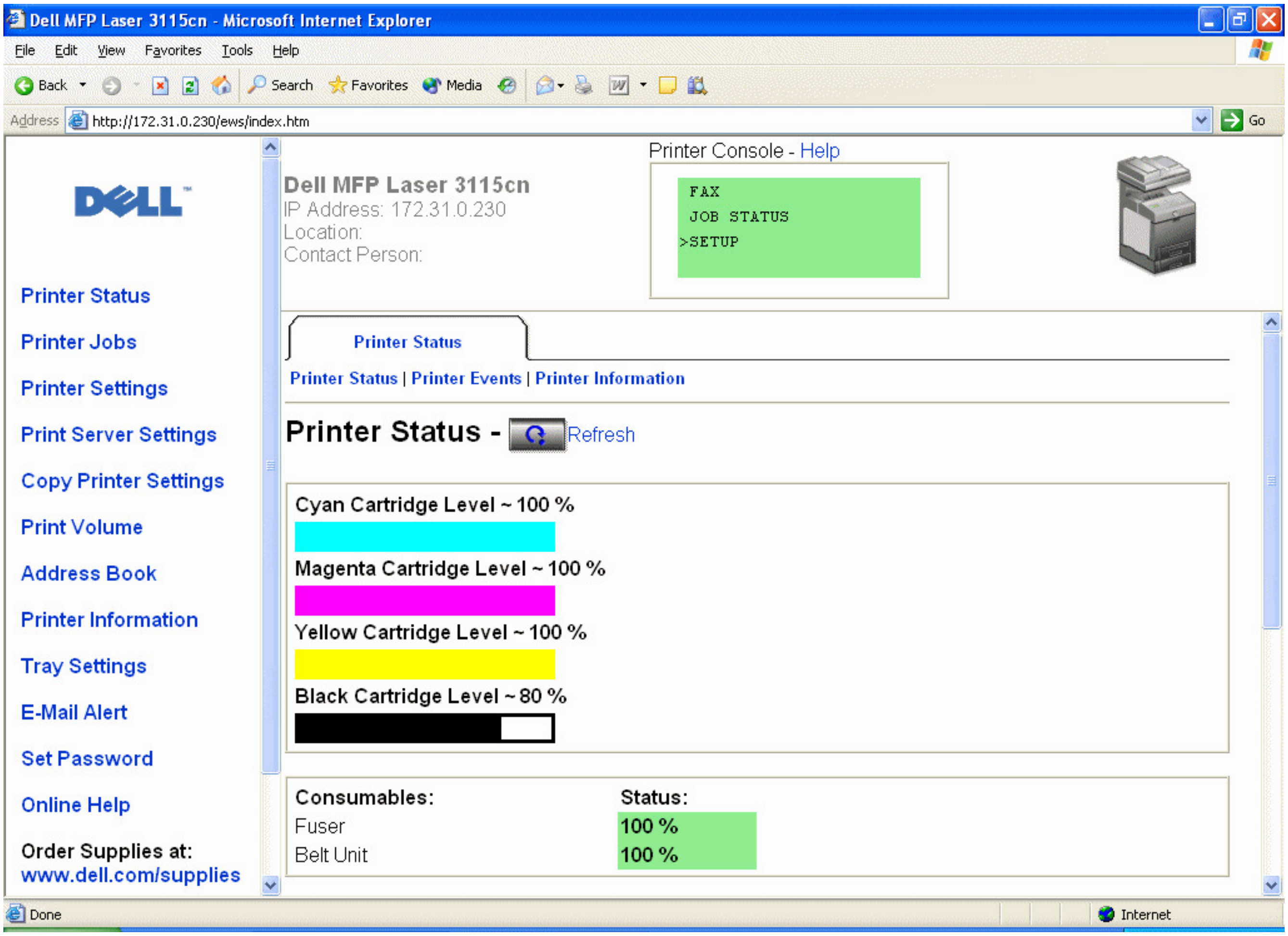
printer	information · Downloads — Drivers · Reference — Multifunction printer documentation and product specifications You can access Dell Support at **support.dell.com**. Select your region on the support page, and fill in the requested details to access help tools and information.

Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

- [Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool]()

One of the features of the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is the E-Mail Alert Setup, which sends you or the key operator an e-mail when the multifunction printer needs supplies or intervention.

To fill out printer inventory reports requiring the asset tag number of all of the multifunction printer in your area, use the Printer Information feature in the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. Just type the IP address of each printer on the network to display the asset tag number.


Dell MFP Laser 3115cn - Microsoft Internet Explorer
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
Back Search Favorites Media
Address http://172.31.0.230/ews/index.htm Go
DELL
Printer Status
Printer Jobs
Printer Settings
Print Server Settings
Copy Printer Settings
Print Volume
Address Book
Printer Information
Tray Settings
E-Mail Alert
Set Password
Online Help
Order Supplies at:
www.dell.com/supplies
Printer Console - Help
FAX
JOB STATUS
>SETUP
Printer Status
Printer Status | Printer Events | Printer Information
Refresh
Done
Internet

Dell MFP Laser 3115cn
IP Address: 172.31.0.230
Location:
Contact Person:

Printer Status - Refresh

Cyan Cartridge Level ~ 100 %
Magenta Cartridge Level ~ 100 %
Yellow Cartridge Level ~ 100 %
Black Cartridge Level ~ 80 %

Consumables:	Status:
Fuser	100 %
Belt Unit	100 %

The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** feature also lets you change printer settings and keep track of printing trends. If you are a network administrator, you can easily copy the printer's settings to one or all printers on the network using your Web browser.

To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, type your network printer's IP address in your Web browser.

If you do not know what your printer's IP address is, print a printer settings page, which lists the IP address:

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Reports` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. `System Settings` is displayed. Press ✓ .

   The system settings page is printed.

If the IP address shows `0.0.0.0` (the factory default), an IP address has not been assigned. To assign one for your multifunction printer, see "[Assign an IP Address]()."

Use the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** for:

Printer Status

Use the **Printer Status** menu to get immediate feedback on printer supply status. When print cartridge is running low, click the Order Supplies link on the first screen to order additional print cartridges.

Printer Jobs

Use the **Printer Jobs** menu to contain information on **Job List** page and **Completed Jobs** page.
These pages show the details of the status regarding each protocol or the print jobs.

Printer Settings

Use the **Printer Settings** menu to change printer settigns and view the operator panel remotely.

Print Server Settings

Using the **Print Server Settings** menu, you can change the type of printer interface and necessary conditions for communications.

Copy Printer Settings

Use the **Copy Printer Settings** menu to copy the printer's settings to another printer or printers on the network just by typing each printer's IP address.

NOTE: You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

Address Book

Use the **Address Book** menu to organize E-Mail Address, Server Address and Phone Book.

Print Volume

Use the **Print Volume** option to keep track of printing trends, such as paper usage and types of jobs being printed, and limit which users use the color mode and the maximum number of pages they can print.

Printer Information

Use the **Printer Information** menu to get the information you need for service calls, inventory reports, or the status of current memory and engine code levels.

Tray Settings

Use the **Tray Settings** menu to get the information about the paper type and size for each tray.

E-Mail Alert

Use the **E-Mail Alert** menu to receive an e-mail when the multifunction printer needs supplies or intervention. Type your name or the key operator's name in the e-mail list box to be notified.

Set Password

Use the **Set Password** menu to lock the operator panel with a password so that other users don't inadvertently change the printer settings you selected.

NOTE: You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

Online Help

Click **Online Help** to visit the Dell web page, and see the *User's Guide* on that page to verify configured settings.

Order Supplies at:

www.dell.com/supplies

Contact Dell Support at:

support.dell.com

Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

Be sure to activate JavaScript in your browser before using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

Environment Settings for Web Browsers

Dell recommends configuring the environment settings for your Web browsers, before using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

NOTE: The Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool pages may be displayed unreadable if you browse the pages that were configured by using the browser of which language setting is different with your browser's.

For Internet Explorer 6.0/7.0

Setting Up the Display Language

1. Select **Preferences** from the **Edit** menu.
2. Select **Languages** in the **General** tab.
3. Specify the display language in order of preference in the **Language in order of preference** list.

   For example:
   Italian (Italy) [it]
   Spanish (Traditional Sort) [es]
   German (Germany) [de]
   French (France) [fr]
   English [en] or **English (United States) [en-us]**

Setting the Printer's IP Address to Non-proxy

1. Select Internet **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
2. Select Proxy server under **LAN Settings** in the **Connections** tab.
3. Do either of the following:
   - Clear the **Use a proxy sever for your LAN** check box.
   - Click **Advanced**, and then specify the printer's IP address in the **Do not use proxy server for addresses beginning with** field under **Exceptions**.

When you have finished setting the language and proxy, type `<http://nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn/>` (the printer's IP address) in the URL entry field of the browser to activate the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

For Netscape Communicator 7.1

Setting Up the Display Language

1. Select **Preferences** from the **Edit** menu.
2. Select **Languages** under the the **Navigator** group.
3. Specify the display language in order of preference in the **Language in order of preference** list.

   For example:
   English [en] or **English/United States [en-us]**
   German [de]
   French [fr]
   Italian [it]
   Spanish [es]
   Netherlands [nl]
   Norwegian [no]
   Swedish [sv]

Setting the Printer's IP Address to Non-proxy

1. Select **Preferences** from the **Edit** menu.
2. In the Navigator group, select **Proxies** in the **Advanced** tab.
3. Select either **Direct connection to the Internet** or **Manual proxy configuration**.
   When you select **Manual proxy configuration**, specify the printer's IP address in the **No Proxy for:** box.

When you have finished setting the language and proxy, type `<http://nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn/>` (the printer's IP address) in the URL entry field of the browser to activate the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

For Firefox 1.5 or Later

Setting Up the Display Language

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
2. In the Navigator group, select **Proxies** in the **Advanced** tab.
3. Click Edit Languages in the General tab.
4. Specify the display language in order of preference in the Language in order of preference list.

   For example:

   English [en] or **English/United States [en-gb]**
   Italian [it]
   Spanish [es]
   German [de]
   French [fr]
   Netherlands [nl]
   Norwegian [no]
   Swedish [sv]

Setting the Printer's IP Address to Non-proxy

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
2. Click General on the Options dialog box.
3. Click Connection Settings→Connection Settings.
4. Do one of the following:
    - "Select the Direct connection to the Internet check box.
    - "Select the Auto-detect proxy settings for this network check box
    - "Select the Manual proxy configuration check box, and then enter the printer's IP address in the No Proxy for edit box.
    - "Select the Automatic proxy configuration URL check box

When you have finished setting the language and proxy, type `<http://nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn/>` (the printer's IP address) in the URL entry field of the browser to activate the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Page Display Format

The layout of the page is divided into three sections mentioned below:

Top Frame

Located at the top of all pages is the Top Frame. When **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is activated, the current status and specifications of the multifunction printer are displayed in the Top Frame on every page.

The following items are displayed in the Top Frame.

Dell MFP Laser 3115cn	Displays the printer product name.
IP Address:	Displays the printer's IP address.
Location:	Displays the printer's location. The location can be changed in **Basic Information** on the **Print Server Settings** page.
Contact Person:	Displays the printer's administrator's name. The name can be changed in the **Basic Information** on the **Print Server Settings** page.
Printer Console	Displays the status of the printer operator panel display and indicators. This is automatically refreshed at the set interval. The interval can be changed in the **Basic Information** on **Print Server Settings** page.
Help	Links to the Dell web page. See the *User's Guide* on the Dell Support site for help on this product.
Printer Bitmap	Shows the printer bitmap. The **Printer Status** menu appears in the Right Frame by clicking the bitmap.

Left Frame

Located at the left side of all pages is the Left Frame. The titles of menus displayed in the Left Frame are linked to corresponding menus and pages. You can go to the corresponding page by clicking their characters.

The following menus are displayed in the Left Frame.

Printer Status	Links to the **Printer Status** menu.
Printer Jobs	Links to the **Printer Jobs** menu.
Printer Settings	Links to the **Printer Settings Report** menu.
Print Server Settings	Links to the **Print Server Reports** menu.
Copy Printer Settings	Links to the **Copy Printer Settings** menu.
Print Volume	Links to the **Print Volume** menu
Address Book	Links to the **Address Book** menu.
Printer Information	Links to the **Printer Status** menu.
Tray Settings	Links to the **Tray Settings** menu.
E-Mail Alert	Links to the **Print Server Settings** menu.
Set Password	Links to the **Other Features** menu.
Online Help	Links to the Dell web page. See the *User's Guide* on that page.
Order Supplies at:	Links to the Dell web page.
Contact Dell Support at:	Links to the Dell support page. Web address: **http://support.dell.com/**

Right Frame

Located at the right side of all pages is the Right Frame. The contents of the Right Frame correspond to the menu that you select in the Left Frame. For details on the items displayed in the Right Frame, see "Details of Menu Items."

Buttons on the Right Frame

Refresh Button	Receives the current printer configuration and updates the latest information in the Right Frame.
Apply New Settings Button	Submits new settings made on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to the multifunction printer. The old printer settings will be replaced by the new settings.
Restart printer to apply new settings Button	Submits new settings made on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to the multifunction printer and reboots the multifunction printer. The old printer settings will be replaced by the new settings.
Restore Settings Button	Restores the old settings from before changes made. New settings will not be submitted to the multifunction printer.

Changing the Settings of Menu Items

Some menus allow you to change the printer settings through the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. When you are accessing these menus, the authentication dialog appears on the screen. Type a user name and password for the printer's administrator by following the prompts displayed in the dialog box.

The default user name is **admin**, and the default password is left blank (NULL). You can change only the password in the **Set Password** page in the **Print Server Settings** menu. The user name cannot be changed. See "Set Password" for more information.

Details of Menu Items

"Printer Status"		"Printer Status"
		"Printer Events"
		"Printer Information"
"Printer Jobs"		"Job List"
		"Completed Jobs"
"Printer Settings"	"Printer Settings Report"	"Menu Settings"
		"Reports"
	"Printer Settings"	"System Settings"
		"Parallel Settings"
		"Network Settings"[*4]
		"USB Settings"[*4]
		"PCL Settings"
		"PS Settings"[*4]
		"Secure Settings"
		"Copy Defaults"
		"Copy Color Balance"
		"Copy Settings"
		"Scan Defaults"
		"Fax Defaults"
		"Fax Settings"
	"Printer Maintenance"	"Paper Density"
		"Adjust BTR"
		"Adjust Fuser"
		"Auto Registration Adjustment"
		"Color Registration Adjustments"
		"Adjust Altitude"
		"Reset Defaults"
		"Clear Storage"[*1]
		"Non-Dell Toner"
		"Initialize PrintMeter"
		"Clock Settings"

		"Web Link Customization"
"Print Server Settings"	"Print Server Reports"	"Print Server Setup Page"
		"NetWare Setup Page"*[2]
		"E-Mail Alert Setup Page"
	"Print Server Settings"	"Basic Information"
		"Port Settings"
		"Wireless LAN"*[3]
		"TCP/IP"
		"NetWare"*[2]
		"SMB"*[2]
		"AppleTalk"*[3]
		"E-Mail Alert"
		"Bonjour (mDNS)"*[2]
		"SNMP"
		"Scan to PC"
	"Other Features"	"Set Password"
		"Security"*[3]
		"IPsec"*[2]
		"Reset Print Server"
"Copy Printer Settings"		"Copy Printer Settings"
		"Copy Printer Settings Report"
"Print Volume"		"Print Volume"
		"Dell ColorTrack"
"Address Book"		"E-Mail Address"
		"Server Address - Top Page"
		"Phone Book"
"Tray Settings"		"Tray 1 Paper Type"
		"Tray 1 Paper Size"
		"Tray 1 Custom Size - Y"
		"Tray 1 Custom Size - X"
		"Tray 2 Paper Type"*[5]
		"Tray 2 Paper Size"*[5]
		"Tray 2 Custom Size - Y"*[5]
		"Tray 2 Custom Size - X"*[5]
		"MPF Mode"
		"Display Popup"
		"MPF Paper Type"
		"MPF Paper Size"
		"MPF Custom Size - Y"
		"MPF Custom Size - X"

*[1] This item is only available when the RAM disk is set to on.

*[2] This item is only available when the optional multi-protocol card is installed.

*[3] This item is only available when the optional wireless printer adapter is installed.

*[4] This item is only available with the printer using the PostScript driver.

*[5] This item is only available when the optional 550-sheet paper feeder is installed.

Printer Status

Use the **Printer Status** menu to check the status of consumables, hardware, and specifications of the multifunction printer.

The following pages are displayed in the **Printer Status** menu.

Printer Status

Purpose:

To check the status of remaining consumables and trays.

Values:

Cyan Cartridge Level **Magenta Cartridge Level** **Yellow Cartridge Level** **Black Cartridge Level**			Displays the percent of toner remaining in each print cartridge. When a cartridge is empty, a message appears. The text *Print Cartridge* is linked to the Dell Printer Supplies website.
Consumables	**Status**	**n%**	Indicates the toner remaining in each print cartridge as %. "n" is a number.
Paper Trays	**Status**	**OK**	Indicates that there is some paper in the tray but the quantity is unknown.
		Add Paper	Indicates that there is no paper in the tray.
	Capacity		Displays the maximum capacity of the paper tray.
	Size		Displays the size of paper in the tray.
Output Tray	**Status**	**OK**	Indicates that the tray is available.
	Capacity		Displays the maximum capacity of the paper tray.
Cover	**Status**	**Closed**	Indicates that the cover is closed.
		Open	Indicates that the cover is open.
Printer Type			Displays the type of printing for the multifunction printer. **Color Laser** is displayed normally.
Printing Speed			Displays the printing speed for the multifunction printer.

Printer Events

Purpose:

When printer faults occur such as *running out of paper* or *running out of print cartridge*, the details of all alerts or indications of faults are displayed in the **Printer Events** page.

Values:

Location	Displays the location where the printer fault occurred.
Details	Displays the details of the printer fault.

Printer Information

Purpose:

To verify the printer details such as hardware configuration and software version. This page can also be displayed by clicking **Printer Information** in the Left Frame.

Values:

Dell Service Tag Number		Displays Dell's service tag number.
Asset Tag Number		Displays the printer's asset tag number.
Printer Serial Number		Displays the printer's serial number.
Memory Capacity		Displays the memory capacity.
Processor Speed		Displays the processing speed.
Printer Revision Levels	**Firmware Version**	Displays the revision date (revision level).
	Network Firmware Version	Displays the revision date (revision level).

Printer Jobs

The **Printer Jobs** menu contains information on the **Job List** and **Completed Jobs** pages. These pages show the details of the status regarding each protocol or the print jobs.

Job List

Purpose:

To confirm the print jobs that are being processed. Click the **Refresh** button to update the screen.

Values:

ID	Displays the job id.
Job Name	Displays the file name of the job being printed.
Owner	Displays the job owner's name.
Host Name	Displays the name of the host computer.
Job Status	Displays the status of the job being printed.
Job Type	Displays the type of the job.
Host I/F	Displays the status of the host interface.
Job Submitted Time	Displays the date the print job was submitted.

Completed Jobs

Purpose:

To check the completed print jobs. Up to the last 22 print jobs are displayed. Click the **Refresh** button to update the screen.

Values:

Id	Displays the job id.
Job Name	Displays the file name of the completed print job.
Owner	Displays the job owner's name.
Host Name	Displays the name of the host computer.
Output Result	Displays the status of completed print jobs.
Job Type	Displays the type of the job.
Impression Number	Displays the number of pages in the print job.
No. of Sheets	Displays the number of sheets in the print job.
Host I/F	Displays the status of the host interface.
Job Submitted Time	Displays the date the print job was submitted.

Printer Settings

Use the **Printer Settings** menu to display the printer settings report and to configure printer settings.

The following tabbed pages are displayed at the top of the Right Frame.

Printer Settings Report

The **Printer Settings Report** tab includes the **Menu Settings** and **Reports** pages.

Menu Settings

Purpose:

To display the current settings of the operator panel menus.

Values:

System Settings	**Power Saver Mode2**	Displays the status for the power saver mode 2.
	Power Saver Timer Mode 1	Displays the amount of time before the multifunction printer enters the power saver timer mode 1 after it finishes a print job.
	Power Saver Timer Mode 2	Displays the amount of time before the multifunction printer enters the power saver timer mode 2 after it finishes a print job.
	Auto Reset	Displays the amount of time before the printer is reset.
	Panel Select Tone	Displays the selected tone for the panel.

	Panel Alert Tone	Displays the alert tone for the panel.
	Machine Ready Tone	Displays the tone when the machine becomes ready.
	Copy Job Tone	Displays the tone when copying starts.
	Non-Copy Job Tone	Displays the tone when copying is complete.
	Fault Tone	Displays the tone when an error occurs.
	Alert Tone	Displays whether the multifunction printer sounds an alarm when an error occurs.
	Out of Paper Tone	Displays the tone when the paper runs out.
	Low Toner Tone	Displays the tone when the toner is low.
	Auto Clear Alert Tone	Displays the tone when the jam is cleared.
	Base Tone	Displays the base tone.
	All Tones	Displays all tones.
	Time-Out	Displays specify the amount of time the multifunction printer waits to receive additional bytes of data from the computer.
	Panel Language	Displays the language of the text on the operator panel screen.
	Auto Log Print	Displays whether the printer outputs logs automatically.
	Print ID	Displays a location where the user ID is printed.
	Print Text	Displays whether the multifunction printer outputs PDL (Page Description Language) data, which is not supported by the multifunction printer, as text when the multifunction printer receives it
	Banner Sheet Insert Position	Displays the position of banner sheet.
	Banner Sheet Specify Tray	Displays the tray in which the banner sheet is loaded.
	RAM Disk	Displays whether to allocate memory to the RAM disk file system for the Secure Print and Proof Print features. This item is only available when the 256 MB, or higher, optional memory card is installed.
	Substitute Tray	Displays whether or not to use another size paper when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.
	mm/inch	Displays the measurement unit on the operator panel screen.
	Fax Activity	Displays the status for printing the fax activity.
	Fax Transmit	Displays the status for printing the fax transmission.
	Fax Broadcast	Displays the status for printing the fax broadcast.
	Protocol Monitor	Displays the status for printing the protocol monitor.
Parallel Settings	**ECP**	Displays the ECP (Extended Capability Port) communication mode of the parallel interface.
	Adobe Protocol	Displays PostScript communication protocol for each interface.
Network Settings	**Adobe Protocol**	Displays PostScript communication protocol for each interface.
USB Settings	**Adobe Protocol**	Displays PostScript communication protocol for each interface.
PCL Settings	**Paper Tray**	Displays the input tray.
	Paper Size	Displays the default paper size.
	Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of paper.
	Custom Size - X	Displays the width of paper.
	Orientation	Displays how text and graphics are oriented on the page.
	2 Sided	Displays whether to do duplexing as the default for all print jobs. This item is only available when the optional duplexer is installed.
	Font	Displays the default font from the registered fonts in the multifunction printer.
	Symbol Set	Displays a symbol set for a specified font.
	Font Size	Displays the font size for scalable typographic fonts.
	Font Pitch	Displays the font pitch for scalable monospaced fonts.
	Form Line	Displays the number of characters in a line.
	Quantity	Displays the number of copies you want for the printer default value.
	Image Enhancement	Displays whether to perform the image enhancement feature.

	Hex Dump	Displays whether the Hex Dump feature is on or off.	
	Draft Mode	Displays whether to print in the draft mode.	
	Line Termination	Displays whether to set the line termination.	
	Default Color	Displays the color mode setting.	
PS Settings	**PS Error Report**	Displays whether the multifunction printer outputs error contents for a PS (PostScript) error.	
	PS Job Time-Out	Displays the execution time for one PostScript job.	
	Paper Select Mode	Displays the tray that is selected in the PostScript printing.	
Secure Settings	**Panel Lock Set**	Displays whether or not to lock **Admin** menu with a password.	
	Copy/Scan/Fax Set	Displays whether or not to lock **Copy**, **Scan**, or **Fax** menus with a password.	
	Secure Receive Set	Displays whether or not to require the password for printing received fax documents.	
Copy Defaults	**Color**	Prints in the Color or Black&White mode.	
	Input Tray	The paper is fed from the selected tray.	
	Reduce/Enlarge	Enlarges or reduces the size of a copied image.	
	Custom Reduce/Enlarge	Reduces or enlarges the image to the custom size (25-400%) if Reduce/Enlarge is set to Custom.	
	Original Type	Uses for documents with both text or photo/gray tones.	
	Lighter/Darker	Works with light print or dark print.	
	Sharpness	Makes the copy sharper or softer than the original.	
	Color Saturation	Adjusts the amount of color to make the colors deeper or lighter than the original.	
	Auto Exposure	Adjusts the overall brightness to make the copy overexposed than the original.	
	Auto Exposure Level	Displays the level of the overall brightness.	
Copy Color Balance	**Yellow Low Dens.**	Displays the yellow low density.	
	Yellow Medium Dens.	Displays the yellow medium density.	
	Yellow High Dens.	Displays the yellow high density.	
	Magenta Low Dens.	Displays the magenta low density.	
	Magenta Medium Dens.	Displays the magenta medium density.	
	Magenta High Dens.	Displays the magenta high density.	
	Cyan Low Dens.	Displays the cyan low density.	
	Cyan Medium Dens.	Displays the cyan medium density.	
	Cyan High Dens.	Displays the cyan high density.	
	Black Low Dens.	Displays the black low density.	
	Black Medium Dens.	Displays the black medium density.	
	Black High Dens.	Displays the black high density.	
Copy Settings	**Auto Fit**	**On**	Fits the image on the paper currently loaded.
		Off*	Does not fit the image on the paper currently loaded.
	2Sided*[2]	**1->1Sided**	Does not print a 2-sided original document onto one sheet of paper.
		LongEdgeBinding	Uses for long-edge binding when you perform duplex printing.
		ShortEdgeBinding	Uses for short-edge binding when you perform duplex printing.
	Multiple-Up	**Off***	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
		Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
		ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
		Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge.
	Collated*[3]	**Uncollated**	Does not sort the copy job.
		Collated	Sorts the copy job.
	Poster	**Off***	Does not print an image onto several sheets of paper.
		2 x 2	Prints an image onto 4 sheets of paper (2 by 2).

		3 x 3	Prints an image onto 9 sheets of paper (3 by 3).
		4 x 4	Prints an image onto 16 sheets of paper (4 by 4).
	Poster Docu. Size	**A4**	Displays the size of the divided sheets.
		Letter*	
		B5	
		A5	
	Image Repeat	**Off***	Does not print multiple image copies from the original document on a single page.
		On	Prints multiple image copies from the original document on a single page.
	Margin	**Off***	Does not specify the margin of the copy.
		On	Specifies the margin of the copy.
	Margin Top/Bottom	**4-50 mm (0.2-2.0 inch)**	Displays the size of the top and bottom margins. The default is 5 mm.
	Margin Left/Right	**4-50 mm (0.2-2.0 inch)**	Displays the size of the right and left margins. The default is 5 mm.
	Margin Middle	**0-50 mm (0.0-2.0 inch)**	Displays the size of the middle margin. The default is 10 mm.
Scan Defaults	**Send to Client**	**Server**	Stores the scanned image on the server by using the FTP (File Transfer Protocol) protocol.
		Computer*	Stores the scanned image on the computer by using the SMB (Server Message Block) protocol.
	Network Port*[4]	**Wired***	Stores data via the wired connection.
		Wireless	Stores data via the wireless connection.
	File Format	**PDF***	Saves the scanned copy in PDF.
		MultiPageTIFF	Saves the scanned copy in MultiPageTIFF.
		TIFF	Saves the scanned copy in TIFF.
		JPEG	Saves the scanned copy in JPEG.
		MP TIFF NonComp*[3]	Saves the scanned copy in MP TIFF NonComp.
		TIFF NonComp*[3]	Saves the scanned copy in TIFF NonComp.
	Color	**Color***	Prints in the color mode.
		Black&White	Prints in the black and white mode.
	Resolution	**150***	Scans an image in 150 dpi.
		300	Scans an image in 300 dpi.
		400	Scans an image in 400 dpi.
		600	Scans an image in 600 dpi.
	Original Type	**Text&Photo**	Uses for documents with both text and photo/gray tones.
		Photo	Uses for documents with photo or gray tones.
		Text	Uses for documents with text.
	Document Size	**A4**	Sets the document size in A4.
		Letter	Sets the document size in Letter.
		B5	Sets the document size in B5.
		A5	Sets the document size in A5.
		Executive	Sets the document size in Executive.
		8.5x13"*[5]	Sets the document size in 8.5"x13".
		Legal*[5]	Sets the document size in Legal.
	Lighter/Darker	**Normal***	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
		Darker1	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
		Darker2	
		Darker3	
		Lighter3	Works well with dark print.

		Lighter2	
		Lighter1	
	Sharpness	**Softer**	Adjusts sharpness of color to make the copy softer than the original.
		Normal*	Does not adjust sharpness of color to make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
		Sharper	Adjusts sharpness of color to make the copy sharper than the original.
	Contrast	**Normal***	Does not adjust the amount of color in a specified hue to make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
		Higher	Adjusts the amount of color in a specified hue to make the copy sharper than the original.
		Lower	Adjusts the amount of color in a specified hue to make the copy softer than the original.
	Auto Exposure	**On**	Adjusts the overall brightness to make the copy overexposed than the original.
	Auto Exposure Level	**Normal***	Displays the level of the overall brightness in Normal.
		Higher(1)	Displays the level of the overall brightness in Higher(1).
		Higher(2)	Displays the level of the overall brightness in Higher(2).
	TIFF File Format	**TIFF V6***	Sets the file in the TIFF V6 format.
		TTN2	Sets the file in the TTN2 format.
	Image Compression	**Lower**	Compresses an image in Lower.
		Normal*	Compresses an image in Normal.
		Higher	Compresses an image in Higher.
	Max E-Mail Size	**50-16384**	Sets a maximum volume of e-mail data. The default is 2048 bytes.
Fax Defaults*[3]	**Resolution**	**Standard***	For documents with normal sized characters.
		Fine	For documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
		SuperFine	For documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote printer also supports the Super Fine resolution.
	Original Type	**Text&Photo**	Uses for documents with both text and photo/gray tones.
		Photo	Uses for documents with photo or gray tones.
		Text*	Uses for documents with text.
	Lighter/Darker	**Normal***	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
		Darker1	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
		Darker2	
		Darker3	
		Lighter3	Works well with dark print.
		Lighter2	
		Lighter1	
	Delayed Start	Saves scanned documents for transmission at a specified time (0-23:59) in order to take advantage of lower long distance rates. The default is 21:00.	
Fax Settings	**Interval Timer**	Specifies the interval time (3-255 minutes) of the resend attempts. The default is 8min.	
	Number of Redial	Specifies the number of redial attempts, 0-9. If you enter 0, the multifunction printer will not redial. The default is 3.	
	Interval of Redial	Automatically redials a remote fax machine if it was busy. Intervals from 1-15 minutes can be entered. The default is 1min.	
	Answer Select	Selects the default fax receiving mode. · TEL Mode · FAX Mode (automatic receive mode) · TEL/FAX Mode* · Ans/FAX Mode · DRPD (Distinctive Ring. Pattern Detection) Mode (DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies.)	
	Auto Answer Fax	Answers an incoming call and automatically goes into the receive mode in 0-255 seconds. The default is 1sec.	
	Auto Answer TEL/FAX	Shares one telephone line with an external telephone in 0-255 seconds. The default is 6sec.	
	Auto Answer Ans/FAX	Shares one telephone line with an answering machine in 0-255 seconds. The default is 48sec.	
	Line Monitor	**off**	Turns off the volume for the line monitor.

		Min	Specifies the volume in Min for the incoming faxes.
		Middle*	Specifies the volume in Middle for the incoming faxes.
		Max	Specifies the volume in Max for the incoming faxes.
	Ring Tone Volume	**None**	Turns off the volume for the incoming faxes.
		Min	Specifies the volume in Min for the incoming faxes.
		Middle	Specifies the volume in Middle for the incoming faxes.
		Max*	Specifies the volume in Max for the incoming faxes.
	Line Type	**PSTN***	Sets PSTN (Public Switched Telephone Network) as the line type.
		PBX	Sets PBX (Private Branch Exchange) as the line type.
	Dialing Type	**PB***	Sets PB (Push Button) as the dial type.
		DP (10PPS)	Sets "DP (10PPS)" (Dial Pulse, 10 Pulse Per Second) as the dial type.
		DP (20PPS)	Sets "DP (20PPS)" (Dial Pulse, 20 Pulse Per Second) as the dial type.
	DM Prevention	**On**	Only accepts faxes from numbers registered in the PhoneBook. Incoming faxes from numbers whose G3ID is not registered correctly are not accepted even if the number is registered in the PhoneBook.
		Off*	Accepts faxes from numbers that are not registered in the PhoneBook.
	Remote Receive	**On**	Receives a fax by pressing the remote receive code on the external telephone.
		Off*	Does not receive a fax by pressing the remote receive code on the external telephone.
	Remote Receive Tone	Specifies the tone in 2-digit numbers (00-99) when Remote Receive is set to On.	
	Duplex Print	**On**	Uses duplex printing when you receive a fax.
		Off*	Does not use duplex printing when you receive a fax.
	Send Header	**On***	Creates cover pages for the faxes.
		Off	Does not create cover pages for the faxes.
	Send Header Name	Includes the header name in the cover pages for the faxes.	
	G3ID	Contains your telephone number in the cover pages for the faxes.	
	Local Name	Contains the local name in the cover pages for the faxes.	
	DRPD Pattern	**Pattern*n***	Sets the DRPD pattern from Pattern1 to Pattern5. DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies.
	Forwarding Settings	**Trans. At Error**	Forwards the incoming faxes when an error occurs.
		Trans. Always.	Always forwards the incoming faxes.
		Not Trans.*	Does not forward the incoming faxes.
	Forward Settings Number	Displays the Forward Settings number.	
	Forward Set Print	**On**	Prints the ongoing faxes when you can set the multifunction printer to forward the faxes.
		Off*	Does not prints the ongoing faxes when you can set the multifunction printer to forward the faxes.
	Prefix Dial	**On**	Adds the prefix number when you send a fax.Prefix Dial is only available when PBX is set as the line type.
		Off	Does not add the prefix number when you send a fax.
	Prefix Dial Number	Sets a prefix dial number up to five digits.	
	Discard Size	**On**	Discards any excess document at the bottom of the page.
		Off*	Does not discard any excess document at the bottom of the page.
		Auto Reduction	Automatically reduces the size if there is any excess document at the bottom of the page.
	Color Fax	**On**	Allows color faxes to be sent and received (select color or black and white when sending a fax).
		Off*	Faxes are sent and received in black and white only.
	Extel Hook Thresh	**Lower**	Sets **Lower** in the threshold value.
		Normal*	Sets **Normal** in the threshold value.
		Higher	Sets **Higher** in the threshold value.
	Fwd. Error Print	**On***	Prints documents that failed to transfer when Forward Set Print is set to Off.

		Off	Does not print documents that failed to transfer when Forward Set Print is set to Off.
	Country*[6]	**United States**	Sets the country for the fax.
Paper Density	**Plain**	**Light**	Displays the paper density in Light for the plain paper.
		Normal*	Displays the paper density in Normal for the plain paper.
	Label	**Light***	Displays the paper density in Light for the label.
		Normal	Displays the paper density in Normal for the label.
Adjust BTR	**Plain**	Displays the voltage settings of the transfer roller (-3-3) for plain paper. The default is 0.	
	Plain Thick	Displays the voltage settings of the transfer roller (-3-3) for thick plain paper. The default is 0.	
	Transparency	Displays the voltage settings of the transfer roller (-3-3) for transparencies. The default is 0.	
	Covers	Displays the voltage settings of the transfer roller (-3-3) for cover paper. The default is 0.	
	Covers Thick	Displays the voltage settings of the transfer roller (-3-3) for thick cover paper. The default is 0.	
	Label	Displays the voltage settings of the transfer roller (-3-3) for labels. The default is 0.	
	Coated	Displays the voltage settings of the transfer roller (-3-3) for coated paper. The default is 0.	
	Coated Thick	Displays the voltage settings of the transfer roller (-3-3) for thick coated paper. The default is 0.	
	Envelope	Displays the voltage settings of the transfer roller (-3-3) for envelopes. The default is 0.	
Adjust Fuser	**Plain**	Displays the temperature settings of the fuser unit (-2-2) for plain paper. The default is 0.	
	Plain Thick	Displays the temperature settings of the fuser unit (-2-2) for thick plain paper. The default is 0.	
	Transparency	Displays the temperature settings of the fuser unit (-2-2) for transparencies. The default is 0.	
	Covers	Displays the temperature settings of the fuser unit (-2-2) for cover paper. The default is 0.	
	Covers Thick	Displays the temperature settings of the fuser unit (-2-2) for thick cover paper. The default is 0.	
	Label	Displays the temperature settings of the fuser unit (-2-2) for labels. The default is 0.	
	Coated	Displays the temperature settings of the fuser unit (-2-2) for coated paper. The default is 0.	
	Coated Thick	Displays the temperature settings of the fuser unit (-2-2) for thick coated paper. The default is 0.	
	Envelope	Displays the temperature settings of the fuser unit (-2-2) for envelopes. The default is 0.	
Auto Registration Adjustment	Auto Registration Adjustment	Displays the Displays whether to adjust the registration automatically.	
Adjust Altitude	Adjust Altitude	Displays whether to adjust the height of the installation location of the printer.	
Non-Dell Toner	**Non-Dell Toner**	Displays whether to use a refilled print cartridge.	
Clock Settings	**Date Format**	Specifies the date format.	
	Time Format	Specifies the time format in 24H or 12H.	
	Time Zone	Specifies the time zone.	
	Set Date	Sets the date.	
	Set Time	Sets the time.	
Web Link Customization	**Select Reorder URL**	**Regular***	Displays the URL (**http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna**) that Order Supplies at links to in the left frame.
		Premier	Displays the URL (**http://premier.dell.com**) that Order Supplies at links to in the left frame.
Tray Settings	**Tray 1 Paper Type**	Displays the type of paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray	
	Tray 1 Paper Size	Displays the size of paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray	
	Tray 1 Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.	
	Tray 1 Custom Size - X	Displays the width of paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.	
	Tray 2 Paper Type	Displays the type of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet paper feeder.	
	Tray 2 Paper Size	Displays the size of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet paper feeder.	
	Tray 2 Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of paper loaded in the optional feeder.	
	Tray 2 Custom Size - X	Displays the width of paper loaded in the optional feeder.	
	MPF Mode	Displays the paper size and type when paper is loaded in the multipurpose feeder.	

	Display Popup	Displays a popup menu when paper is loaded in the multipurpose feeder.
	MPF Paper Type	Displays the type of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder.
	MPF Paper Size	Displays the size of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder.
	MPF Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder.
	MPF Custom Size - X	Displays the width of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder.

*[1] All changes made on the **Printer Settings**, **Copy Printer Settings**, **Dell ColorTrack**, and **Tray Settings** menus on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** are discarded if they are made while the multifunction printer in power saver mode. Exit the mode to change the settings.

*[2] This item is only available when the optional duplexer is installed.

*[3] This item is only available when the optional memory card is set to on.

*[4] This item is only available when the optional wireless printer adapter is installed.

*[5] You can only use the Auto Document Feeder (ADF) to read the 8.5"x13" and Legal documents.

*[6] click **Restart printer to apply new settings** for change to take effect.

Reports

Purpose:

To print various types of reports and lists.

Values:

System Settings	Click the **Start** button to print the system settings page.
Panel Settings	Click the **Start** button to print the panel settings page.
PCL Fonts List	Click the **Start** button to print the PCL (Hewlett-Packard Printer Control Language) fonts list.
PCL Macro List	Click the **Start** button to print the PCL Macro list.
Job History	Click the **Start** button to print the job history report.
Error History	Click the **Start** button to print the error history report.
PS Fonts List	Click the **Start** button to print the PS fonts list.
Print Meter	Click the Start button to print the print volume report.
Color Test Page	Click the **Start** button to print the color test page.
Stored Documents	Click the **Start** button to print the stored documents list. This item is only available when the Ram disk is set to on.
Speed Dial	Click the **Start** button to print the Speed Dial report.
Protocol Monitor	Click the **Start** button to print the Protocol Monitor report.
Address Book	Click the **Start** button to print the **Address Book** report.
Server Address	Click the **Start** button to print the server address report.
Fax Activity	Click the **Start** button to print the fax activity report.
Fax Pending	Click the **Start** button to print the pending faxes report.

Printer Settings

The **Printer Settings** tab includes **System Settings**, **Parallel Settings**, **Network Settings, USB Settings**, **PCL Settings**, **PS Settings**, and **Secure Settings** pages.

System Settings

Purpose:

To configure the basic printer settings.

Values:

Power Saver Mode2	Displays the status for the power saver mode 2.
Power Saver Timer Mode 1	Displays the amount of time before the multifunction printer enters the power saver timer mode 1 after it finishes a print job.
Power Saver Timer Mode 2	Displays the amount of time before the multifunction printer enters the power saver timer mode 2 after it finishes a print job.
Auto Reset	Displays the amount of time before the setting is reset automatically.

Panel Select Tone	Displays the selected tone for the panel.
Panel Alert Tone	Displays the alert tone for the panel.
Machine Ready Tone	Displays the tone when the machine becomes ready.
Copy Job Tone	Displays the tone when copying starts.
Non-Copy Job Tone	Displays the tone when copying is complete.
Fault Tone	Displays the tone when an error occurs.
Alert Tone	Specifies whether the multifunction printer sounds an alarm when an error occurs.
Out of Paper Tone	Displays the tone when the paper runs out.
Low Toner Tone	Displays the tone when the toner is low.
Auto Clear Alert Tone	Displays the tone when the jam is cleared.
Base Tone	Displays the base tone.
All Tones	Displays all types of tones.
Time-Out	Specifies the amount of time the multifunction printer waits to receive additional bytes of data from the computer. When this timeout expires, the print job is canceled.
Panel Language	Determines the language of the text on the operator panel screen.
Auto Log Print	Specifies whether the multifunction printer outputs logs automatically.
Print ID	Specifies a location where the user ID is printed.
Print Text	Specifies whether the multifunction printer outputs PDL data, which is not supported by the multifunction printer, as text when the multifunction printer receives it.
Banner Sheet Insert Position	Specifies the position of banner sheet.
Banner Sheet Specify Tray	Specifies the tray in which the banner sheet is loaded.
RAM Disk	Specifies whether to allocate memory to the RAM disk file system for the Secure Print and Store Print features. This item is only available when the 256 MB, or higher, optional memory card is installed.
Substitute Tray	Specifies whether or not to use another size paper when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.
mm/inch	Specifies the measurement unit on the operator panel screen as either mm or inches.
Fax Activity	Displays the status for printing the fax activity.
Fax Transmit	Displays the status for printing the fax transmission.
Fax Broadcast	Displays the status for printing the fax broadcast.
Protocol Monitor	Displays the status for printing the protocol monitor.

Parallel Settings

Purpose:

To configure the parallel interface.

Values:

ECP	Specifies the ECP communication mode of the parallel interface.
Adobe Protocol	Specifies PostScript communication protocol for each interface.

Network Settings

Purpose:

To Specify the PostScript communication protocol for this multifunction printer.

Values:

Adobe Protocol	Specifies PostScript communication protocol for each interface.

USB Settings

Purpose:

To change printer settings affecting a USB (Universal Serial Bus) port.

Values:

Adobe Protocol	Specifies PostScript communication protocol for each interface.

PCL Settings

Purpose:

To change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PCL emulation printer language.

Values:

Paper Tray	Specifies the input tray.
Paper Size	Specifies the default paper size.
Custom Size - Y	Specifies the length of paper. The available range is from 98 mm (3.89 in.) to 355 mm (13.98 in.).
Custom Size - X	Specifies the width of paper. The available range is from 77 mm (3.03 in.) to 220 mm (8.66 in.).
Orientation	Specifies how text and graphics are oriented on the page.
2 Sided	Sets duplexing as the default for all print jobs. This item is only available when the optional duplexer is installed.
Font	Specifies the default font from the registered fonts in the multifunction printer.
Symbol Set	Specifies a symbol set for a specified font.
Font Size	Specifies the font size for scalable typographic fonts.
Font Pitch	Specifies the font pitch for scalable monospaced fonts.
Form Line	Specifies the number of characters in a line.
Quantity	Sets the number of copies you want for the printer default value.
Image Enhancement	Specifies whether to perform the image enhancement feature.
Hex Dump	Specifies whether to help isolate the source of a print job problem. With Hex Dump selected, all data sent to the multifunction printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation. Control codes are not executed.
Draft Mode	Specifies whether to print in the draft mode.
Line Termination	Sets the line termination.
Default Color	Specifies the color mode to **Color** or **Black**. This setting is used when the color printing mode setting is not specified for the print job that is sent to the multifunction printer.

PS Settings

Purpose:

To change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PostScript emulation printer language.

Values:

PS Error Report	Specifies whether the multifunction printer outputs error contents for a PostScript error.
PS Job Time-Out	Specifies the execution time for one PostScript job.
Paper Select Mode	Specifies the way to select the tray for the PostScript mode.

Secure Settings

Purpose:

To set or change the password to limit access to the menus from the operator panel.

Set the password of the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** from **Set Password** in **Print Server Settings**.

Values:

Panel Lock	**Panel Lock Set**	Specifies whether to limit access to the **Admin** menu.
	New Password	Sets a password to limit access to the menus.
	Re-enter Password	Type the new password again to confirm.
Copy/Scan/Fax Lock	**Copy/Scan/Fax Set**	Specifies whether to limit access to the **Copy**, **Scan**, and **Fax** menus.
	New Password	Sets a password to limit access to the menus.
	Re-enter Password	Type the new password again to confirm.
Secure Receive	**Secure Receive Set**	Specifies whether to limit printing received fax documents.

	New Password	Sets a password for receiving faxes.
	Re-enter Password	Type the new password again to confirm.

NOTE: This menu sets a password to lock the operator panel. When changing the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, click **Set Password** on the left frame and set the password.

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Copy settings.

Values:

Color	Prints in the Color or Black&White mode.
Input Tray	The paper is fed from the selected tray.
Reduce/Enlarge	Enlarges or reduces the size of a copied image.
Custom Reduce/Enlarge	Reduces or enlarges the image to the custom size (25-400%) if Reduce/Enlarge is set to Custom.
Original Type	Uses for documents with both text or photo/gray tones.
Lighter/Darker	Works with light print or dark print.
Sharpness	Makes the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Color Saturation	Adjusts the amount of color to make the colors deeper or lighter than the original.
Auto Exposure	Adjusts the overall brightness to make the copy overexposed than the original.
Auto Exposure Level	Displays the level of the overall brightness.
*[1] All changes made on the **Tray Setting** menus on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** are discarded if they are made while the multifunction printer in power saver mode. Exit the mode to change the settings.	

Copy Color Balance

Purpose:

To set the Copy color balance.

Values:

Yellow Low Dens.	Displays the yellow low density.
Yellow Medium Dens.	Displays the yellow medium density.
Yellow High Dens.	Displays the yellow high density.
Magenta Low Dens.	Displays the magenta low density.
Magenta Medium Dens.	Displays the magenta medium density.
Magenta High Dens.	Displays the magenta high density.
Cyan Low Dens.	Displays the cyan low density.
Cyan Medium Dens.	Displays the cyan medium density.
Cyan High Dens.	Displays the cyan high density.
Black Low Dens.	Displays the black low density.
Black Medium Dens.	Displays the black medium density.
Black High Dens.	Displays the black high density.

Copy Settings

Purpose:

To confirm the Copy settings.

Values:

Auto Fit	**On**	Fits the image on the paper currently loaded.
	Off*	Does not fit the image on the paper currently loaded.
2Sided*[1]	**1->1Sided**	Does not print a 2-sided original document onto one sheet of paper.

	LongEdgeBinding	Uses for long-edge binding when you perform duplex printing.
	ShortEdgeBinding	Uses for short-edge binding when you perform duplex printing.
Multiple-Up	**Off***	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
	Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
	ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
	Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge.
Collated*[2]	**Uncollated**	Does not sort the copy job.
	Collated	Sorts the copy job.
Poster	**Off***	Does not print an image onto several sheets of paper.
	2 x 2	Prints an image onto 4 sheets of paper (2 by 2).
	3 x 3	Prints an image onto 9 sheets of paper (3 by 3).
	4 x 4	Prints an image onto 16 sheets of paper (4 by 4).
Poster Docu. Size	**A4**	Displays the size of the divided sheets.
	Letter*	
	B5	
	A5	
Image Repeat	**Off***	Does not print multiple image copies from the original document on a single page.
	On	Prints multiple image copies from the original document on a single page.
Margin	**Off***	Does not specify the margin of the copy.
	On	Specifies the margin of the copy.
Margin Top/Bottom	**4-50 mm (0.2-2.0 inch)**	Displays the size of the top and bottom margins.
Margin Left/Right	**4-50 mm (0.2-2.0 inch)**	Displays the size of the right and left margins.
Margin Middle	**0-50 mm (0.0-2.0 inch)**	Displays the size of the middle margin.

*[1] This item is only available when the optional duplexer is installed.

*[2] This item is only available when the optional memory card is set to on.

Scan Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Scan settings.

Values:

Send to Client	**Server**	Stores the scanned image on the server by using the FTP protocol.
	Computer*	Stores the scanned image on the computer by using the SMB protocol.
Network Port	**Wired**	Stores data via the wired connection.
	Wireless	Stores data via the wireless connection.
File Format	**PDF***	Saves the scanned copy in PDF.
	Multi Page TIFF	Saves the scanned copy in MultiPageTIFF.
	TIFF	Saves the scanned copy in TIFF.
	JPEG	Saves the scanned copy in JPEG.
	MP TIFF NonComp	Saves the scanned copy in MP TIFF NonComp.
	TIFF NonComp	Saves the scanned copy in TIFF NonComp.
Color	**Color***	Prints in the color mode.
	Black&White	Prints in the black and white mode.
Resolution	**150***	Scans an image in 150 dpi.
	300	Scans an image in 300 dpi.
	400	Scans an image in 400 dpi.
	600	Scans an image in 600 dpi.

Original Type	**Text&Photo***	Uses for documents with both text and photo/gray tones.
	Photo	Uses for documents with photo or gray tones.
	Text	Uses for documents with text.
Document Size	**A4**	Sets the document size in A4.
	Letter	Sets the document size in Letter.
	B5	Sets the document size in B5.
	A5	Sets the document size in A5.
	Executive	Sets the document size in Executive.
	8.5"x13"*1	Sets the document size in 8.5"x13".
	Legal*1	Sets the document size in Legal.
Lighter/Darker	**Normal***	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	Darker1	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
	Darker2	
	Darker3	
	Lighter3	Works well with dark print.
	Lighter2	
	Lighter1	
Sharpness	**Softer**	Adjusts sharpness of color to make the copy softer than the original.
	Normal*	Does not adjust sharpness of color to make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
	Sharper	Adjusts sharpness of color to make the copy sharper than the original.
Contrast	**Normal***	Does not adjust the amount of color in a specified hue to make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
	Higher	Adjusts the amount of color in a specified hue to make the copy sharper than the original.
	Lower	Adjusts the amount of color in a specified hue to make the copy softer than the original.
Auto Exposure	**On**	Adjusts the overall brightness to make the copy overexposed than the original.
Auto Exposure Level	**Normal***	Displays the level of the overall brightness in Normal.
	Higher(1)	Displays the level of the overall brightness in Higher(1).
	Higher(2)	Displays the level of the overall brightness in Higher(2).
TIFF File Format	**TIFF V6***	Sets the file in the TIFF V6 format.
	TTN2	Sets the file in the TTN2 format.
Image Compression	**Lower**	Compresses an image in Lower.
	Normal*	Compresses an image in Normal.
	Higher	Compresses an image in Higher.
Max E-Mail Size	**50-16384**	Sets a maximum volume of e-mail data. The default is 2048 K bytes.
*1 You can only use the Auto Document Feeder (ADF) to read the 8.5"x13" and Legal documents.		

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Fax settings.

Values:

Resolution	**Standard***	For documents with normal sized characters.
	Fine	For documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
	SuperFine	For documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote printer also supports the Super Fine resolution.
Original Type	**Text&Photo**	Uses for documents with both text and photo/gray tones.
	Photo	Uses for documents with photo or gray tones.
	Text*	Uses for documents with text.
Lighter/Darker	**Normal***	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.

	Darker1	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
	Darker2	
	Darker3	
	Lighter3	Works well with dark print.
	Lighter2	
	Lighter1	
Delayed Start	**21:00***	Saves scanned documents for transmission at a specified time in order to take advantage of lower long distance rates.
	00:00-23:59	

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To confirm the Fax settings.

Values:

Interval Timer	Specifies the interval time (3-255 minutes) of the resend attempts.	
Number of Redial	Specifies the number of redial attempts, 0-9. If you enter 0, the multifunction printer will not redial. The default is 3.	
Interval of Redial	Automatically redials a remote fax machine if it was busy. Intervals from 1-15 minutes can be entered.	
Answer Select	You can select the default fax receiving mode. · TEL Mode · FAX Mode (automatic receive mode) · TEL/FAX Mode · Ans/FAX Mode · DRPD (Distinctive Ring. Pattern Detection) Mode (DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies.)	
Auto Answer Fax	Answers an incoming call and automatically goes into the receive mode.	
Auto Answer TEL/FAX	Shares one telephone line with an external telephone.	
Auto Answer Ans/FAX	Shares one telephone line with an answering machine.	
Line Monitor	Specifies the volume of the external telephone (line monitor).	
Ring Tone Volume	Specifies the volume for the incoming faxes.	
Line_Type	**PSTN**	Sets PSTN as the line type.
	PBX	Sets PBX as the line type.
Dialing Type	**PB**	Sets PB as the dial type.
	DP (10PPS)	Sets DP (10PPS (Pulse Per Seconds)) as the dial type.
	DP (20PPS)	Sets DP (20PPS) as the dial type.
DM Prevention	**On**	Does not accept faxes including junk fax sent from remote stations.
Remote Receive	**On**	Receives a fax by pressing the remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Receive Tone	Specifies the tone when Remote Receive is set to On.	
Duplex Print*[1]	**On**	Uses duplex printing when you receive a fax.
Send Header	**On**	Creates cover pages for the faxes.
Send Header Name	Includes the header name in the cover pages for the faxes.	
G3ID	Contains your telephone number in the cover pages for the faxes.	
Local Name	Contains the local name in the cover pages for the faxes.	
DRPD Pattern	**Pattern*n***	Sets the DRPD pattern from Pattern1 to Pattern5. DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies.
Forward Settings	**Trans. At Error***	Forwards the incoming faxes when an error occurs.
	Trans. Always.	Always forwards the incoming faxes.
	Not Trans.	Does not forward the incoming faxes.
Forward Settings Number	Sets the number of the multifunction printer to forward the incoming faxes.	
Forward Set Print	**On**	Prints the ongoing faxes when you can set the multifunction printer to forward the faxes.
	Off	Does not print the ongoing faxes when you can set the multifunction printer to forward the faxes.
Prefix Dial	**On**	Adds the prefix number when you send a fax.

	Off	Does not add the prefix number when you send a fax.
Prefix Dial Number	Sets a prefix dial number up to five digits.	
Discard Size	**On**	Discards any excess document at the bottom of the page.
	Off*	Does not discard any excess document at the bottom of the page.
Color Fax	**On**	Allows color faxes to be sent and received (select color or black and white when sending a fax).
	Off*	Faxes are sent and received in black and white only.
Extel Hook Thresh	**Lower**	Sets **Lower** in the threshold value.
	Normal*	Sets **Normal** in the threshold value.
	Higher	Sets **Higher** in the threshold value.
Fwd. Error Print	**On**	Prints the documents failed to transfer when Forward Set Print is set to Off.
Country*[2]	**United States**	Sets the country for the fax.
*[1] This item is only available when the optional duplexer is installed. *[2] click **Restart printer to apply new settings** for change to take effect.		

Printer Maintenance

The **Printer Maintenance** tab includes **Paper Density**, **Adjust BTR**, **Adjust Fuser**, **Auto Registration Adjustment**, **Color Registration Adjustments**, **Adjust Altitude**, **Reset Defaults**, **Clear Storage**, **Non-Dell Toner**, **Initialize PrintMeter**, **Clock Settings,** and **Web Link Customization** pages.

Paper Density

Purpose:

To specify the paper density.

Values:

Plain	**Light**
	Normal
Label	**Light**
	Normal

Adjust BTR

Purpose:

To specify the reference voltage settings for the transfer roller.

Values:

Plain	Sets the reference voltage settings for the transfer roller for plain paper.
Plain Thick	Sets the reference voltage settings for the transfer roller for thick plain paper.
Transparency	Sets the reference voltage settings for the transfer roller for transparencies.
Covers	Sets the reference voltage settings for the transfer roller for cover paper.
Covers Thick	Sets the reference voltage settings for the transfer roller for thick cover paper.
Label	Sets the reference voltage settings for the transfer roller for labels.
Coated	Sets the reference voltage settings for the transfer roller for coated paper.
Coated Thick	Sets the reference voltage settings for the transfer roller for thick coated paper.
Envelope	Sets the reference voltage settings for the transfer roller for envelopes.

Adjust Fuser

Purpose:

To specify the temperature settings value for the fuser unit.

Values:

Plain	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser unit for plain paper.
Plain Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser unit for thick plain paper.

Transparency	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser unit for transparencies.
Covers	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser unit for cover paper.
Covers Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser unit for thick cover paper.
Label	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser unit for labels.
Coated	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser unit for coated paper.
Coated Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser unit for thick coated paper.
Envelope	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser unit for envelopes.

Auto Registration Adjustment

Purpose:

Specifies whether to adjust the color registration automatically.

Values:

Auto Registration Adjustment	Specifies whether to adjust the color registration automatically.

Color Registration Adjustments

Purpose:

To print the color registration chart and to adjust the color registration by using the chart.

This function is required after the multifunction printer is set up or moved.

Values:

Auto Correct		Click **Start** to adjust color registration automatically.
Color Regi Chart		Click **Start** to print the color registration chart.
Enter Number	**Yellow**	Specifies the values that are found in the color registration chart.
	Magenta	
	Cyan	

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To adjust the height of the installation location of the multifunction printer.

Values:

0 meter	Select the value close to the height of the installation location of the multifunction printer.
1000 meters	
2000 meters	
3000 meters	

Reset Defaults

Purpose:

To initialize the non-volatile memory (NVM). After executing this function and rebooting the multifunction printer, all the menu parameters are reset to their default values.

Values:

Reset Defaults and restart printer.	Click **Start** to initialize the non-volatile memory (NVM) memory.
Reset Defaults User Section	Click **Start** to initialize the user section.

Clear Storage

Purpose:

To clear all files that are stored as Secure and Proof Print in the RAM disk. This item is only available when the RAM disk is set to on.

Values:

Clear Storage	Click **Start** to clear all files stored in the RAM disk.

Non-Dell Toner

Purpose:

Specifies whether to use the refilled print cartridge or not. When this setting is on, you can use print cartridges provided by other companies.

Values:

Non-Dell Toner	Overrides factory print cartridge setting. Non-Dell-brand print cartridges may disable some printer features, reduce print quality and reduce the reliability of your multifunction printer. Dell recommends only new Dell-brand print cartridges for your multifunction printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

Initialize PrintMeter

Purpose:

To initialize the print meter of the multifunction printer. Executing this function restarts the multifunction printer.

Values:

Initialize PrintMeter	Click Start to initialize the print meter.

Clock Settings

Purpose:

To specify the clock settings.

Values:

Date Format	Specifies the date format.
Time Format	Specifies the time format in 24H or 12H.
Time Zone	Specifies the time zone.
Set Date	Sets the date format. The default is mm/dd/yy.
Set Time	Sets the time.

Web Link Customization

Purpose:

To configure the link used for ordering supplies.

Values:

Select Reorder URL	Specifies the URL that **Order Supplies at** links to in the left frame.
Regular	**http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna**
Premier	**http://premier.dell.com**

Print Server Settings

Use the **Print Server Settings** menu to set the type of printer interface and necessary conditions for communications.

The following tabbed pages are displayed in the top of the Right Frame.

Print Server Reports

The **Print Server Reports** tab includes **Print Server Setup Page**, **NetWare Setup Page**, and **E-Mail Alert Setup Page**.

Print Server Setup Page

Purpose:

To verify the current settings of TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) protocol and printing ports. On this page, you can only verify the settings of items. If you want to change the settings, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab.

Values:

Ethernet*[1]	**Ethernet Settings**	Displays the current settings of Ethernet transmission rate and the duplex settings.
	Current Ethernet Settings	Displays the current Ethernet settings.

	MAC Address		Displays the printer's MAC (Media Access Control Address) address.
Wireless Settings*2, *3	**SSID**		Displays SSID (Service Set ID) that identifies the network.
	Network Type		Displays the network type from either the Ad-Hoc or Infrastructure mode.
	MAC Address		Displays the MAC address of the wireless printer adapter.
	Link Channel		Displays the channel number of the connection.
	Link Quality		Displays the quality of the connection.
TCP/IP Settings	**IP Mode**		Displays the IP mode.
	Host Name		Displays the host name.
	IPv4	**IP Address Mode**	Displays the IP address mode.
		IP Address	Displays the IP address.
		Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.
		Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.
	IPv6	**Use Manual Address**	Displays whether to set the IP address manually.
		Manual Address	Displays the IP address.
		Stateless Address 1-3	Displays the stateless addresses.
		Link Local Address	Displays the link local address.
		Manual Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.
		Auto Configure Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.
DNS*3	**IPv4**	**Get DNS Server Address from DHCP**	Displays whether to automatically get a DNS (Domain Name System) server address from the DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) server.
		Current DNS Server Address	Displays the DNS server address.
	IPv6	**Get DNS Server Address from DHCPv6-lite**	Displays whether to automatically get a DNS server address from the DHCPv6-lite server.
		Current DNS Server Address	Displays the DNS server address.
	DNS Dynamic Update (IPv4)*2		Displays the status of the DNS Dynamic Update feature.
	DNS Dynamic Update (IPv6)*2		Displays the status of the DNS Dynamic Update feature.
	Auto Generate Search List		Displays whether to automatically generate a search list.
	Search Domain Name		Displays the search domain name.
	Time-out		Displays the time-out period.
	Priority to IPv6 DNS Name Resolution		Displays whether to use the DNS Name Resolution feature.
WINS*3	**WINS Mode**		Displays the setting of how to get the WINS (Windows Internet Name Service) server address.
	WINS Primary Server		Displays the primary WINS server address.
	WINS Secondary Server		Displays the secondary WINS server address.
LPD	**Port Status**		Displays the port status.
	Connection Time-Out		Displays the connection timeout period.
Port9100	**Port Status**		Displays the port status.
	Port Number		Displays the port number.
	Connection Time-Out		Displays the connection timeout period.
IPP*3	**Port Status**		Displays the IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) port status.
	Printer URI		Displays the printer URI (Uniform Resource Identifier).
	Connection Time-Out		Displays the connection timeout period.
	Port Number		Displays the IPP port number.
	Maximum Sessions		Displays the maximum number of connections received simultaneously by the client.
WSD*3	**Port Status**		Displays the WSD port status.
	Port Number		Displays the WSD port number.
	Receive Time-Out		Displays the receive timeout period.

	Notification Time-Out	Displays the notification timeout period.
	Maximum Number of TTL	Displays the maximum number of TTLs.
	Maximum Number of Notification	Displays the maximum number of notifications.
HTTP	**Port Status**	Displays the HTTP (Hyper Text Transfer Protocol) port status.
	Port Number	Displays the HTTP port number.
	Simultaneous Connections	Displays the number of connections received simultaneously by the client.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection timeout period.
FTP	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection timeout period.
SMB*[3]	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.
	Host Name	Displays the host name.
	Workgroup	Displays the workgroup name.
	Maximum Sessions	Displays the maximum number of connections received simultaneously by the client.
	Unicode Support	Displays the status of the **Unicode Support** feature.
	Auto Master Mode	Displays the status of the **Auto Master Mode** feature.
	Encrypt Password	Displays the status of the **Encrypt Password** feature.
	Job Time-Out	Displays the timeout period.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection timeout period.
AppleTalk*[3]	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.
	Printer	Displays the printer name used in AppleTalk.
	AppleTalk Zone	Displays the AppleTalk zone name.
	AppleTalk Type	Displays the AppleTalk type.
	Delay Start Time	Specifies the print start time period in second.
Bonjour (mDNS)*[3]	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.
	Host Name	Displays the host name.
	Printer Name	Displays the printer name.
SNMP Agent	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.
	Trap Notification 1-4	Displays the status of the **Trap Notification** feature and IP address.
	Authenticate Error Trap	Displays the status of the **Authenticate Error Trap**.
Scan to PC	**FTP Client**	Scans data by using the FTP client.
	SMB Client	Scans data by using the SMB client.
IPsec Settings	**Protocol**	Displays the protocol status.
	IKE	Displays to use a preshared key for IKE authentication.
	IKE SA Lifetime	Displays the lifetime for IKE SA.
	IPsec SA Lifetime	Displays the lifetime for IPsec SA.
	DH Group	Displays the DH group.
	PFS	Displays the PFS status.
	Remote peers IPv4 address	Displays the IP address to connect to.
	Remote peers IPv6 address	Displays the IP address to connect to.
	Non IPsec communication policy	Displays the status of the **Non IPsec communication policy** feature.
IP Filter (IPv4)*[4]	**Access List**	Displays the list of IP addresses that are permitted or denied access to the multifunction printer.

*[1] The **Ethernet** settings are not displayed when the optional wireless printer adapter is installed.

*[2] An optional wireless printer adapter is required to display the item.

*[3] An optional multi-protocol card is required to display the items.

*[4] This item is only available for LPD or Port9100.

NetWare Setup Page

Purpose:

To verify the current settings of IPX/SPX (Internetwork Packet Exchange/Sequenced Packet Exchange) and Netware. In this page, you can only verify the settings of items. If you want to change the settings, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab.

Values:

IPX/SPX Settings	**Frame Type**	Displays the active frame type.
	Current Frame Type	Displays the current frame type.
	Network Address	Displays the IPX/SPX network address.
NetWare	**Port Status**	Displays the port status. When NetWare is implemented, the status of IPX/SPX and TCP/IP is also displayed.
	Device Name	Displays the printer name.
	Active Mode	Displays the current mode for Active Mode.
	Tree Name	Displays the tree name.
	Context Name	Displays the context name of the Print Server Object.
	File Server Name	Displays the file server name.
	Polling Interval	Displays the time interval.
	NCP Packet Burst	Displays the status, and whether to use NCP (NetWare Core Protocol) packet burst.
	Status Information	Displays messages according to the conditions of the multifunction printer.
SLP	**Active Discovery**	Displays whether active discovery is enabled.

NOTE: An optional multi-protocol card is required to display the **NetWare Setup** page.

E-Mail Alert Setup Page

Purpose:

To verify the current settings of SMTP/POP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol/Post Office Protocol) used for the e-mail feature and E-Mail Alerts feature. In this page, you can only verify the settings of items. If you want to change the settings, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab.

Values:

E-Mail Server Settings	**Port Status**		Displays the port status.
	Primary SMTP Gateway		Displays the primary SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) gateway.
	SMTP Port Number		Displays the SMTP port number.
	E-Mail Send Authentication		Displays the authentication method for outgoing e-mail.
	POP3 Server Address		Displays the POP3 (Post Office Protocol 3) server address.
	POP3 Port Number		Displays the POP3 port number.
	Reply Address		Displays the IP address of servers connected with SMTP protocol when data is incoming.
	SMTP Server Connection		Displays the status of the SMTP server connection.
E-Mail Alert Settings	**E-Mail List 1**		Displays the acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature specified in E-mail List 1.
	Select Alerts for List 1	**Supplies Alerts**	Displays the status, and whether to receive an E-Mail Alert for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Displays the status, and whether to receive an E-Mail Alert for paper handling.
		Service Call	Displays the status, and whether to receive an E-Mail Alert for Service Calls.
	E-Mail List 2		Displays the acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature specified in E-mail List 2.
	Select Alerts for List 2	**Supplies Alerts**	Displays the status, and whether to receive an E-Mail Alert for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Displays the status, and whether to receive an E-Mail Alert for paper handling.
		Service Call	Displays the status, and whether to receive an E-Mail Alert for Service Calls.

Print Server Settings

The **Print Server Settings** tab includes **Basic Information**, **Port Settings**, **Wireless LAN**, **TCP/IP**, **NetWare**, **SMB**, **AppleTalk**, **E-Mail Alert**, **Bonjour(mDNS)**, and **SNMP** pages.

Basic Information

Purpose:

To configure the printer's basic information.

Values:

System Settings	**Printer Name**		Specifies the name of the multifunction printer up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
	Location		Specifies the location of the multifunction printer up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
	Contact Person		Specifies the contact name, number, and other information of the printer administrator and service center up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
	Administrator E-Mail Address		Specifies the contact address of the printer administrator and service center up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
	Asset Tag Number		Enter the asset tag number for the multifunction printer.
EWS Settings	**Auto Refresh**	**On**	Refreshes the contents of the status display pages automatically.
		Off	Does not refresh the status display pages automatically.
	Auto Refresh Interval		Sets the time interval for refreshing the contents of the status display pages automatically from 15 to 600 seconds.

NOTE: The auto refresh feature is effective for the contents of the Top Frame, **Printer Status** page, **Job List** page, and **Completed Jobs** page.

Port Settings

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable or disable printing ports and management protocol features.

Values:

Ethernet*[1]	**Ethernet Settings**	**Auto**	Detects Ethernet transmission rate and the duplex settings automatically.
		10BASE-T Half-Duplex	Selects 10Base-T Half-Duplex as the default value.
		10BASE-T Full-Duplex	Selects 10Base-T Full-Duplex as the default value.
		100BASE-TX Half-Duplex	Selects 100Base-T Half-Duplex as the default value.
		100BASE-TX Full-Duplex	Selects 100Base-T Full-Duplex as the default value.
	Current Ethernet Settings		Displays the current settings of Ethernet.
	MAC Address		Displays the printer's MAC address.
Port Status	**LPD**		Select the check box to enable the LPD.
	Port9100		Select the check box to enable the Port9100.
	IPP*[2]		Select the check box to enable the IPP port.
	WSD		Select the check box to enable the WSD port.
	FTP		Select the check box to enable the FTP port.
	SMB*[2]		Select the check box to enable the SMB. You can also configure the transport protocol to be used. TCP/IP and NetBEUI can be selected simultaneously as the transport protocol.
	NetWare*[2]		Select the check box to enable the NetWare port. You can also configure the transport protocol to be used. IPX/SPX and TCP/IP can be selected simultaneously as the transport protocol.
	AppleTalk*[2]		Select the check box to enable the AppleTalk port.
	Bonjour (mDNS)*[2]		Select the check box to enable the Bonjour(mDNS) feature.
	E-Mail Alert		Select the check box to enable the **E-Mail Alert** feature.
	SNMP Agent		Select the check box to enable the SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol). You can also configure the transport protocol to be used. UDP and IPX can be selected simultaneously as the transport protocol. IPX is only available when the multi-protocol card is installed.
*[1] The **Ethernet** settings are not displayed when the optional wireless printer adapter is installed. *[2] An optional multi-protocol card is required to display the item.			

NOTE: The settings in the **Port Settings** page will be valid only when the multifunction printer is rebooted. When you change or configure the settings, click the **Restart printer to apply new settings** button to apply new settings.

Wireless LAN

Purpose:

To configure the detailed setting for the wireless network.

Wireless Settings	**SSID**	Specifies the name that identifies the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Network Type	Specifies the network type from either **Ad-Hoc** or **Infrastructure**.
	MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the printer's wireless network adapter.
	Link Channel	Displays the channel number of the printer's wireless connection.
	Link Quality	Displays the quality of the printer's wireless network connection.
Security Settings	**Encryption**	Select the security method from the list.
	WEP Key 1-4	Specifies the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when **WEP 128bit** or **WEP 64bit** is selected for **Encryption**.
	Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit key from the list.
	Pass Phrase	Specifies the pass phrase from 8 to 63 alphanumeric characters only when **WPA-PSK AES** or **WPA-PSK TKIP** is selected for **Encryption**.

NOTE: To set WPA2-PSK, select WPA-PSK AES.

NOTE: An optional wireless printer adapter is required to display the **Wireless** page.

TCP/IP

Purpose:

To configure the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address of the multifunction printer.

Values:

TCP/IP Settings	**IP Mode**		Specifies the IP mode.
	Host Name		Specifies the host name.
	IPv4	**IP Address Mode**	Selects the IP address mode.
		Manual IP Address	Sets the IP address.
		Manual Subnet Mask	Sets the subnet mask.
		Manual Gateway Address	Sets the gateway address.
	IPv6	**Use Manual Address**	Select the check box to set the IP address manually.
		Manual Address	Sets the IP address.
		Manual Gateway Address	Sets the gateway address.
DNS	**DNS Domain Name*[1]**		Specifies the domain name of the domain name server. Up to 255 alphanumeric characters, periods, and hyphens can be used. If you need to specify more than one domain name, separate them using a comma or semicolon.
	IPv4	**Get DNS Server Address from DHCP**	Select the check box to get the DNS server address automatically from the DHCP server.
		Manual DNS Server Address	Sets the DNS server address.
	IPv6	**Get DNS Server Address from DHCPv6-lite**	Select the check box to get the DNS server address automatically from the DHCPv6-lite server.
		Manual DNS Server Address	Sets the DNS server address.
	DNS Dynamic Update (IPv4)*[1]		Select the check box to enable dynamic updates to DNS.
	DNS Dynamic Update (IPv6)*[1]		Select the check box to enable dynamic updates to DNS.
	Auto Generate Search List*[1]		Select the check box to automatically generate the search list.
	Search Domain Name*[1]		Specifies the search domain name. Up to 255 alphanumeric characters, periods, and hyphens can be used. If you need to specify more than one domain name, separate them using a comma or semicolon.
	Time-out*[1]		Specifies the time-out period between 1 and 60 seconds.
	Priority to IPv6 DNS Name Resolution		Select the check box to enable the DNS Name Resolution feature.

WINS*1	**WINS Mode**		Select the check box to get the WINS server address automatically from the DHCP server.
	WINS Primary Server		Sets WINS server address in the *nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn* format. Each section of *nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn* is a value between 0 and 254. Note that values 127 and 224-254 are not valid for the first three-digits.
	WINS Secondary Server		Sets a back up WINS server address in the *nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn* format. Each section of *nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn* is a value between 0 and 254. Note that values 127 and 224-254 are not valid for the first three-digits.
LPD	**Connection Time-Out**		Sets the connection timeout period from 1 to 1000 seconds.
	IP Filter (IPv4)		To set the IP Filter settings, click **IP Filter**. The **IP Filter** page is displayed.
Port9100	**Port Number**		Sets the port number from 9000 to 9999.
	Connection Time-Out		Sets the connection timeout period between 1 and 1000 seconds.
	IP Filter (IPv4)		To set the IP Filter settings, click **IP Filter**. The **IP Filter** page is displayed.
IPP*1	**Printer URI**		Displays the printer URI.
	Connection Time-Out		Sets the connection timeout period from 1 to 1000 seconds.
	Port Number		Displays the port number for receiving requests from the client.
	Maximum Sessions		Displays the maximum number of connections received simultaneously by the client.
WSD	**Port Number**		Sets the port number from 8000 to 9999.
	Receive Time-Out		Sets the receive timeout period from 1 to 65535 seconds.
	Notification Time-Out		Sets the notification timeout period from 1 to 60 seconds.
	Maximum Number of TTL		Sets the maximum number of TTL from 1 to 10.
	Maximum Number of Notification		Sets the maximum number of notifications from 10 to 20.
HTTP	**Port Number**		Sets the port number to 80 or from 8000 to 9999.
	Simultaneous Connections		Displays the maximum number of connections received simultaneously by the client.
	Connection Time-Out		Sets the connection timeout period from 1 to 255 seconds.
FTP	**Password**		Sets whether to enable or disable the password. And also specifies the password value up to 7 characters.
	Connection Time-Out		Sets the connection timeout period from 1 to 1000 seconds.
IP Filter (IPv4)*2	**Address**		Sets the address in the address field. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field of "aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd." However, 127 and 224-254 cannot be used to "aaa."
	Address Mask		Sets the Subnet Mask in the Mask field. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field.
	Active Mode	**Reject**	Rejects printing from specified network address.
		Permit	Permits printing from specified network address.
		Disabled	Disables the IP Filter feature for the specified IP address.
*1 An optional multi-protocol card is required to display the item. *2 This item is only available for LPD or Port9100.			

NetWare

Purpose:

To configure detailed settings for IPX/SPX and NetWare.

Values:

IPX/SPX Settings	**Frame Type**	**Auto**	Specifies the active frame type automatically.
		Ethernet II	Selects Ethernet II frame type.
		Ethernet 802.3	Selects IEEE802.3 frame type.
		Ethernet 802.2	Selects IEEE802.2 frame type.
		Ethernet SNAP	Selects SNAP (Sub Network Access Protocol) frame type.
	Current Frame Type		Displays the current frame type.
	Network Address		Displays the IPX network address.
NetWare	**Device Name*1**		Specifies the printer name up to 47 alphanumeric characters. For PServer Mode, set the Print Server Name (Print Server Object Name). The original setting remains valid if no input is made.
	Active Mode	**Directory: PServer Mode**	Selects this option when using in **Directory: PServer Mode**.

		Bindery: PServer Mode	Selects this option when using in **Bindery: PServer Mode**.
	Tree Name*1		Specifies the tree name up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Configure this item only when **Directory: PServer Mode** is selected.
	Context Name		Specifies the context name of the Print Server Object up to 255 alphanumeric characters. Configure this item only when **Directory: PServer Mode** or **Directory: RPrinter Mode** is selected.
	File Server Name*1		Specifies the file server name up to 47 alphanumeric characters. Configure this item only when **Bindery: PServer Mode** is selected.
	Polling Interval		Sets the time interval from when print data enters the print queue until printing starts. The setting range is from 1 to 1000 seconds. The original setting remains valid if no input is made. Configure this item only when **Bindery: PServer Mode** or **Directory: PServer Mode** is selected.
	NCP Packet Burst	**On**	Uses NCP packet burst.
		Off	Does not use NCP packet burst.
	Password		Sets the print server password up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Configure this item only when **Binary: PServer Mode** or **Directory: PServer Mode** is selected.
	Confirm Password		Enter the password again.
	Status Information		Displays the status of NetWare.
SLP	**Active Discovery**		Select the check box to enable Active Discovery.
*1 The following are illegal characters: semicolon (;), colon (:), asterisk (*), question mark (?), period (.), comma (,), yen mark (¥), back slash (\), double quotation ("), comparison symbols (< >), brackets ([ ]), operation symbols (+, =, or ~), pipe (|), slash (/), and space ( ).			

NOTE: The settings in the **NetWare** page will be valid only when NetWare or the multifunction printer is rebooted. Click the **Restart printer to apply new settings** button to apply new settings.

NOTE: An optional multi-protocol card is required to display the **NetWare** page.

SMB

Purpose:

To configure detailed settings for SMB.

Values:

Host Name		Specifies the host name up to 15 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made.
Workgroup		Specifies the workgroup name up to 15 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made.
Administrator Name		Specifies the administrator name up to 20 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. The default name is *admin*.
Administrator Password		Specifies the administrator password up to 14 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. The default password is *password*.
Confirm Administrator Password		Allows you to confirm the configured administrator password by re-entering the same password.
Maximum Sessions		Displays the maximum sessions.
Unicode Support	**On**	Notifies the host name and workgroup name in Unicode characters.
	Off	Does not notify the host name and workgroup name in Unicode characters.
Auto Master Mode	**On**	Enables the Auto Master Mode.
	Off	Disables the Auto Master Mode.
Encrypt Password	**On**	Encrypts the password.
	Off	Does not encrypt the password.
Job Time-Out		Sets the timeout period from 60 to 3600 seconds.
Connection Time-Out		Sets the connection timeout period from 60 to 3600 seconds.

NOTE: The settings in the **SMB** page will be valid only when the multifunction printer is rebooted. Click the **Restart printer to apply new settings** button to apply new settings.

NOTE: An optional multi-protocol card is required to display the **SMB** page.

AppleTalk

Purpose:

To configure the detailed settings for AppleTalk.

Values:

AppleTalk	**Printer**	Specifies the printer name in the AppleTalk network up to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbol sets.
	AppleTalk Zone	Specifies the AppleTalk zone name up to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbol sets.
	AppleTalk Type	Displays the AppleTalk type.
	Delay Start Time	Specifies the delay start time between 1 and 255 seconds. A zero (0) value specifies no delay.

NOTE: An optional multi-protocol card is required to display the **AppleTalk** page.

E-Mail Alert

Purpose:

To configure detailed settings for E-Mail Alert. This page can also be displayed by clicking **E-Mail Alert** in the Left Frame.

Values:

E-Mail Server Settings	**Primary SMTP Gateway**		Sets the primary SMTP gateway.
	SMTP Port Number		Specifies the SMTP port number. This must be 25 or between 5000 and 65535.
	E-Mail Send Authentication		Specifies the authentication method for outgoing e-mail.
	SMTP Login User		Specifies the SMTP login user. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, under bars, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.
	SMTP Login Password		Specifies the SMTP account password up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
	POP3 Server Address[*1]		Specifies the POP3 server address in IP address format of "aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd" or as a DNS host name up to 63 characters.
	POP3 Port Number[*1]		Specifies the POP3 server port number. This must be 110 or between 5000 and 65535.
	POP User Name[*1]		Specifies the POP3 account user name. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, under bars, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.
	POP User Password[*1]		Specifies the POP3 account password up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
	Reply Address		Designates the reply e-mail address sent with each E-mail Alert.
	SMTP Server Connection		Displays the status of the SMTP server connection.
E-Mail Alert Settings	**E-Mail List 1**		Sets acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature up to 255 alphanumeric characters.
	Select Alerts for List 1	**Supplies Alerts**	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for paper handling.
		Service Call	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for Service Calls.
	E-Mail List 2		Sets acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature up to 255 alphanumeric characters.
	Select Alerts for List 2	**Supplies Alerts**	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for paper handling.
		Service Call	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for Service Calls.
[*1] **Available when POP before SMTP for E-Mail Send Authentication is selected.**			

Bonjour (mDNS)

Purpose:

To configure the detailed settings for Bonjour.

Values:

Bonjour (mDNS)	**Host Name**	Specifies the host name up to 63 alphanumeric characters and "-" (dash). The original setting will remain valid if no input is made.
	Printer Name	Specifies the printer name up to 63 alphanumeric characters and symbol sets. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made.

NOTE: An optional multi-protocol card is required to display the Bonjour (mDNS) page.

SNMP

Purpose:

To configure the detailed settings of SNMP.

Values:

SNMP Agent	**Community Name (Read only)***[1]	Specifies the community name to access (read only) the data up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. Characters entered for community name in previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Read Community is public.
	Community Name (Read/Write)*[1]	Specifies the community name to access (read and write) the data up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. Characters entered for community name in previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Read/Write Community is private.
	Community Name (Trap)*[1]	Specifies the community name used for trap up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original settings will remain valid if no input is made. Characters entered for Community Name (Trap) in previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Trap Community is " " (NULL).
	Trap Notification 1-4	Select the check boxes to notify trap occurrence. In this case, specify the IP address and IP socket in the following format: ·IPv4 Specify the IP address and IP socket in the nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn:mmmmm format. Each section of "nnn" is a variable value between 0 and 255. Note that values 127 and 224-254 are not valid for the first three-digits only. IP socket mmmmm is a variable value between 0 and 65535. ·IPv6 Specify the IP address and IP socket in the xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:mmmmm format. Each section of "xxxx" is a hexadecimal variable value between 0 and ffff. IP socket mmmmm is a variable value between 0 and 65535. ·IPX Specify the IPX address in the nnnnnnnn.mmmmmmmmmmmm.llll format. IP network nnnnnnnn is a hexadecimal variable value between 0 and ffffffff, IPX node mmmmmmmmmmmm is a hexadecimal value between 0 and ffffffffffff and IPX socket llll is a hexadecimal variable value between 0 and ffff.
	Authenticate Error Trap	Select the check box to notify Authenticate Error Trap.
*[1] The default value of each items can be changed by using Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. *[2] An optional multi-protocol card is required to display the item.		

Scan to PC

Purpose:

To specify the client when scanning data.

Values:

Scan to PC	**FTP Client**	Scans data by using the FTP client.
	SMB Client	Scans data by using the SMB client.

IP Filter

Purpose:

To configure the detailed settings for the IP Filter used for LPD and Port9100.

Values:

Address		Sets the address in the address field. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field of "aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd." However, 127 and 224-254 cannot be used to "aaa."
Address Mask		Sets the Subnet Mask in the mask field. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field.
Active Mode	**Reject**	Rejects printing from specified network address.
	Permit	Permits printing from specified network address.
	Disabled	Disables the IP Filter feature for the specified IP address.

When you make the settings for the filter, enter the IP address of the IP Filter in the **Address** field and the Subnet Mask in the **Address Mask** field. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field. "`*`" is appended to the current value.

Setup Procedure

You can set up to a maximum of five items and the first item takes priority. Enter the shortest address first before proceeding to the next longer address when setting multiple filters.

The following section explains how the **IP Filter** operates.

1. IP Filter Procedure
    a. Enabling Printing From a Specified User

The following describes the procedure to enable printing only from the "`192.168.100.10`" IP address.

Procedures:

i. Click the first column of **Access List** row **1**.
ii. Enter "`192.168.100.10`" in the **Address** field and "`255.255.255.255`" in the **Address Mask** field.

iii. Select **Permit**.
iv. Click **Apply New Settings**.

b. Disabling Printing From a Specified User

The following describes the procedure to disable printing only from the "`192.168.100.10`" IP address.

Procedures:

i. Click the first column of **Access List** row **1**.
ii. Enter "`192.168.100.10`" in the **Address** field and "`255.255.255.255`" in the **Address Mask** field.
iii. Select **Reject**.
iv. Click the first column of **Access List** row **2**.
v. Enter "`0.0.0.0`" in the **Address** field and "`0.0.0.0`" in the **Address Mask** field.
vi. Select **Permit**.
vii. Click **Apply New Settings**.

c. Enabling and Disabling Printing from Network Addresses

You can enable printing from the "`192.168`" network address and disable printing from the "`192.168.200`" network address. However, the example below describes how to enable printing from the "`192.168.200.10`" IP address.

Procedures:

i. Click the first column of the **Access List** row **1**.
ii. Enter "`192.168.200.10`" in the **Address** field and "`255.255.255.255`" in the **Address Mask** field.
iii. Select **Permit**.
iv. Click the first column of the **Access List** row **2**.
v. Enter "`192.168.200.0`" in the **Address** field and "`255.255.255.0`" in the **Address Mask** field.
vi. Select **Reject**.
vii. Click the first column of the **Access List** row **3**.
viii. Enter "`192.168.0.0`" in the **Address** field and "`255.255.0.0`" in the **Address Mask** field.
ix. Select **Permit**.
x. Click **Apply New Settings**.

Other Features

The **Other Features** tab includes **Set Password**, **Security**, **IPsec** and **Reset Print Server** pages.

Set Password

Purpose:

To set or change the password that is required to access the printer setup parameters from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Set the password of the operator panel from **Panel Settings** in the **Printer Settings**. This page can also be displayed by clicking **Set Password** in the Left Frame.

NOTE: To restore the password to default (NULL), initialize the non-volatile memory (NVM).

Values:

Administrator Password	Sets the password up to 10 alphanumeric characters. The password will appear as asterisks (*) in the field when it is entered.
Confirm Administrator Password	Enter the password again to confirm it.

Security

Purpose:

To specify the settings for the SSL encryption communication to the multifunction printer.

Values:

HTTPS	Displays the port status.
Port Number	Specifies the port number, which is not identical with that of HTTP for TCP/IP. This must be 443 or between 8000 and 9999.
Time Zone	Set the correct Time Zone to generate SSL authorization. The initial value, 0 or -5 (hours)*1, is set.
Generate Self-Signed Certificate	Click to display **Generate Self-Signed Certificate** page and to create a security certification from the page.
*1 Initial values may vary for different countries.	

NOTE: An optional multi-protocol card is required to display the **Security** page.

IPsec

Purpose:

To specify the Security Architecture settings for Internet Protocol (IPsec) for encrypted communication to the printer.

Values:

Protocol	Select the check box to enable the protocol.
IKE	Use a preshared key for IKE authentication.
Pre-Shared Key	Specifies a shared key.
Re-enter Pre-Shared Key	Enter the shared key again to confirm it.
IKE SA Lifetime	Sets the lifetime for IKE SA from 5 to 28800 minutes.
IPsec SA Lifetime	Sets the lifetime for IPsec SA from 5 to 2880 minutes.
DH Group	Selects the DH group.
PFS	Selects the check box to enable the PFS setting.
Remote peers IPv4 address	Specifies the IP address to connect to.
Remote peers IPv6 address	Specifies the IP address to connect to.
Non IPsec communication policy	Selects whether or not to communicate with a device which does not support IPsec.

NOTE: If IPsec is enabled with incorrect settings, you must disable it using the **Reset IPsec** menu on the operator panel.

Reset Print Server

Purpose:

To initialize NVRAM (non-volatile RAM) for the network feature and reboot the multifunction printer. You can also initialize the printer's NVRAM from **Reset Defaults** in the **Printer Settings** menu.

Values:

Initialize NIC NVRAM Memory and restart printer	Click the **Start** button to initialize NVRAM. Network settings will revert to the factory default settings and reboot the network capability.
Restart Printer	Click the **Start** button to reboot the multifunction printer.

Copy Printer Settings

The **Copy Printer Settings** menu includes the **Copy Printer Settings** and **Copy Printer Settings Report** pages.

NOTE: You cannot copy the following printer settings:

- Copy Defaults
- Copy Color Balance
- Copy Settings
- Scan Defaults
- Fax Defaults
- Fax Settings
- Clock Settings
- Address Book

Copy Printer Settings

Purpose:

To copy the printer settings to one or more of the same model of the multifunction printer.

To copy the settings to another printer, specify the IP address and password of the printer to which the settings are copied in the **IP Address** text box and **Password** text box. Then, click the **Copy the settings to the Host in the above list** button. Copying the settings is complete. The connection time-out period is 60 seconds. After that, you can check whether settings were copied to this page. And you need to check the **Copy the settings to the Host in the above list and reboot the machine** menu of the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** in the destination printer to verify if settings were actually copied or not.

If the settings can be copied but printer configuration is different, the settings of only the same items are copied. Printer settings are simultaneously copied to printers of up to 10 IP addresses.

Copy Printer Settings Report

Purpose:

To verify the histories of copying.

NOTE: The history is cleared by turning off the multifunction printer:

Address Book

The **Address Book** menu includes the E-Mail Address, Server Address, and Phone Book pages.

E-Mail Address	**E-Mail Address**	Registers a new user in E-Mail Address.
	E-Mail Group	Registers a maximum of 10 users in the group.
	Default Setup	Creates your own default settings for E-Mail Address.
Server Address	**Server Address**	Displays the Server Address list.
Phone Book	**FAX Speed Dial**	Display the Phone Book list.
	FAX Group	Displays fax groups.

E-Mail Address

Purpose:

To organize E-Mail Address, E-Mail Group, and Default Setup.

Values:

E-Mail Address	Registers a new user in E-Mail Address.
E-Mail Group	Registers a maximum of 10 users in the group.
Default Setup	Creates your own default settings for E-Mail Address.

E-Mail Address - Top Page

Purpose:

To view your own default settings for E-Mail Address.

Values:

ID : Name	Displays the e-mail addresses in the group.
Delete	Deletes the registered e-mail address.
Confirm / Change	Edits the registered e-mail address.
Create	Creates the new e-mail addresses in the group.

E-Mail Address

Purpose:

To edit the registered users in E-Mail Group.

Values:

ID	Automatically specifies the registration number.
Name	Enter the name for the new e-mail address.
Address	Enter the new e-mail address.
E-Mail Address	Lists the e-mail addresses.
Delete	Press this button to delete the specified e-mail user.
Apply New Settings	Press this button to apply the specified settings.
Restore Settings	Press this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Press this button to return to the top page where the user belongs.

E-Mail Group -Top Page

Purpose:

To view your own default settings for E-Mail Address.

Values:

Group ID	Displays the group ID.
Name	Displays names registered in the group.
Create	Creates the new user in the group.
Delete	Deletes the registered user.
Confirm / Change	Edits the registered user.

E-Mail Group

Purpose:

To register the user in E-Mail Group.

Values:

E-Mail Group	**ID**	Automatically specifies the registration number.
	Name	Enter the name for the new e-mail address.
E-Mail Address	**Address List to**	Displays buttons including up to 20 addresses.
	ID	Displays the IDs registered in the group.
	Name	Displays the names registered in the group.
	Address	Enter the new e-mail address.
	Apply New Settings	Press this button to apply the specified settings.
	Restore Settings	Press this button to restore the previous settings.
	Back	Press this button to return to the top page where the user belongs.

Default Setup

Purpose:

To create your own default settings for E-Mail Address.

Values:

Default Subject	Enter the subject of e-mail.
Body Text	Enter the body text of e-mail.
Apply New Settings	Press this button to apply the specified settings.
Restore Settings	Press this button to restore the previous settings.

Server Address - Top Page

Purpose:

To display the Server Address list.

Values:

Address List to:	Displays buttons including 20 and 13 addresses. Click the button to list addresses associated with the IDs on the button.
ID	Displays the ID including user names.
Name	Displays user names registered in each ID.
Server Address	Displays the beginning characters of the server address.
Create	Creates the new user.
Delete	Deletes the registered user.
Confirm / Change	Edits the registered user.

Server Address

Purpose:

To edit the Server Address list.

Values:

ID	Displays the ID including user names.	
Name	Displays user names registered in each ID.	
Server Type	**FTP**	Uses the FTP protocol to store the scanned image on the server.
	SMB	Uses the SMB protocol to store the scanned image on the computer.
Server Address	Displays the server address.	
Server Port Number	Displays the server port number. If this option is left black, the default is used.	
Login Name	Displays the login name.	
Login Password	**Enable Password**	Check this option to use the password. The password is only shown in asterisks.
Share Name	Displays the shared name.	
Server Path	Displays the server path.	
Delete	Deletes the registered user.	
Apply New Settings	Press this button to apply the specified settings.	
Restore Settings	Press this button to restore the previous settings.	
Back	Press this button to return to the top page where the user belongs.	

Phone Book

FAX Speed Dial	Displays the Phone Book list.
FAX Group	Displays fax groups.

Phone Book - Top Page

Purpose:

To display the Phone Book list.

Values:

Speed Dial List to:	Displays buttons including up to 20 dials. Click the button to list dials associated with the IDs on the button.
ID	Displays the IDs registered in the group.
Name	Displays the user names registered in the group.
Number	Displays the beginning numbers of the dial.
Delete	Deletes the registered dial.
Confirm / Change	Edits the registered dial.
Create	Creates the new dial.

FAX Speed Dial

Purpose:

To register the new dial.

Values:

ID	Automatically specifies the registration number.
Name	Enter the user name.
Phone Number	Enter the phone number.
ID	Displays the IDs registered in the group.
Name	Displays the user names registered in the group.
Delete	Press this button to delete the specified ID number.
Apply New Settings	Press this button to apply the specified settings.

Restore Settings	Press this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Press this button to return to the top page where the user belongs.

FAX Group - Top Page

Purpose:

To displays fax groups.

Values:

ID	Displays the IDs registered in the group.
Name	Displays the user names registered in the group.
Delete	Deletes the registered fax group.
Confirm / Change	Edits the registered fax group.
Create	Creates the new user in the fax group.

FAX Group

Purpose:

To register the fax group.

Values:

FAX Group	**ID**	Automatically specifies the registration number.
	Name	Enter the group name.
FAX Speed Dial	**Speed Dial List to:**	Displays buttons including up to 20 speed dials. Click the button to list dials associated with the IDs on the button.
	ID	Automatically specifies the registration number.
	Name	Displays names registered in each ID.
	Phone Number	Displays the phone numbers registered in each ID.
	Apply New Settings	Press this button to apply the specified settings.
	Restore Settings	Press this button to restore the previous settings.
	Back	Press this button to return to the top page where the user belongs.

Print Volume

The **Printer Volume** menu includes the **Print Volume** and **Dell ColorTrack** pages.

Print Volume

Purpose:

To verify the number of printed pages. This page can also be displayed by clicking **Print Volume** in the Left Frame.

Values:

Printer Page Count	Displays the total number of pages printed since the multifunction printer was shipped from the factory.
Paper Used	Displays the number of pages for each paper size.

Dell ColorTrack

Purpose:

To specify which users have access to color printing and to limit print volume per user.

Values:

Print User Limitation	Select the check box to restrict users from using the multifunction printer.
Permit printing without specifying user	Select the check box to use the multifunction printer without user limitations.
User Registration	Displayed when **Print User Limitation** is enabled. To register a user, click **Edit User Registration** to open the **Edit Print User Registration** page, and then specify **User Registration No.** and click **Edit** to open the **Print User Settings** page.

Edit Print User Registration

Purpose:

To edit the user registration number.

Values:

User Registration No., Edit	Type the user registration number to edit the print user settings.

Print User Settings

Purpose:

To specify the user settings for the printer.

Values:

User Registration No.	Displays the user registration number.
User Name	Edits the user name.
Password	Registers the password.
Color Mode Limitation	Selects the color mode.
Upper Limit for Color Print	Type the number of pages for color print.
Cumulative Color Page Count	Counts and displays the color pages cumulatively.
Upper Limit for Monochrome Print	Type the number of pages for mono chrome print.
Cumulative Monochrome Page Count	Counts the black and white pages cumulatively.

Tray Settings

Use the **Tray Settings** menu to set the printer media types and sizes for trays respectively.

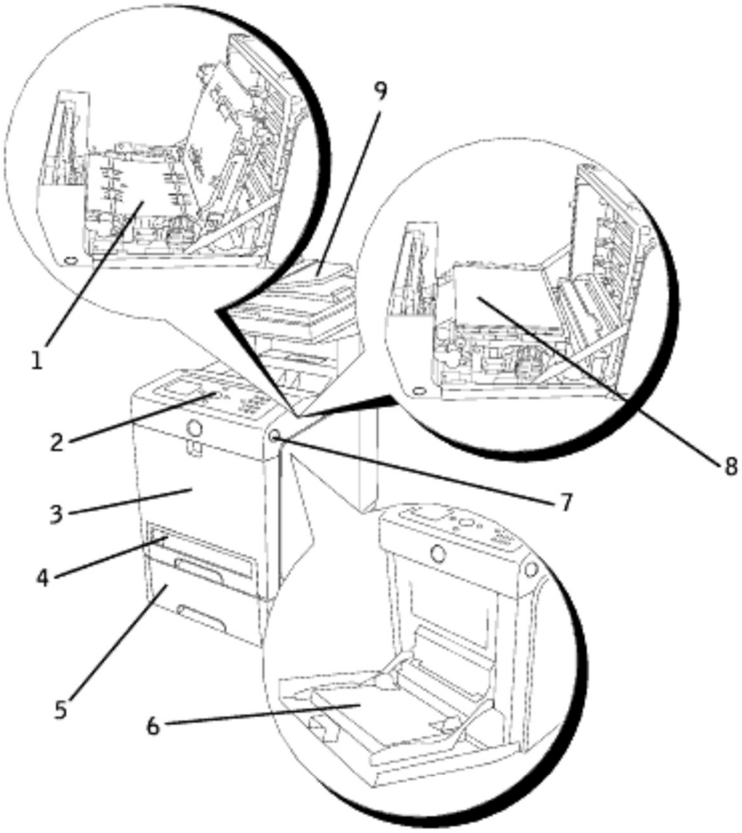
Values:

Tray 1 Paper Type	Sets the type of paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
Tray 1 Paper Size	Sets the size of paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
Tray 1 Custom Size - Y	Sets the length of paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
Tray 1 Custom Size - X	Sets the width of paper loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
Tray 2 Paper Type	Sets the type of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet paper feeder.
Tray 2 Paper Size	Sets the size of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet paper feeder.
Tray 2 Custom Size - Y	Sets the length of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet paper feeder.
Tray 2 Custom Size - X	Sets the width of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet paper feeder.
MPF Mode	Sets the paper size and type when paper is loaded in the multipurpose feeder.
Display Popup	Sets the paper size and type when paper is loaded in the multipurpose feeder.
MPF Paper Type	Sets the type of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder.
MPF Paper Size	Sets the size of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder.
MPF Custom Size - Y	Sets the length of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder.
MPF Custom Size - X	Sets the width of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder.

About Your Multifunction Printer

- Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
- Operator Panel
- Power Saver Mode2

The following illustrations show the standard Dell™ Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn, with an optional 550-sheet paper feeder and duplex module.

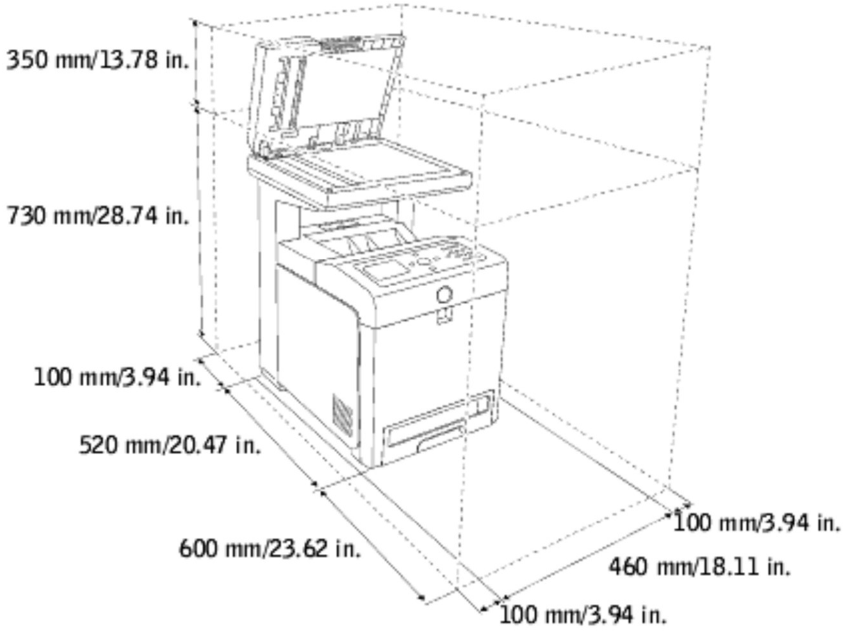


1	Optional duplexer	5	Optional 550-sheet paper feeder **NOTE:** Your multifunction printer allows for a maximum of three trays (standard 250-sheet tray, optional 550-sheet paper feeder, and multipurpose feeder).
2	Operator panel	6	Multipurpose feeder
3	Front cover	7	Button (right side)
4		8	

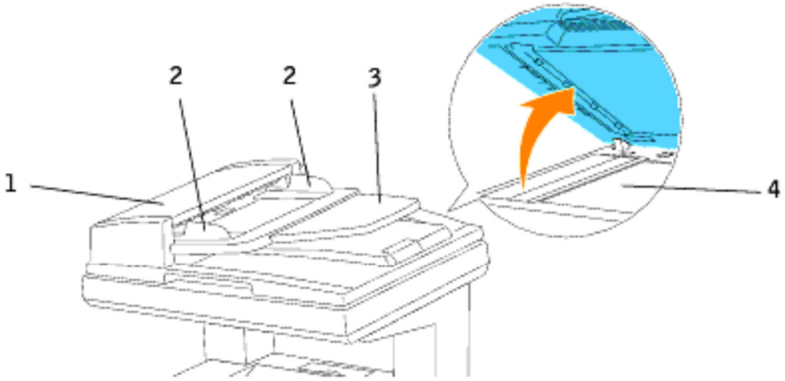
	Standard 250-sheet tray		Transfer belt unit
		9	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)

NOTE: When you use the multifunction printer with the multipurpose feeder opened, do not locate the multifunction printer in direct sunlight. Doing so may cause a malfunction or unnatural screen image.

Leave enough room to open the printer trays, covers, and options. It is also important to allow space around the multifunction printer for proper ventilation.


350 mm/13.78 in.
730 mm/28.74 in.
100 mm/3.94 in.
520 mm/20.47 in.
600 mm/23.62 in.
100 mm/3.94 in.
460 mm/18.11 in.
100 mm/3.94 in.

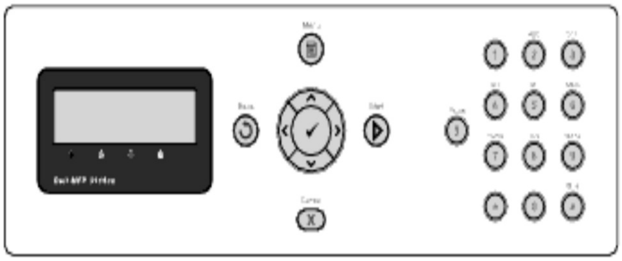
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)



1	Cover
2	Document Guides

3	Document Feeder Tray
4	Document Feeder Glass

Operator Panel



For details on the operator panel, see "Operator Panel"

Power Saver Mode2

The scan lamp under the document feeder glass automatically turns off when it is not in actual use during a preset period to reduce power consumption and extend the lamp life. The lamp automatically turns on and the warm-up cycle begins whenever any key is pressed or the document cover is opened.

You can set the length of time for which the scan lamp waits after a scan job is completed before it switches to the Power Saver Mode2.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `System Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Power Saver Mode2` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Press ▶ to select `On`, and then press ✓ .
6. Press ▼ until `>Power Saver Timer` appears, and then press ✓ .
7. Press ▶ to select the desired time, and then press ✓ .
8. To return to the standby mode, press **Cancel**.

Installing the Print Cartridges

- Installing the Print Cartridges

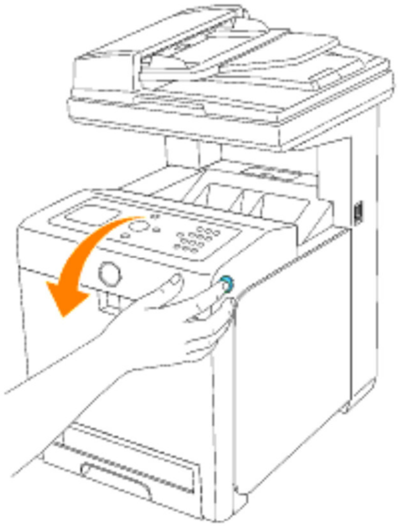
CAUTION: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in your *Owner's Manual* or *Product Information Guide*.

NOTICE: To protect the drums of the print cartridges against bright light, close the front cover within five minutes. If the front cover remains open for more than five minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

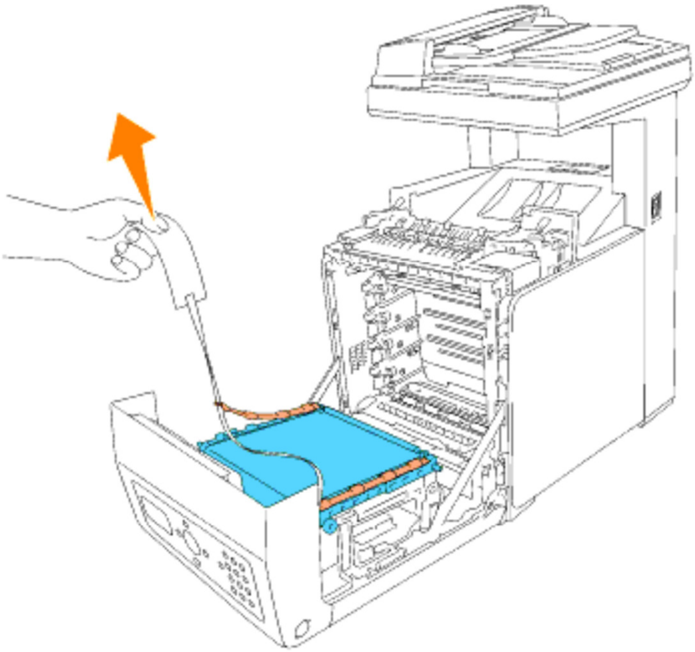
NOTICE: Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the transfer belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the transfer belt unit may reduce print quality.

Installing the Print Cartridges

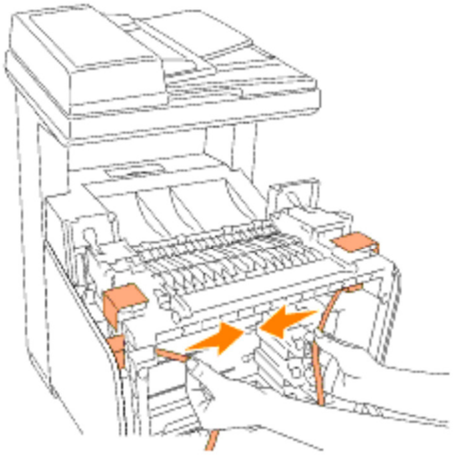
1. Push the button (right side) and open the front cover.



2. Pull up the tag to remove the seal from the unit belt.

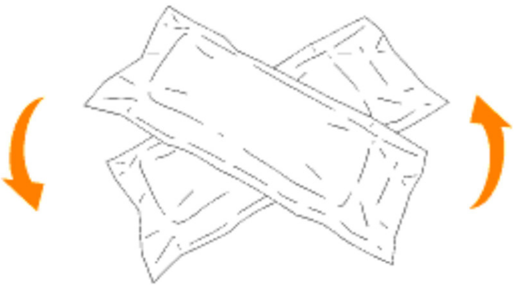


3. Remove the seals over the levers at both ends of the fuser unit, and then pull the tag to remove the seal from the fuser unit.

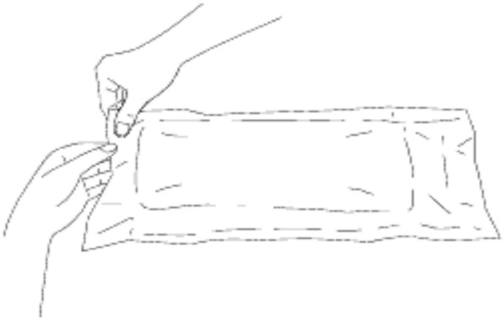


NOTE: Ensure to lock both levers at ends of the fuser unit, after removing the seal.

4. Hold one print cartridge firmly and shake it five or six times to distribute the toner evenly.

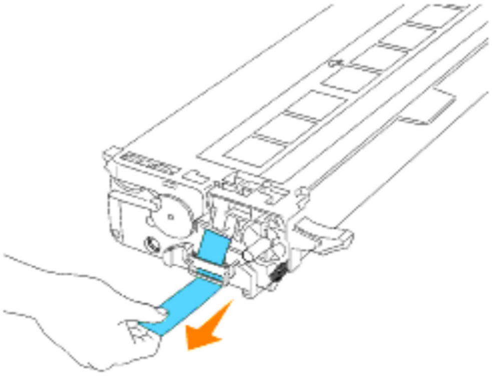


5. Remove the print cartridge from its packaging.



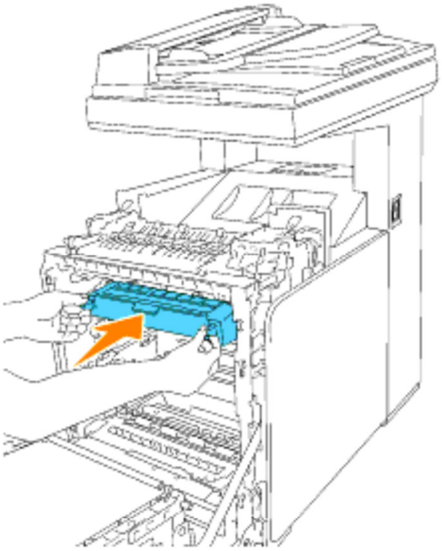
NOTE: To protect the drum against bright light, do not remove the orange protective cover of the print cartridge before the cartridge is inserted into its slot in the multifunction printer.

6. Completely remove the seal from the print cartridge by pulling the tab on the end of the print cartridge.

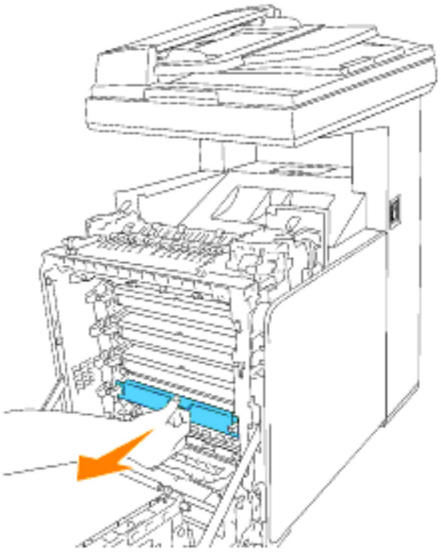


NOTE: Pull the seal out straight. Pulling the seal diagonally may tear it.

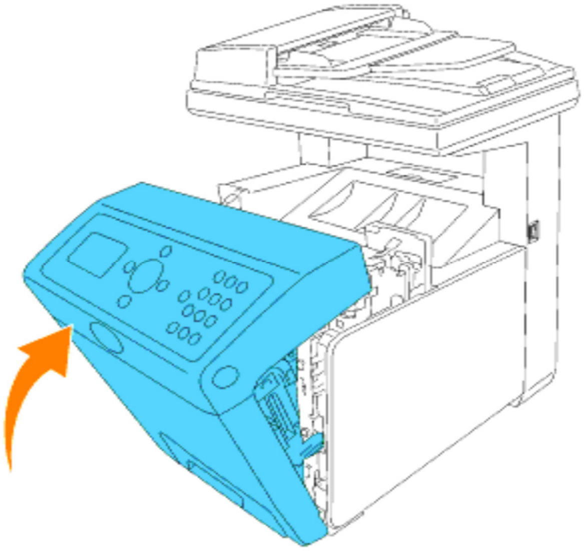
7. Grasp both handles of the print cartridge with the label facing up and slide the cartridge into the same color slot. Ensure the cartridge is fully inserted.



8. Repeat steps 4, 5, 6, and 7 to install the other print cartridges.
9. Remove the orange protective covers of the each of the installed print cartridges.



10. After installing all of the print cartridges, close the front cover.



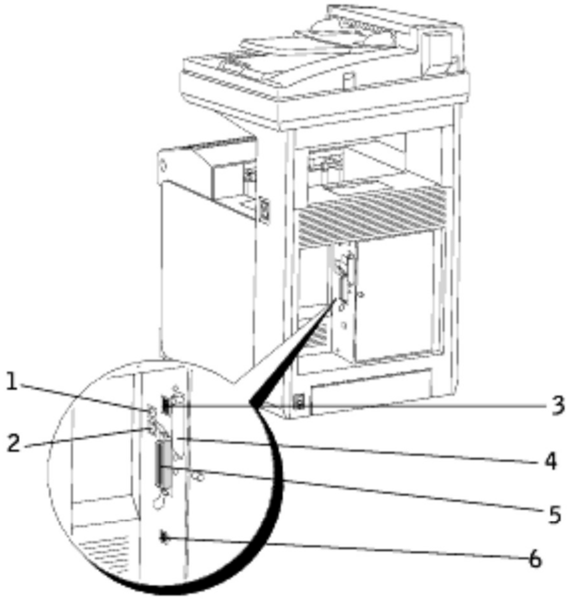
Connecting Your Multifunction Printer

- Choosing the Right Cable
- Connecting the Multifunction Printer Locally
- Connecting the Multifunction Printer to the Network
- Connecting the Telephone Line

Choosing the Right Cable

Your Dell™ Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn interconnection cable must meet the following requirements:

Connection type	Connection specifications
Parallel	IEEE (the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers) 1284
USB	USB 2.0
Ethernet	10 Base-T/100 Base-TX
Wireless	IEEE802.11b/802.11g
Wall jack connector	RJ11
Phone connector	RJ11



1	Wall jack connector	FAX
2	Phone connector	☎
3	Ethernet port	🖧
4	Optional wireless printer adapter socket	
5	Parallel port	IOIOI
6	USB port	

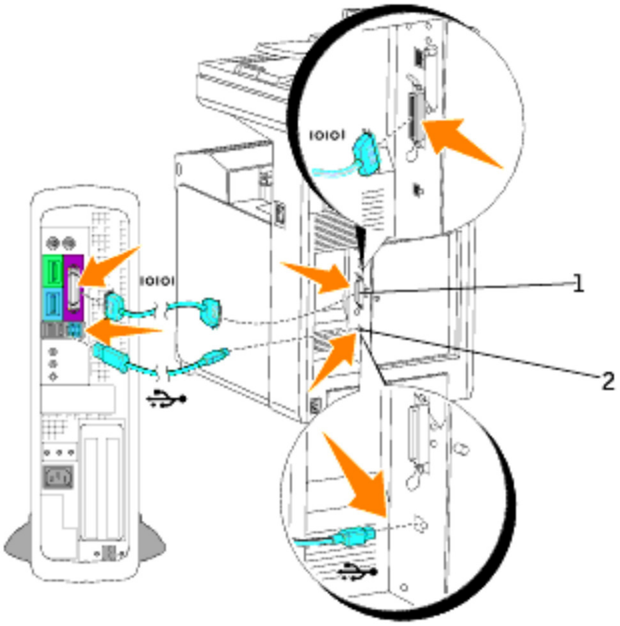
Connecting the Multifunction Printer Locally

A local printer is a printer attached to your computer using a USB or parallel cable. If your multifunction printer is attached to a network instead of your computer, skip this step and go on to "Connecting the Multifunction Printer to the Network."

Microsoft® Windows® 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2008, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise x64 Edition, Windows Server 2008 Enterprise x64 Edition, Windows Vista® and Mac® OS X or later operating systems support USB connections. Some UNIX® and Linux computers also support USB connections. See your computer operating system documentation to see if your system supports USB.

To attach the multifunction printer to a computer:

1. Ensure the multifunction printer, computer, and any other attached devices are turned off and unplugged.
2. Connect the multifunction printer to the computer using a USB or parallel cable.



1	Parallel port
2	USB port

A USB/parallel port requires a USB/parallel cable. Be sure to match the USB/parallel symbol on the cable to the USB/parallel symbol on the multifunction printer.

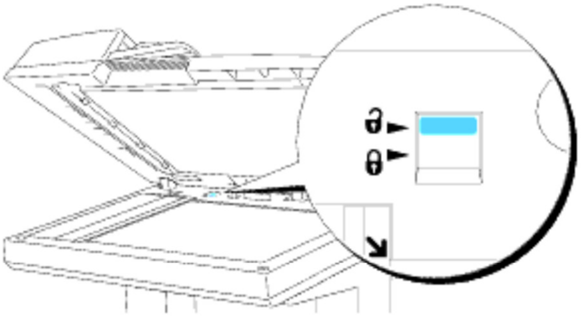
Plug the other end of the cable into a USB or parallel port on the back of the computer. For a USB cable, do not plug it into the USB keyboard.

Turn On the Multifunction Printer

Before turning on the multifunction printer, be sure to release the carriage lock of the scanner.

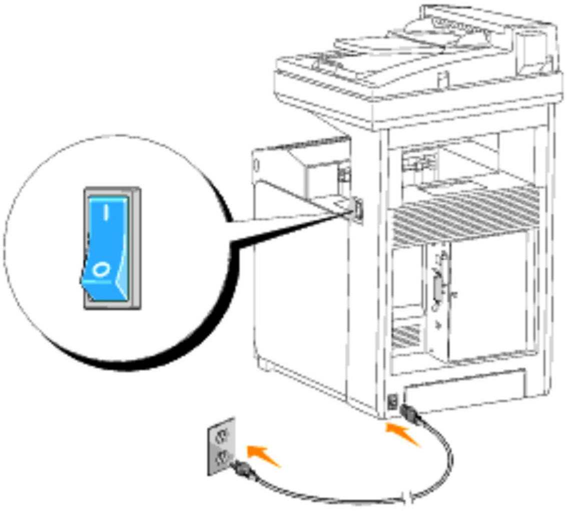
NOTE: If you use the optional duplexer, remove the protection film attached to the transfer belt unit of the duplexer. For details, see "Installing a Duplexer".

NOTE: When you are moving the multifunction printer or do not intend to use it for a long period of time, move the switch to the lock position.



1. Plug one end of the printer power cable into the socket at the back of the multifunction printer and the

other end into a properly grounded outlet.



⚠ **CAUTION: Do not use extension cords or power strips.**

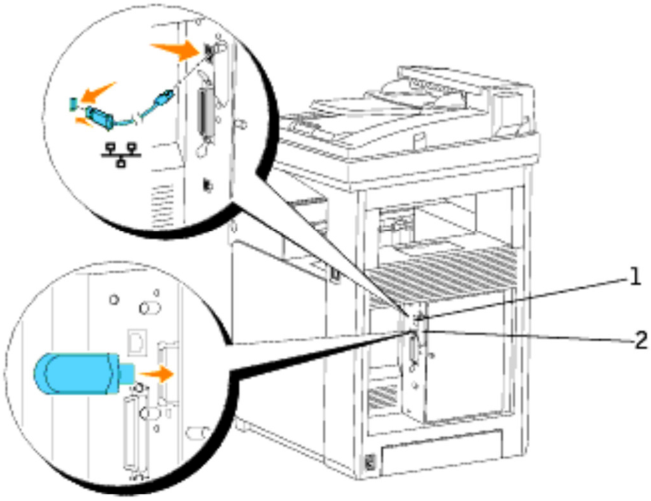
⚠ **CAUTION: The multifunction printer should not be plugged into a UPS system.**

2. Turn on the computer and the multifunction printer.

Connecting the Multifunction Printer to the Network

To attach the multifunction printer to a network:

1. Ensure the multifunction printer, computer, and any other attached devices are turned off and unplugged.
2. Connect the multifunction printer to the network using an Ethernet cable or the wireless printer adapter.
   To use a wireless printer adapter, you must install the Multi-Protocol Card first. To install the card, see "Installing the Dell Multi-Protocol Card".

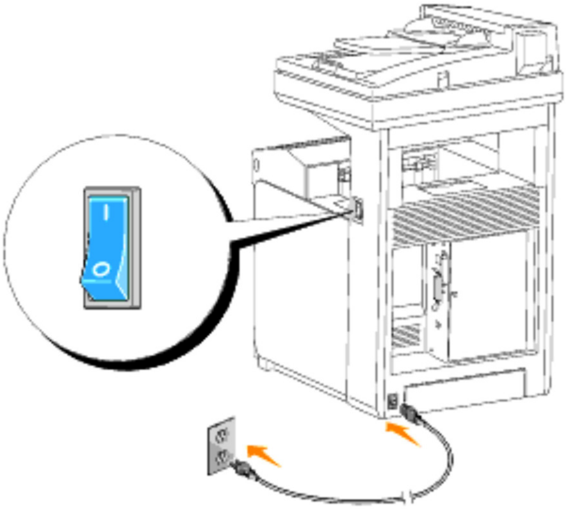


1	Ethernet port
2	Optional wireless printer adapter socket

To connect the multifunction printer to the network, plug one end of an Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port on the back of the multifunction printer, and the other end into a LAN drop or hub. For a wireless connection, insert the wireless printer adapter into the wireless printer socket on the back of the multifunction printer.

Turn On the Multifunction Printer

1. Plug one end of the printer power cable into the socket at the back of the multifunction printer and the other end into a properly grounded outlet.



⚠ **CAUTION: Do not use extension cords or power strips.**

⚠ **CAUTION: The multifunction printer should not be plugged into a UPS system.**

2. Turn on the computer and the multifunction printer.

Print and Check the System Settings Page

Print a system settings page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that helps you configure for network printing.

NOTE: Depending on the network configuration, the multifunction printer may not be provided an IP address immediately. If the System Settings page does not show an assigned IP address, wait five minutes and try again.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Reports` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. `System Settings` is displayed. Press ✓ .

   The system settings page is printed.

4. If the IP address shows anything other than `0.0.0.0` (the factory default) or `169.254.xx.xx`, the multifunction printer has an IP address assigned and stored. Go to "Verify the IP Settings."

Assign an IP Address

NOTE: When you assign an IP address manually in **IPv6 Mode**, use the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. To open the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, use the link local address. (To check a link local address, see "Print and Check the System Settings Page".)

An IP address is a unique number that consists of four sections that are delimited by a period and can include up to three digits in each section, for example, `111.222.33.44`.

Assigning an IP address already in use can cause network performance issues.

NOTE: Assigning an IP address is considered as an advanced function and is normally done by a system administrator.

For more information on using your operator panel, see "Operator Panel".

1. Turn on the multifunction printer.

   `>COPY` appears.

2. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Wired Net` or `>Wireless Net` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Press ▼ until `>TCP/IP` appears, and then press ✓ .

6. Press ▼ until `>IP Address` appears, and then press ✔ .
7. The cursor is located at the first digit of the IP address. Press ▲ ▼ to enter the numbers for the IP address.
8. Press ▶ .

   The cursor moves to the next digit.

9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 to enter all of the digits in the IP address, and then press ✔ .
10. Press the **Back** button.
11. Press ▼ until `>Subnet Mask` appears, and then press ✔ .
12. Repeat steps 7 to 8 to set `Subnet Mask`, and then press ✔ .
13. Press the **Back** button.
14. Press ▼ until `>Gateway Address` appears, and then press ✔ .
15. Repeat steps 7 to 8 to set `Gateway Address`, and then press ✔ .
16. Turn off the multifunction printer, and then turn it on again.

The IP address is assigned to your multifunction printer. To verify the setting, open the web browser on any computer connected to the network and enter the IP address into the address bar on the browser. If the IP address is set up correctly, the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** displays in your browser.

You can also assign the IP address to the multifunction printer when installing the printer drivers with installer. When you use the **Network Installation** feature, and the `Get IP Address` is set to `AutoIP` on the operator panel menu, you can set the IP address from 0.0.0.0 to the desired IP address on the printer selection window.

Verify the IP Settings

1. Print another system settings page.
2. Look under the **TCP/IP** heading on the system settings page to ensure that the IP address, netmask, and gateway are what you expected.

   or

   Ping the multifunction printer and verify that it responds. For example, at a command prompt on a network computer, type ping followed by the new printer IP address (for example, 192.168.0.11):

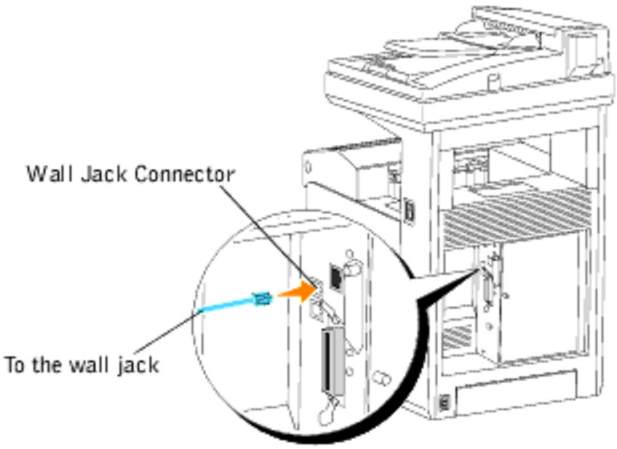
   ```
   ping 192.168.0.11
   ```

   If the multifunction printer is active on the network, you will receive a reply.

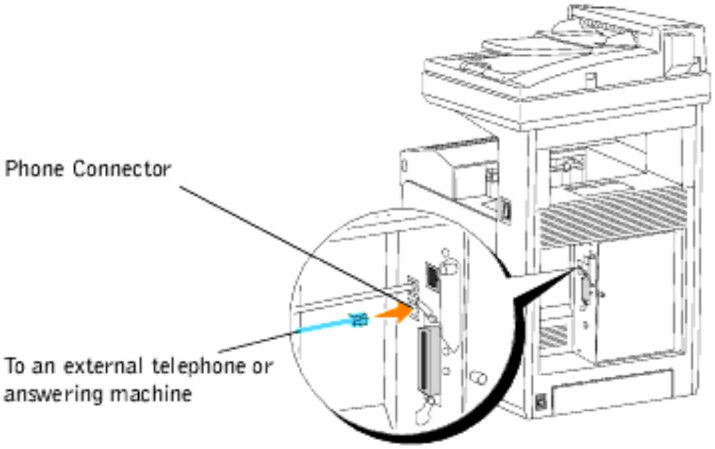
Connecting the Telephone Line

NOTE: Do not connect your multifunction printer directly to a DSL (digital subscriber line). This may damage the multifunction printer. To use a DSL, you will need to use an appropriate DSL filter. Contact your service provider for the DSL filter.

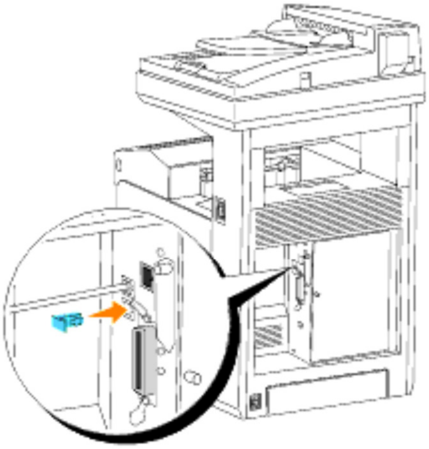
1. Plug one end of a telephone line cord into the Wall Jack connector and the other end into an active wall jack.


Wall Jack Connector
To the wall jack

2. To connect a telephone and/or answering machine to your multifunction printer, plug the telephone or answering machine line cord into the Phone connector (☎).


Phone Connector
To an external telephone or answering machine

If the phone communication is serial in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), and that you are supplied with a terminator plug, insert the terminator plug into the Phone connector (☎).



Enterprise Console Management Modules

The following enterprise console management modules and user's manuals are available on your *Drivers and Utilities* CD:

- IBM Tivoli® NetView®
- CA Unicenter®
- HP OpenView®

To use the modules, go to the following directory on your CD and run each **.exe** file or **.chm** file.

IBM Tivoli: **\Utilities\SnapIns\IBM Tivoli**

CA Unicenter: **\Utilities\SnapIns\CA Unicenter**

HP OpenView: **\Utilities\SnapIns\HP OpenView**

Installing Optional Modules

You can make the multifunction printer more functional by installing the options. This chapter describes how to install the printer's options such as the duplexer and optional 550-sheet paper feeder.

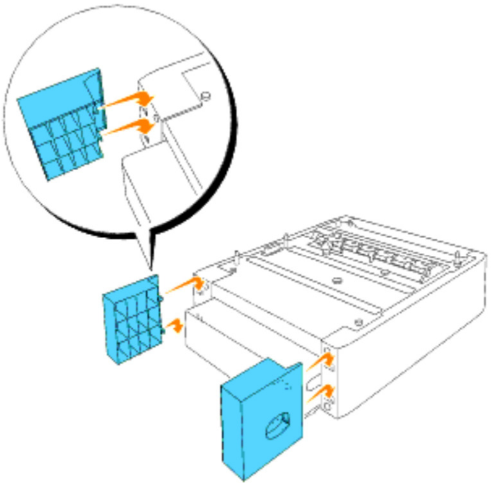
- Installing the Optional 550-Sheet Paper Feeder
- Installing a Duplexer
- Installing a Memory Card
- Installing the Dell Multi-Protocol Card
- Installing the Dell Wireless Printer Adapter 3310 USB

Installing the Optional 550-Sheet Paper Feeder

⚠ **CAUTION: If you are adding an optional 550-sheet paper feeder after setting up the multifunction printer, be sure to turn off the multifunction printer, unplug the power cable, and disconnect all cables from the back of the multifunction printer before completing these tasks.**

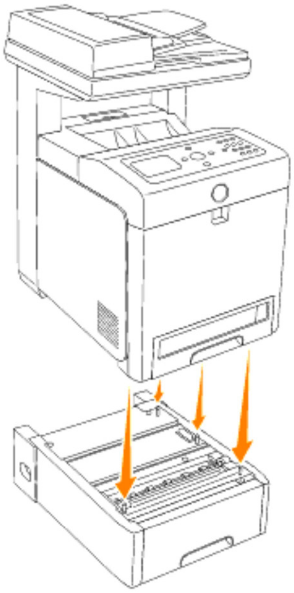
⚠ **CAUTION: Do not move the multifunction printer with the optional 550-sheet paper feeder attached. You may be hurt if the optional 550-sheet paper feeder falls off. Be sure to remove the optional 550-sheet paper feeder from the multifunction printer before you move it.**

1. Place the optional 550-sheet paper feeder in the location that the multifunction printer is located.
2. Ensure that the multifunction printer is turned off.
3. Attach the extensions to the optional 550-sheet paper feeder by aligning the hooks to the holes.



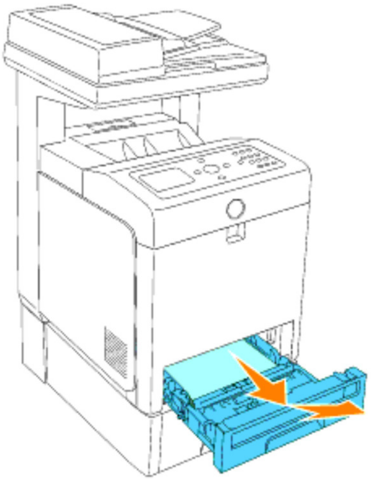
4. Lift the multifunction printer and align the four guide pins of the 550-sheet paper feeder with the holes at the bottom of the multifunction printer. Gently lower the multifunction printer onto the optional 550-sheet paper feeder.

⚠ **CAUTION: To lift the multifunction printer safely, lift it with two people facing the front and back. Never try to lift the multifunction printer while facing its right and left sides.**

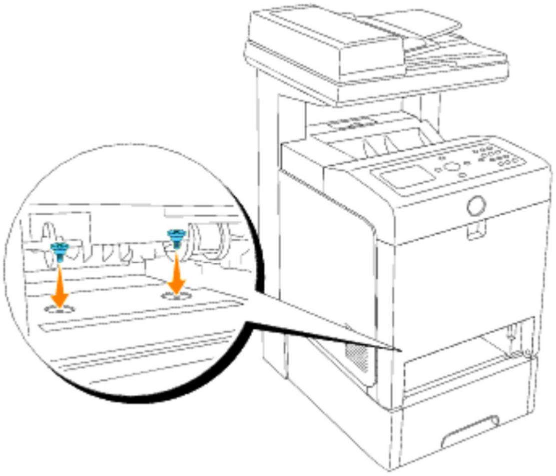


NOTICE: Be careful not to pinch your fingers when lowering the multifunction printer onto the optional 550-sheet paper feeder.

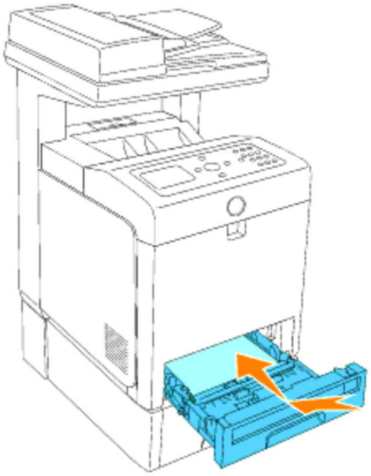
5. Pull the tray out of the multifunction printer until it stops. Hold the tray with both hands, lift the front slightly, and remove it from the multifunction printer.



6. Join the optional 550-sheet paper feeder and the multifunction printer by tightening the two screws provided with the feeder with a coin or similar object.



7. Insert the tray into the multifunction printer, and push until it stops.



8. Turn on the multifunction printer.

NOTE: The multifunction printer will automatically detect the attached tray but will not detect the paper type.

9. Print a system settings page to verify that the optional 550-sheet paper feeder is installed correctly.
   a. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
   b. Press ▼ until `>Reports` appears, and then press ✓ .
   c. `System Settings` is displayed. Press ✓ .

      The system settings page is printed.

   d. Verify **550 Sheet Feeder** is listed in the system settings under **Printer Options**.

      If the tray module is not listed, turn off the multifunction printer, unplug the power cable, and reinstall the optional 550-sheet paper feeder.

10. After loading paper in the installed tray, specify the paper type from the printer operator panel.
    a. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
    b. Press ▼ until `>Tray Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .
    c. Press ▼ until the installed tray appears, and then press ✓ .

   d. Press ▼ until `>Paper Type` appears, and then press ✓ .
   e. Press ▼ until `>Paper Size` appears, and then press ✓ .
   f. Confirm that the selected paper type is marked with an asterisk(*), and then press Menu.

11. If you installed the optional 550-sheet paper feeder after installing the printer driver, update your driver by following the instructions for each operating system. If the multifunction printer is on a network, update the driver for each client.

When Using PCL Driver

Microsoft® Windows Vista®

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer and select **Properties**.
3. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

Windows® XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise x64 Edition

1. Click **Start**→**Printers and Faxes**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer and select **Properties**.
3. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers and Faxes** dialog box.

Windows Server® 2008, Windows Server 2008 Enterprise x64 Edition

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Printers**.
2. Right-click the mulfunction printer and select **Properties**.
3. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

Windows 2000/Windows NT® 4.0

1. Click **Start**→**Settings**→**Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer and select **Properties**.
3. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking Get Information from Printer, follow these steps:

1. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **550 Sheet Feeder** in the **Items** list box.
2. Select **Available** for the 550-sheet feeder setting.
3. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

4. Close the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) dialog box.

When Using PS Driver

Microsoft Windows Vista

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer that is using the PS driver, and then select **Properties** from the displayed list.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab, and then select **2-Tray Module** for the **Paper Tray Configuration** item under **Installable Options**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise x64 Edition

1. Click **Start**→**Printers and Faxes**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer that is using the PS driver, and then select **Properties** from the displayed list.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab, and then select **2-Tray Module** for the **Paper Tray Configuration** item under **Installable Options**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers and Faxes** dialog box.

Windows Server® 2008, Windows Server 2008 Enterprise x64 Edition

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Printers**.
2. Right-click the mulfunction printer that is using the PS driver, and then select **Properties** from the displayed list.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab, and then select **2-Tray Module** for the **Paper Tray Configuration** item under **Installable Options**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

Windows 2000/Windows NT 4.0

1. Click **Start**→**Settings**→**Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer that is using the PS driver, and then select **Properties** from the displayed list.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab, and then select **2-Tray Module** for the **Paper Tray Configuration** item under **Installable Options**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

Mac OS X

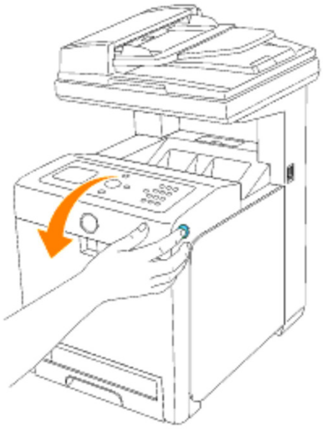
1. Select the multifunction printer from the **Printer List** screen in **Print Center** (or **Printer Setup Utility**).
2. Click **Printers** on the **Print Center** (or **Printer Setup Utility**) menu bar, and select **Show Info**.
3. Select **Installable Options**, and select the options that have been installed on the multifunction printer, and then click **Apply Changes**.

Installing a Duplexer

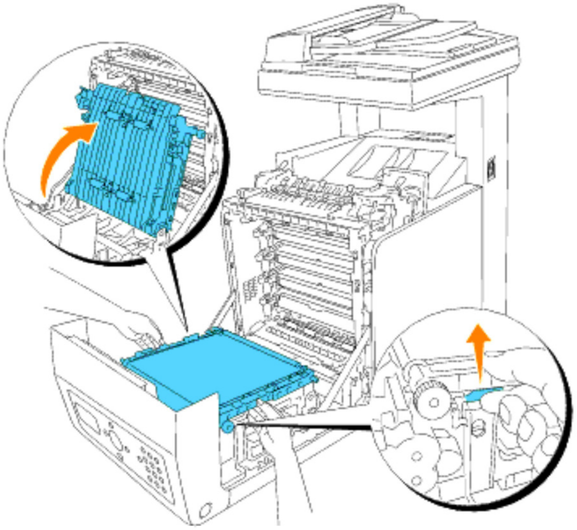
NOTICE: To protect the drums of the print cartridges against bright light, close the front cover within five minutes. If the front cover remains open for more than five minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

NOTICE: Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the transfer belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the transfer belt unit may reduce print quality.

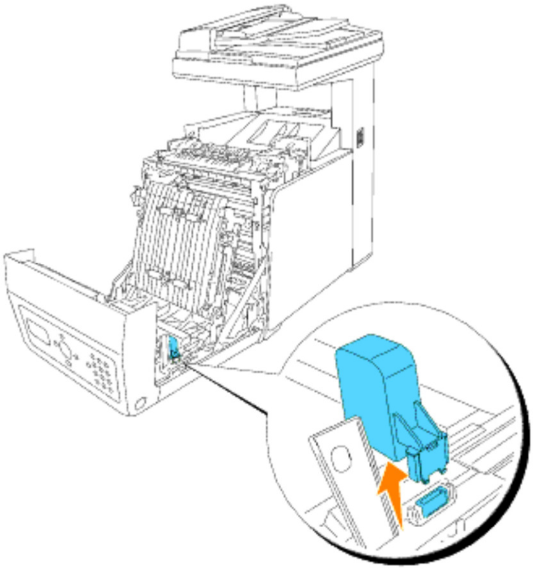
1. Ensure that the multifunction printer is turned off.
2. Remove all packaging from duplex module.
3. Push the button (right side) and open the front cover.



4. Pull up on the belt release levers and rotate the transfer belt unit up as shown in the illustration.

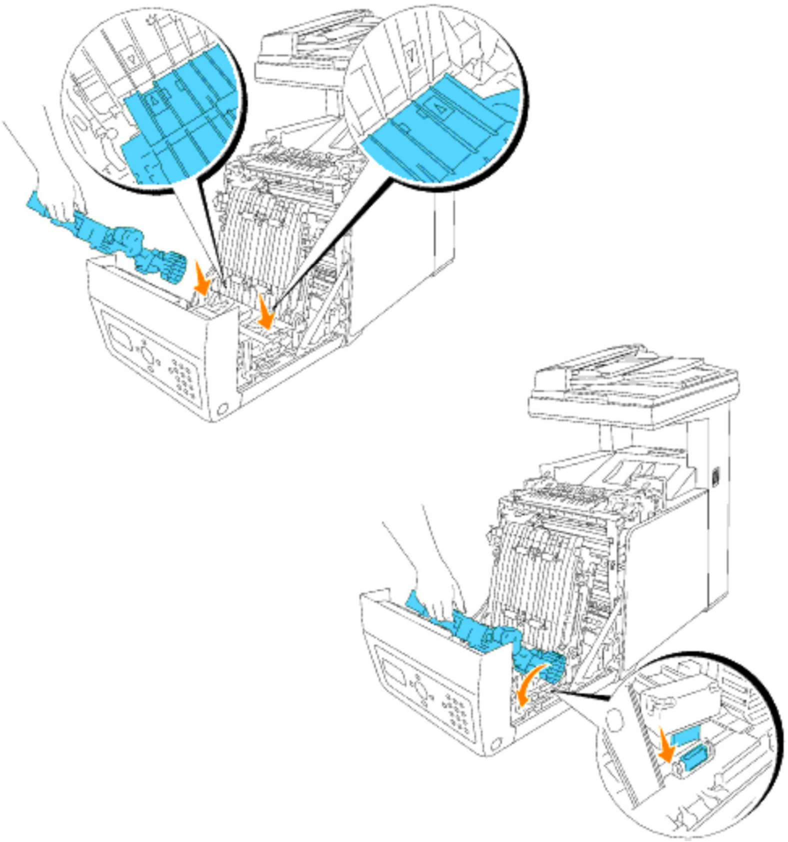


5. Remove the connector cap.



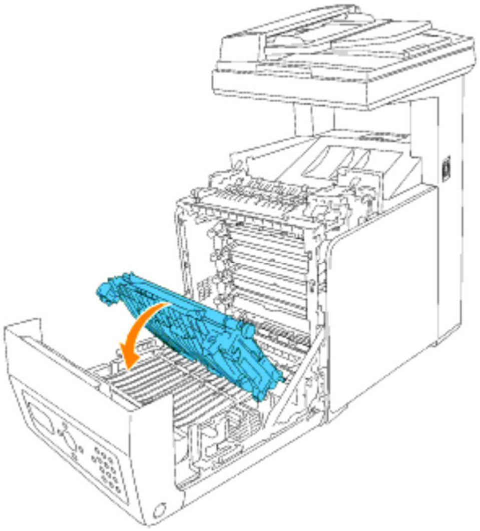
NOTE: The connector cap in your printer may look different from illustration.

6. With the connector of the duplexer toward the slot, push the duplexer into the slot.

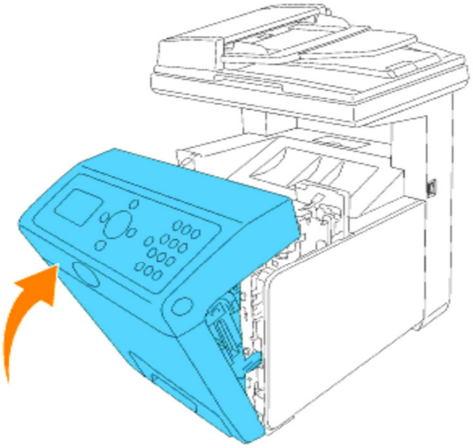


NOTE: Ensure that the duplexer is correctly connected to the multifunction printer with connectors and cannot be moved easily.

7. Close the transfer belt unit by pulling it down.



8. Close the front cover.



9. Turn on the multifunction printer.
10. Print a system settings page to verify that the optional duplexer is installed correctly.
    a. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
    b. Press ▼ until `>Reports` appears, and then press ✓ .
    c. `System Settings` is displayed. Press ✓ .

       The system settings page is printed.
    d. Verify **Duplexer** is listed in the system settings under **Printer Options**.

       If the duplexer is not listed, turn off the multifunction printer, unplug the power cable, and reinstall the optional duplexer.
11. If you installed the optional duplexer after installing the printer driver, update your driver by following the instructions for each operating system. If the multifunction printer is on a network, update the driver for each client.

When Using PCL Driver

Microsoft® Windows Vista®

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer and select **Properties**.

3. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

Windows® XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise x64 Edition

1. Click **Start**→**Printers and Faxes**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer and select **Properties**.
3. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers and Faxes** dialog box.

Windows Server® 2008, Windows Server 2008 Enterprise x64 Edition

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer and select **Properties**.
3. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

Windows 2000/Windows NT® 4.0

1. Click **Start**→**Settings**→**Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer and select **Properties**.
3. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking Get Information from Printer, follow these steps:

1. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Duplexer** in the **Items** list box.
2. Select **Available** for the duplexer setting.
3. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
4. Close the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) dialog box.

When Using PS Driver

Microsoft Windows Vista

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer that is using the PS driver, and then select **Properties** from the displayed list.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab, and then select **Available** for the **Duplexer** item under **Installable Options**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003

Enterprise x64 Edition

1. Click **Start**→**Printers and Faxes**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer that is using the PS driver, and then select **Properties** from the displayed list.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab, and then select **Available** for the **Duplexer** item under **Installable Options**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers and Faxes** dialog box.

Windows Server® 2008, Windows Server 2008 Enterprise x64 Edition

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer that is using the PS driver, and then select **Properties** from the displayed list.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab, and then select **Available** for the **Duplexer** item under **Installable Options**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

Windows 2000/Windows NT 4.0

1. Click **Start**→**Settings**→**Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer that is using the PS driver, and then select **Properties** from the displayed list.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab, and then select **Available** for the **Duplexer** item under **Installable Options**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

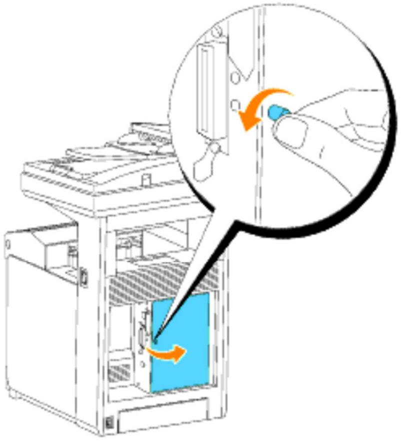
Mac OS X

1. Select the multifunction printer from the **Printer List** screen in **Print Center** (or **Printer Setup Utility**).
2. Click **Printers** on the **Print Center** (or **Printer Setup Utility**) menu bar, and select **Show Info**.
3. Select **Installable Options**, and select the options that have been installed on the multifunction printer, and then click **Apply Changes**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

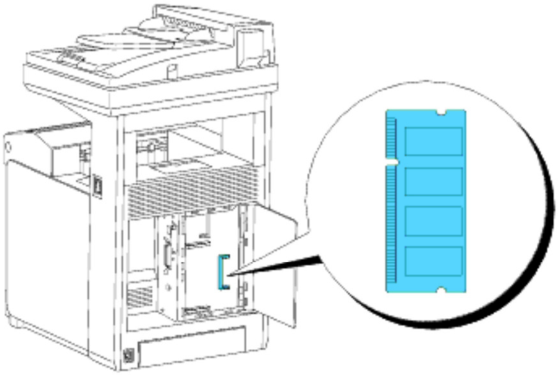
Installing a Memory Card

Your multifunction printer supports 256 MB, 512 MB, and 1024 MB additional memory cards.

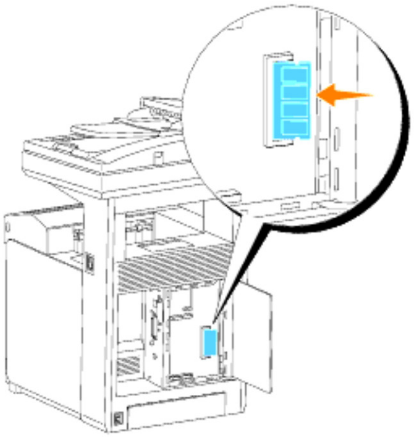
1. Ensure that the multifunction printer is turned off.
2. Turn the screw on the control board cover in a counter-clockwise direction and open the cover.



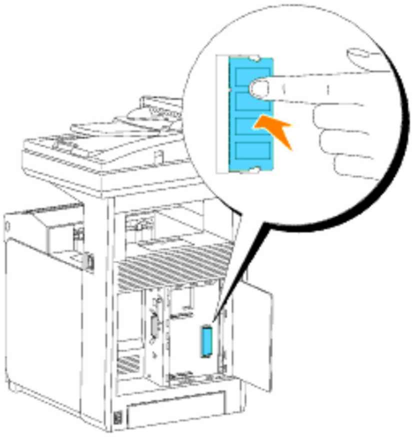
3. With the connector of the memory card toward the slot, insert the memory card at an angle into the slot.



4. Push the memory card into the slot firmly.

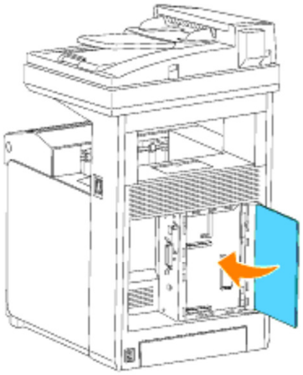


5. Pivot the memory card downward until it clicks into place.



NOTE: Ensure that the memory card is firmly fixed in the slot and cannot be moved easily.

6. Close the control board cover and turn the screw clockwise.



7. Turn on the multifunction printer.
8. Print a system settings page to verify that the additional print memory is installed correctly.
   a. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
   b. Press ▼ until `>Reports` appears, and then press ✓ .
   c. `System Settings` is displayed. Press ✓ .

      The system settings page is printed.

   d. Verify the capacity of the installed memory listed in the system settings under **General**.

      If the memory capacity has not increased, turn off the multifunction printer, unplug the power cable, and reinstall the memory card.
9. If you installed the additional print memory after installing the printer driver, update your driver by following the instructions for the operating system you are using. If the multifunction printer is on a network, update the driver for each client.

When Using PCL Driver

Microsoft® Windows Vista®

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer and select **Properties**.
3. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**.

4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box

Windows® XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise x64 Edition

1. Click **Start**→**Printers and Faxes**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer and select **Properties**.
3. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers and Faxes** dialog box.

Windows Server® 2008, Windows Server 2008 Enterprise x64 Edition

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer and select **Properties**.
3. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

Windows 2000/Windows NT® 4.0

1. Click **Start**→**Settings**→**Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer and select **Properties**.
3. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking Get Information from Printer, follow these steps:

1. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Memory Capacity** on the **Items** list box.
2. Select the total amount of the installed print memory for the memory capacity setting.
3. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
4. Close the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) dialog box.

When Using PS Driver

Microsoft Windows Vista

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer and select **Properties**.
3. Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise x64 Edition

1. Click **Start**→**Printers and Faxes**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer that is using the PS driver, and then select **Properties** from the displayed list.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab, and then select the total amount of the installed print memory for the **Memory Capacity** item under **Installable Options**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

Windows Server® 2008, Windows Server 2008 Enterprise x64 Edition

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer that is using the PS driver, and then select **Properties** from the displayed list.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab, and then select the total amount of the installed print memory for the **Memory Capacity** item under **Installable Options**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

Windows 2000/Windows NT 4.0

1. Click **Start**→**Settings**→**Printers**.
2. Right-click the multifunction printer that is using the PS driver, and then select **Properties** from the displayed list.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab, and then select the total amount of the installed print memory for the **Memory Capacity** item under **Installable Options**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Close the **Printers** dialog box.

Mac OS X

1. Select the multifunction printer from the **Printer List** screen in **Print Center** (or **Printer Setup Utility**).
2. Click **Printers** on the **Print Center** (or **Printer Setup Utility**) menu bar, and select **Show Info**.
3. Select **Installable Options**, and select the options that have been installed on the multifunction printer, and then click **Apply Changes**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

Installing the Dell Multi-Protocol Card

A multi-protocol card allows you to use the following network protocols.

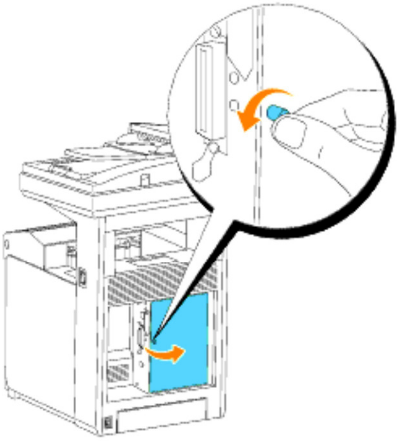
Network protocol	Supported operating systems
IPP	Windows Vista/XP/XP x64/Server 2003/Server 2003 x64/Server 2008/Server 2008 x64/2000/NT 4.0, Mac OS X 10.3.9/10.4.3
SMB	Windows Vista/XP/XP x64/Server 2003/Server 2003 x64/Server 2008/Server 2008 x64/2000/ NT 4.0
IPX/SPX	NetWare 3.12/3.2/4.1/4.11/4.2/5/6/6.5*
AppleTalk	Mac OS X 10.2.8/10.3.9/10.4.3
Bonjour	Mac OS X 10.2.8/10.3.9/10.4.3

IPv6	Windows Vista

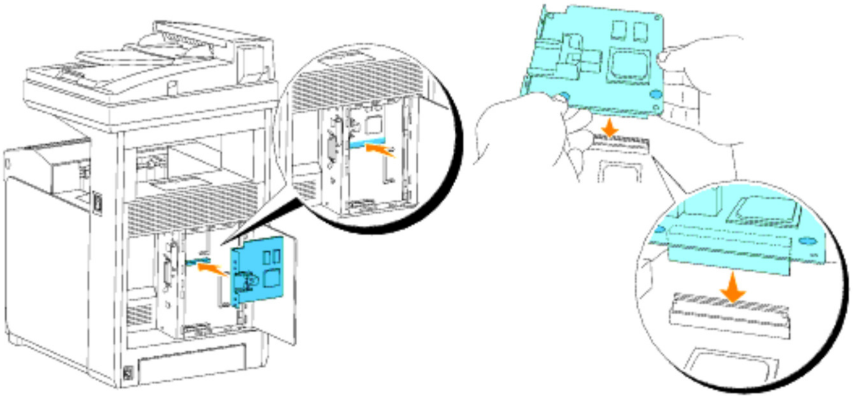
*Only compatible with Support Pack 1.1 or later.

1. Ensure that the multifunction printer is turned off and unplug all cables including the power cord from the rear of the multifunction printer.

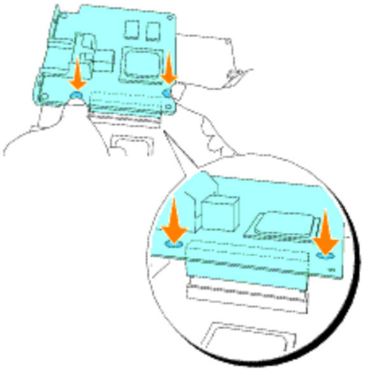
2. Turn the screw on the control board cover in counter-clockwise direction and open the cover.



3. With the connector of the multi-protocol card aligned over the mating connector on the control board, make connections together by pressing on the back of the MPC card nearest the connecter pins.



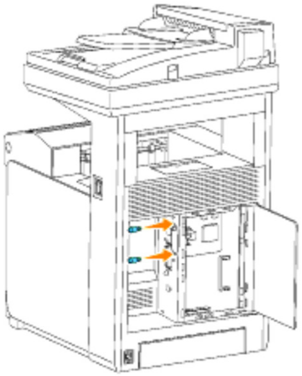
4. Press the printed circles with your fingers to secure the multi-protocol card to the connector.



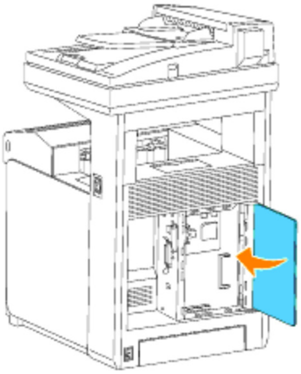
NOTE: Avoid pressing down on the multi-protocol card's connector.

NOTE: Ensure that the multi-protocol card is firmly fixed in the connector and cannot be moved easily.

5. Insert the two screws through the control board case and into the Multi-Protocol Card as shown, and tighten the screws.



6. Close the control board cover and turn the screw clockwise.



Confirming the Installation of the Multi-Protocol Card

1. Print a printer settings page to verify that the optional multi-protocol card is installed correctly.
   a. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
   b. Press ▼ until `>Reports` appears, and then press ✓ .
   c. `System Settings` is displayed. Press ✓ .

      The system settings page is printed.
   d. Verify **Multi-Protocol Card** is listed in the system settings under **Printer Options**.

      If it is not listed, turn off the multifunction printer, unplug the power cable, and reinstall the optional multi-protocol card.

Installing the Dell Wireless Printer Adapter 3310 USB

Connectivity Technology	Wireless
Compliant Standards	802.11b/802.11g
Bandwidth	2.4GHz
Data Transfer Rate	11g mode: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, 6 Mbps 11b mode: 11, 5.5, 2, 1 Mbps
Device Type	Wireless Printer Adapter

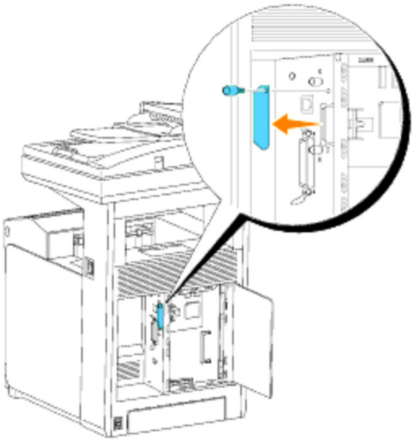
Security	64(40-bit key)/128(104-bit key) WEP Encryption/WPA/WAP2

NOTE: To use the wireless printer adapter, you must install the multi-protocol card first. To install the card, see "Installing the Dell Multi-Protocol Card".

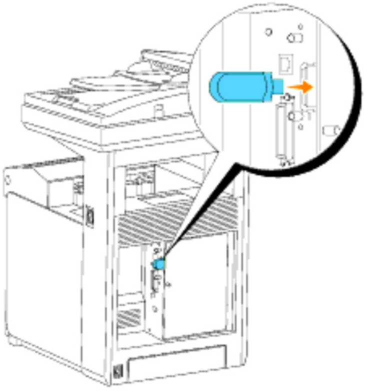
1. Ensure that the multifunction printer is turned off and unplug all cables including the power cord from the rear of the multifunction printer.

NOTE: Ensure that the multi-protocol card is installed.

2. Remove the single thumbscrew from the top of the plate covering the wireless printer adapter socket and then remove the plate.

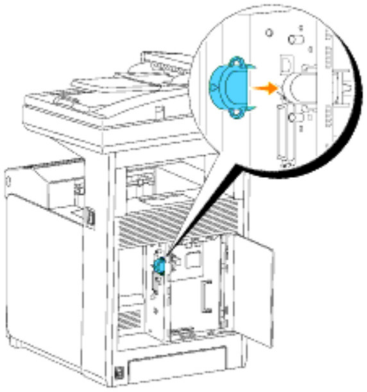


3. Insert the wireless printer adapter into the USB socket with the Dell logo of the adapter facing out.



NOTE: Ensure that the adapter is firmly fixed in the socket and cannot be moved easily.

4. Attach the wireless printer adapter cap by inserting the cap with the mark facing out until it clicks into place.



5. Turn on the multifunction printer and configure the wireless network settings.

Wireless Installation using USB connection

NOTE: The optional multi-protocol card with the Wireless LAN Adapter attached must be installed on the multifunction printer. Read this manual or the installation manual found in the wireless network adapter box to install the optional multi-protocol card and wireless network adapter for the Dell MFP Laser 3115cn.

Case 1:	Setup the wireless connection in the Infrastructure mode through the USB cable, if you are using Microsoft® Windows® XP, Windows 2000, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server® 2008, or Windows Vista®
Case 2:	Installation of the printer driver on an existing wirelessly connected Dell Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn
Case 3:	Construct new wireless network environment for both computer and multifunction printer (When wireless setting needs to your computer)

Case 1. Setup the wireless connection in the Infrastructure mode through the USB cable, if you are using Microsoft® Windows® XP, Windows 2000, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server® 2008, or Windows Vista®

NOTE: The recommended wireless protocol setup requires a USB cable to be present during setup. Ensure that it is available before you start the wireless setup. To purchase a USB cable, visit **www.dell.com**.

NOTE: Ensure that your computer is already connected to your wireless access point, and that you have the wireless protocol information (SSID, Security Settings, and Password) about your wireless access point before you start the wireless setup. If in doubt, contact your wireless access point distributor.

If you are using Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 (after SP1), Windows Server 2008, or Windows Vista, you will need to turn off Windows Firewall before you proceed with the installation. To disable or enable your built-in operating system firewall:

1. Click **Start**→ **Help and Support**.
2. In the **Search** box, type `firewall` and then click the green arrow.
3. In the **Pick a Task** list, click **Enable or disable Internet Connection Firewall** and then follow the instructions on the screen.

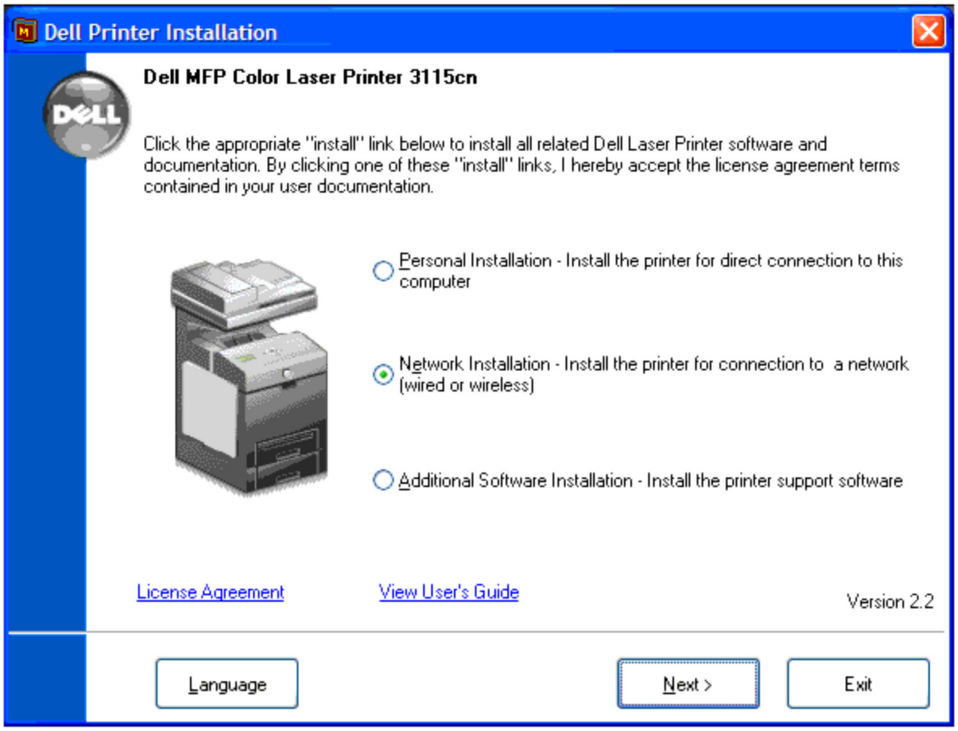
NOTE: Dell recommends that you enable your built-in operating system firewall after you install the printer software. Enabling the built-in operating system firewall after you install the printer software does not limit the use of your network printer.

1. Insert the *Drivers and Utilities* CD into the computer.

NOTE: If the CD does not automatically launch, click **Start**→ **Run**, type `D:\Setup.exe` (where D is the drive letter of your CD), and then click **OK**.

NOTE: For Windows Vista, click **Continue** when the **User Account Control** dialog box appears.

2. Select **Network Installation**.



Dell Printer Installation

Dell MFP Color Laser Printer 3115cn

Click the appropriate "install" link below to install all related Dell Laser Printer software and documentation. By clicking one of these "install" links, I hereby accept the license agreement terms contained in your user documentation.

○ Personal Installation - Install the printer for direct connection to this computer

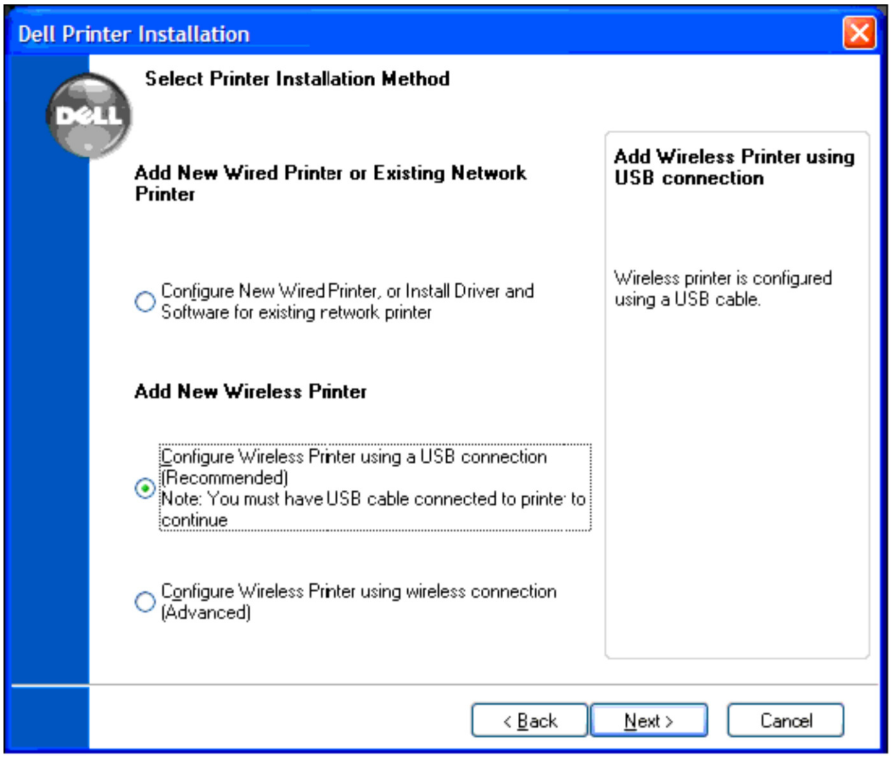
● Network Installation - Install the printer for connection to a network (wired or wireless)

○ Additional Software Installation - Install the printer support software

3. Connect a USB cable from the Dell MFP Laser 3115cn to your computer.

NOTE: When the **Found New Hardware Wizard** dialog box appears, press **Cancel** to continue.

4. Select **Configure Wireless Printer using a USB connection** to setup the wireless protocol on the printer.



Dell Printer Installation

Select Printer Installation Method

Add New Wired Printer or Existing Network Printer

○ Configure New Wired Printer, or Install Driver and Software for existing network printer

Add New Wireless Printer

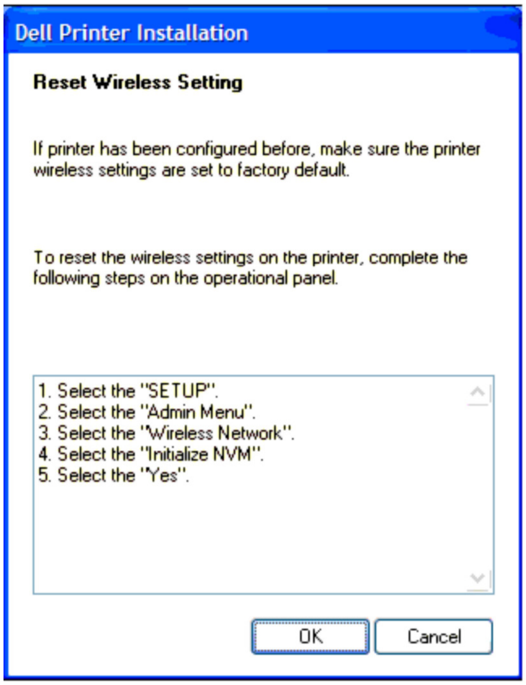
● Configure Wireless Printer using a USB connection (Recommended)
Note: You must have USB cable connected to printer to continue

○ Configure Wireless Printer using wireless connection (Advanced)

Add Wireless Printer using USB connection

Wireless printer is configured using a USB cable.

5. When this instruction screen appears, follow the instructions to reset the wireless settings on the printer.


Dell Printer Installation

Reset Wireless Setting

If printer has been configured before, make sure the printer wireless settings are set to factory default.

To reset the wireless settings on the printer, complete the following steps on the operational panel.

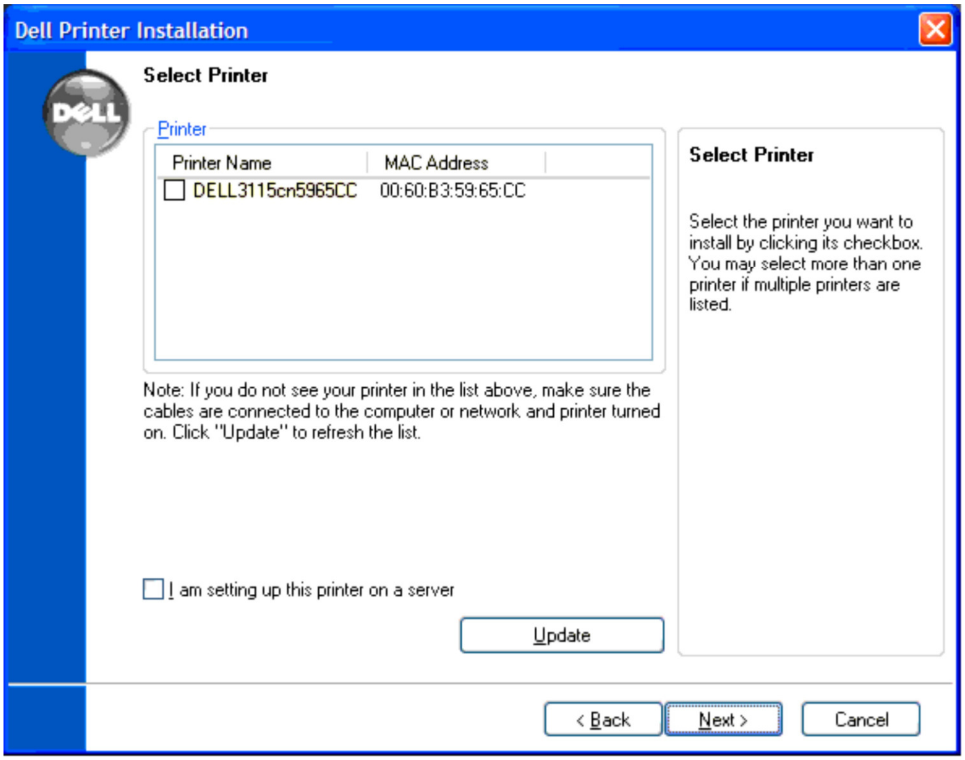
1. Select the "SETUP".
2. Select the "Admin Menu".
3. Select the "Wireless Network".
4. Select the "Initialize NVM".
5. Select the "Yes".

6. Click **OK** when you are done.

NOTE: When the **Found New Hardware Wizard** dialog box appears, press **Cancel** to continue.

7. Click on the checkbox next to the printer you want to configure and click **Next**.

NOTE: If you are unable to see any printer listed, click on **Update** to search for the printer. If you are still unable to see a printer listed in the **Printer** text box, check your USB connection, ensure that the wireless adapter is seated correctly and restart the installation again.


Dell Printer Installation

Select Printer

Printer

Printer Name	MAC Address
☐ DELL3115cn5965CC	00:60:B3:59:65:CC

Note: If you do not see your printer in the list above, make sure the cables are connected to the computer or network and printer turned on. Click "Update" to refresh the list.

☐ I am setting up this printer on a server

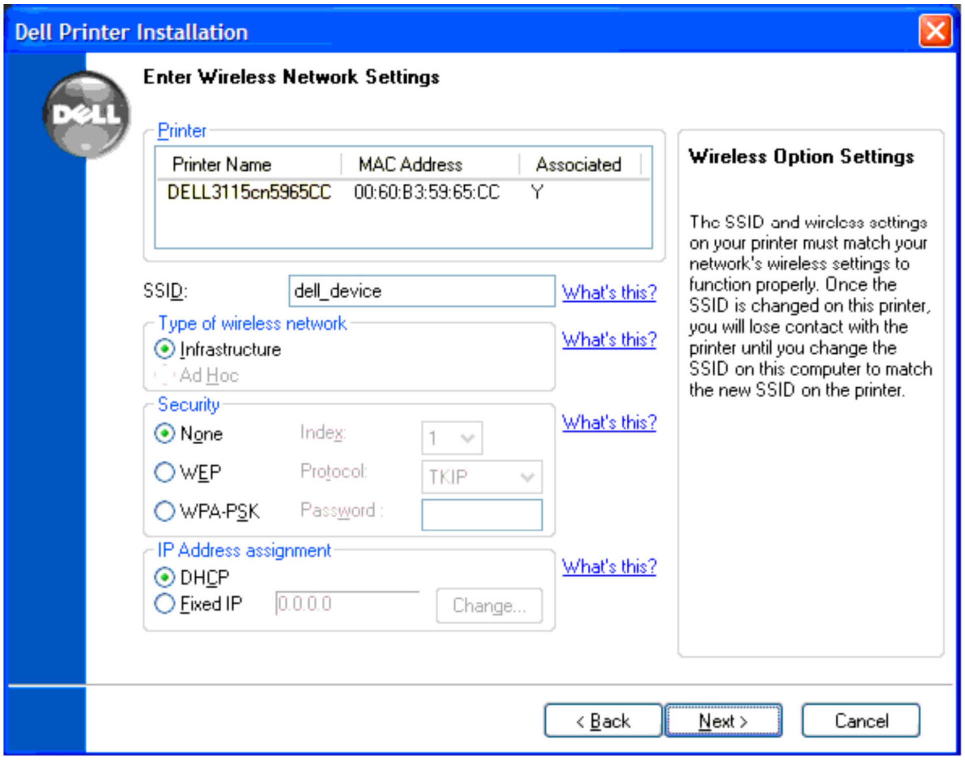
Select Printer

Select the printer you want to install by clicking its checkbox. You may select more than one printer if multiple printers are listed.

8. Enter the **SSID** used in your wireless router.
9. Enter the **Security** used in your wireless router.
10. If you are using **WEP** or **WPA-PSK** security in your wireless router, enter the **Index**, **Protocol**, and **Password** information.

NOTE: To set WPA2-PSK-AES as security, select WPA-PSK and AES.

11. Click **Next** when you are done.



Printer Name	MAC Address	Associated
DELL3115cn5965CC	00:60:B3:59:65:CC	Y

SSID: dell_device

Type of wireless network: ● Infrastructure ○ Ad Hoc

Security: ● None ○ WEP ○ WPA-PSK
Index: 1
Protocol: TKIP
Password:

IP Address assignment: ● DHCP ○ Fixed IP 0.0.0.0

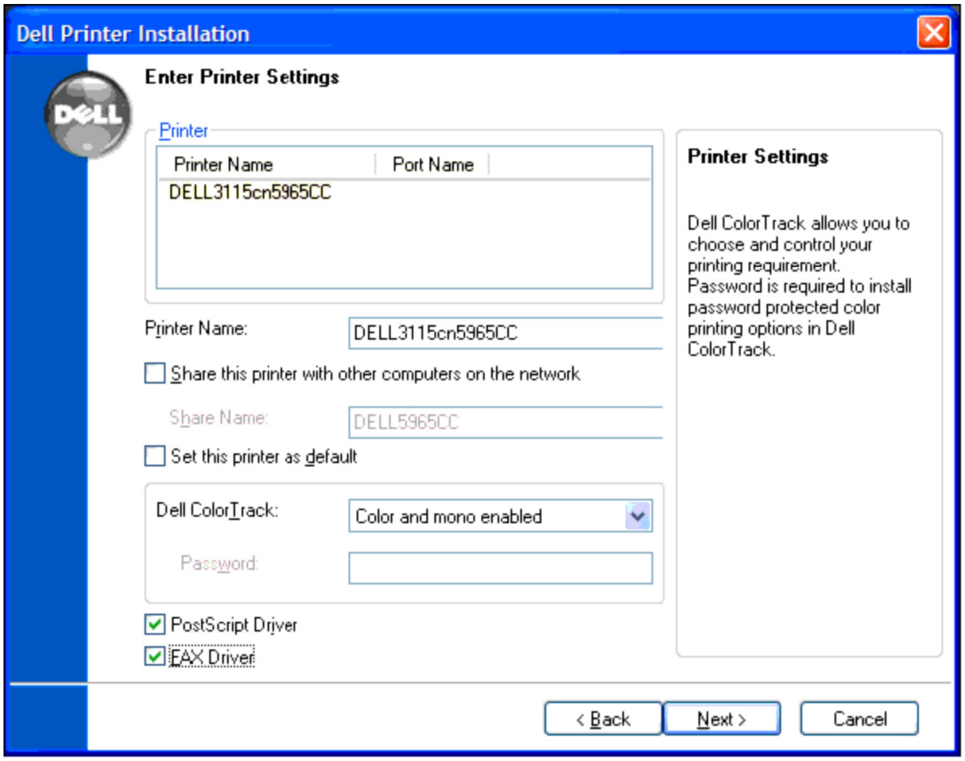
Wireless Option Settings

The SSID and wireless settings on your printer must match your network's wireless settings to function properly. Once the SSID is changed on this printer, you will lose contact with the printer until you change the SSID on this computer to match the new SSID on the printer.

12. You can change the Printer Name and driver setup according to your requirement. When you select the **Fixed IP** option button for **IP Address assignment**, click **Change...** and enter the IP address and subnet mask on the screen.

NOTE: When you enter a fixed IP address, avoid the "169.254.xxx.xxx" address used by AutoIP.

13. Click **Next** when you are done.



Dell Printer Installation

Enter Printer Settings

Printer

Printer Name	Port Name
DELL3115cn5965CC	

Printer Name: DELL3115cn5965CC

☐ Share this printer with other computers on the network

Share Name: DELL5965CC

☐ Set this printer as default

Dell ColorTrack: Color and mono enabled

Password:

☑ PostScript Driver

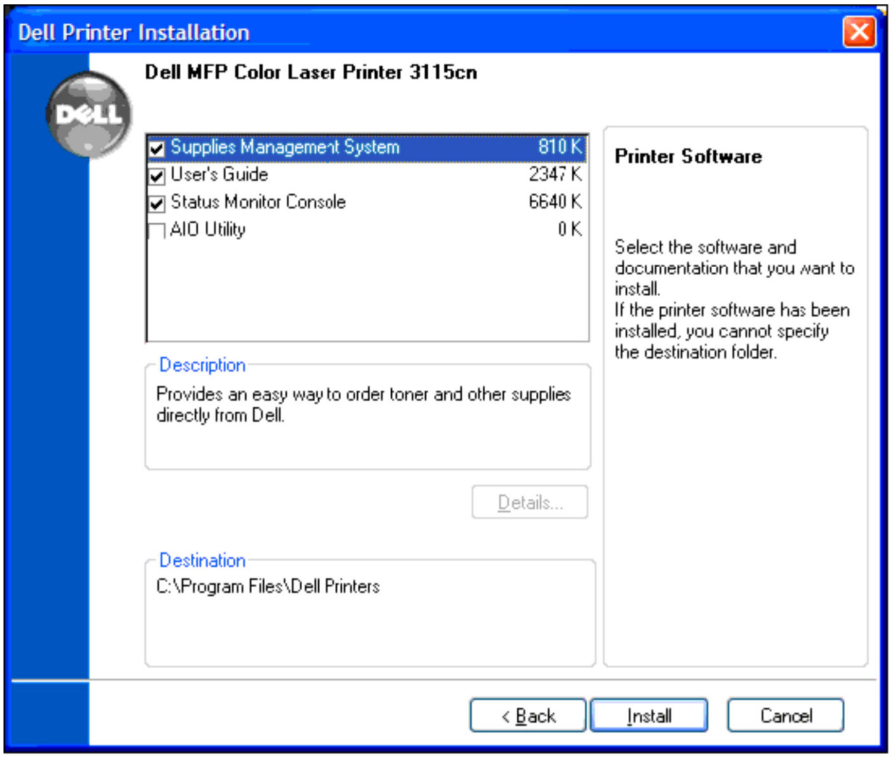
☑ FAX Driver

Printer Settings

Dell ColorTrack allows you to choose and control your printing requirement.
Password is required to install password protected color printing options in Dell ColorTrack.

14. Select the different printer software to install.

15. Click **Install** when you are done.



Dell Printer Installation

Dell MFP Color Laser Printer 3115cn

☑	Supplies Management System	810 K
☑	User's Guide	2347 K
☑	Status Monitor Console	6640 K
☐	AIO Utility	0 K

Description

Provides an easy way to order toner and other supplies directly from Dell.

Destination

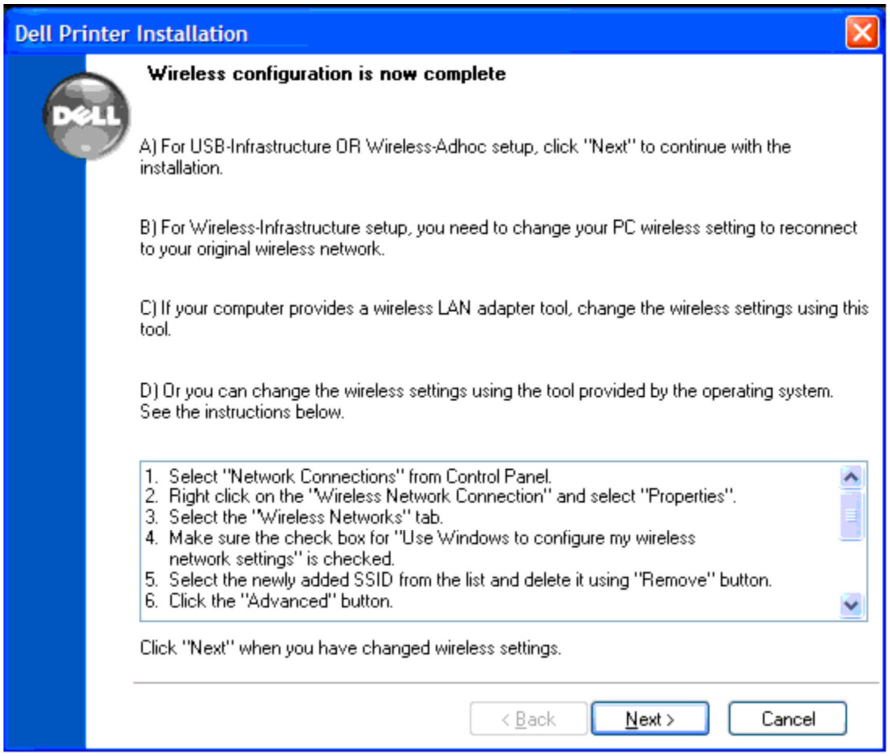
C:\Program Files\Dell Printers

Printer Software

Select the software and documentation that you want to install.
If the printer software has been installed, you cannot specify the destination folder.

16. When you see the **Wireless configuration is now complete** screen, you have successfully configured the wireless setting on your printer.

17. Click **Next** to continue.



Wireless configuration is now complete

A) For USB-Infrastructure OR Wireless-Adhoc setup, click "Next" to continue with the installation.

B) For Wireless-Infrastructure setup, you need to change your PC wireless setting to reconnect to your original wireless network.

C) If your computer provides a wireless LAN adapter tool, change the wireless settings using this tool.

D) Or you can change the wireless settings using the tool provided by the operating system. See the instructions below.

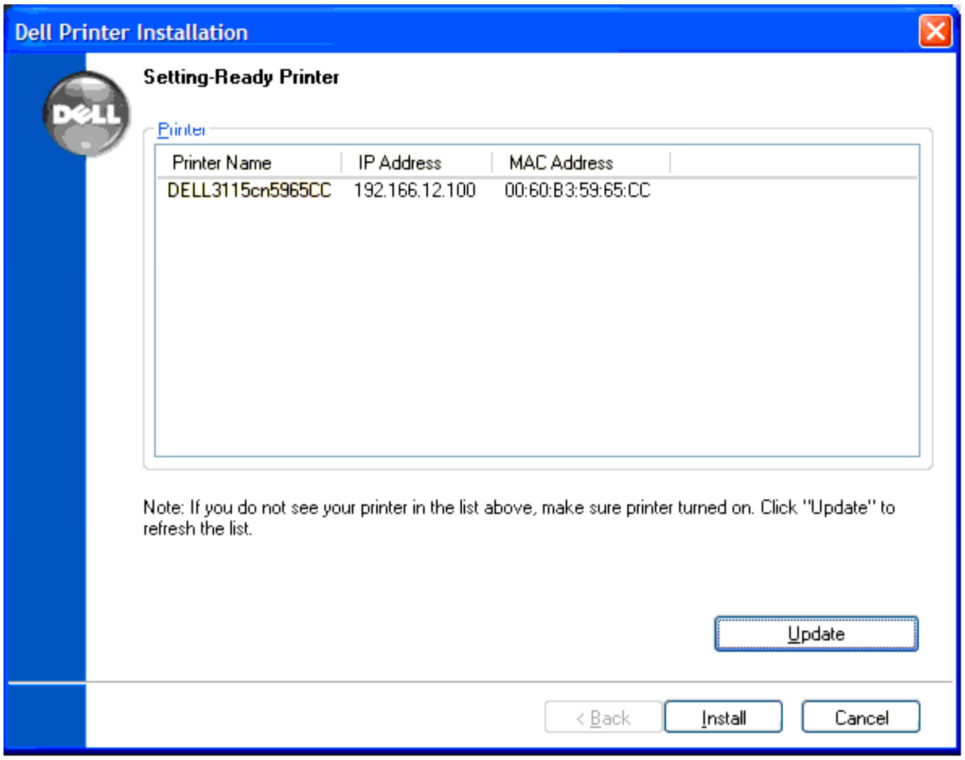
1. Select "Network Connections" from Control Panel.
2. Right click on the "Wireless Network Connection" and select "Properties".
3. Select the "Wireless Networks" tab.
4. Make sure the check box for "Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings" is checked.
5. Select the newly added SSID from the list and delete it using "Remove" button.
6. Click the "Advanced" button.

Click "Next" when you have changed wireless settings.

18. You should now see this screen with an IP Address detected for your wireless printer. If you do not see an IP Address listed next to your printer, click **Update**.

19. Click **Install** to continue.

NOTE: If you are unable to locate an IP Address for your printer, check that you have disabled the Windows Firewall on your computer, and that your computer is properly connected to your wireless access point or wireless router, and that your USB cable is properly connected to your printer. Click **Cancel** and restart the installation again.



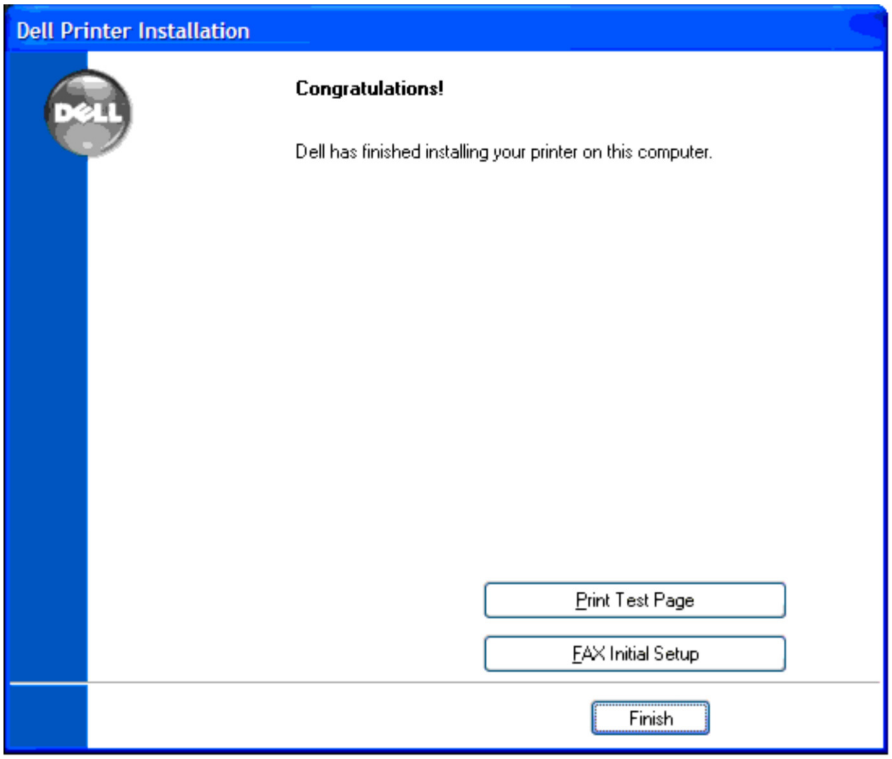
Setting-Ready Printer

Printer

Printer Name	IP Address	MAC Address
DELL3115cn5965CC	192.166.12.100	00:60:B3:59:65:CC

Note: If you do not see your printer in the list above, make sure printer turned on. Click "Update" to refresh the list.

20. If you select the **I am setting up this printer on server** check box on the **Select Printer** screen and also select the **PostScript Driver** check box on the **Enter Printer Settings** screen, the **Adobe Systems Inc. License Agreement** screen appears. Select the **I accept the terms of the license agreement** option button, and then click **Install**.
21. You have now successfully setup the wireless settings on your printer and successfully installed the printer software on the computer.
22. Disconnect the USB cable from your computer.
23. Click **Print Test Page** to test your printer software setup or **FAX Initial Setup** to setup the fax on your printer or click **Finish** to exit the installation.



Congratulations!

Dell has finished installing your printer on this computer.

Case 2. Installation of the printer driver on an existing wirelessly connected Dell Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn

NOTE: Ensure that your computer is already connected to your wireless router, and that you have the wireless protocol information about your wireless router before you start the wireless setup. If in doubt, contact your wireless router distributor.

NOTE: If you are using Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 (after SP1), Windows Server 2008, or Windows Vista, you will need to turn off Windows Firewall before you proceed with the installation.

To disable or enable your built-in operating system firewall, perform the following steps:

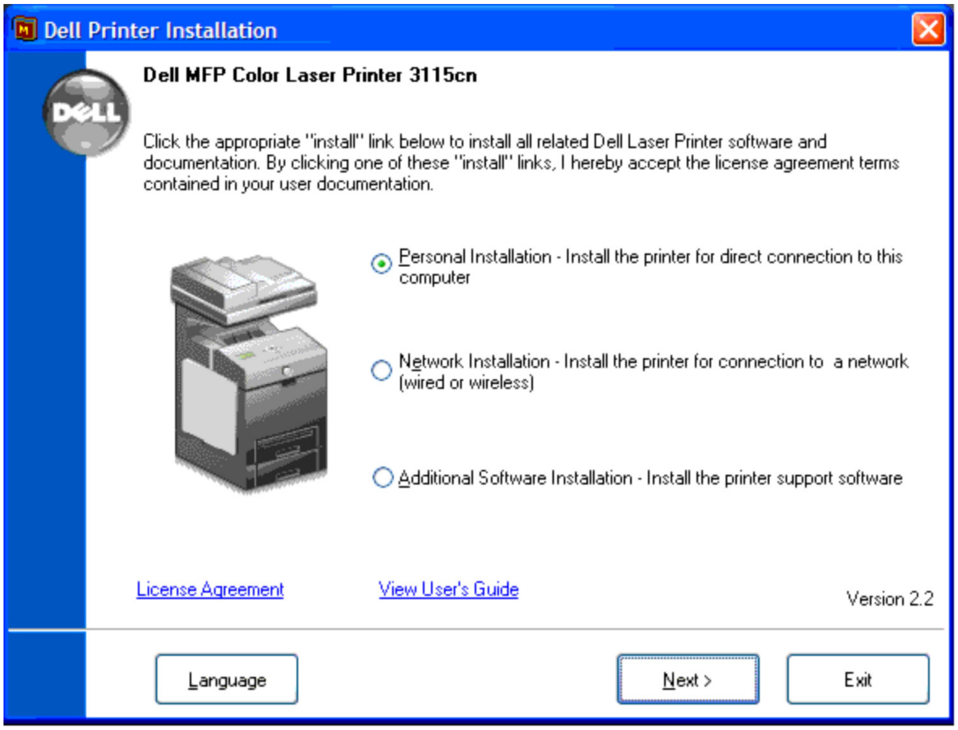
1. Click **Start**→ **Help and Support**.
2. In the **Search** box, type `firewall` and then click the green arrow.
3. In the **Pick a Task** list, click **Enable or disable Internet Connection Firewall** and then follow the instructions on the screen.

NOTE: Dell recommends that you enable your built-in operating system firewall after you install the printer software. Enabling the built-in operating system firewall after you install the printer software does not limit the use of your network printer.

1. Insert the *Drivers and Utilities* CD into the computer.

NOTE: If the CD does not automatically launch, click **Start**→ **Run**, type `D:\Setup.exe` (where D is the drive letter of your CD), and then click **OK**.

NOTE: For Windows Vista, click **Continue** when the **User Account Control** dialog box appears.



Dell Printer Installation

Dell MFP Color Laser Printer 3115cn

Click the appropriate "install" link below to install all related Dell Laser Printer software and documentation. By clicking one of these "install" links, I hereby accept the license agreement terms contained in your user documentation.

● Personal Installation - Install the printer for direct connection to this computer

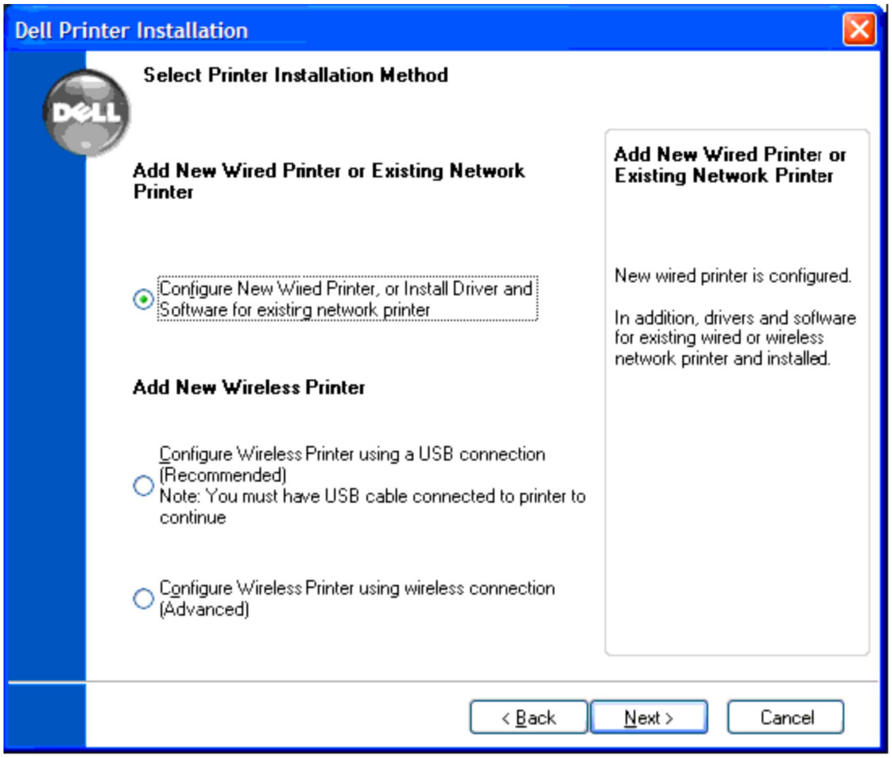
○ Network Installation - Install the printer for connection to a network (wired or wireless)

○ Additional Software Installation - Install the printer support software

Version 2.2

2. Select **Personal Installation**.

3. Select **Configure New Wired Printer, or Install Driver and Software for existing network printer** to install the printer software on your computer.



Dell Printer Installation

Select Printer Installation Method

Add New Wired Printer or Existing Network Printer

● Configure New Wired Printer, or Install Driver and Software for existing network printer

Add New Wireless Printer

○ Configure Wireless Printer using a USB connection (Recommended)
Note: You must have USB cable connected to printer to continue

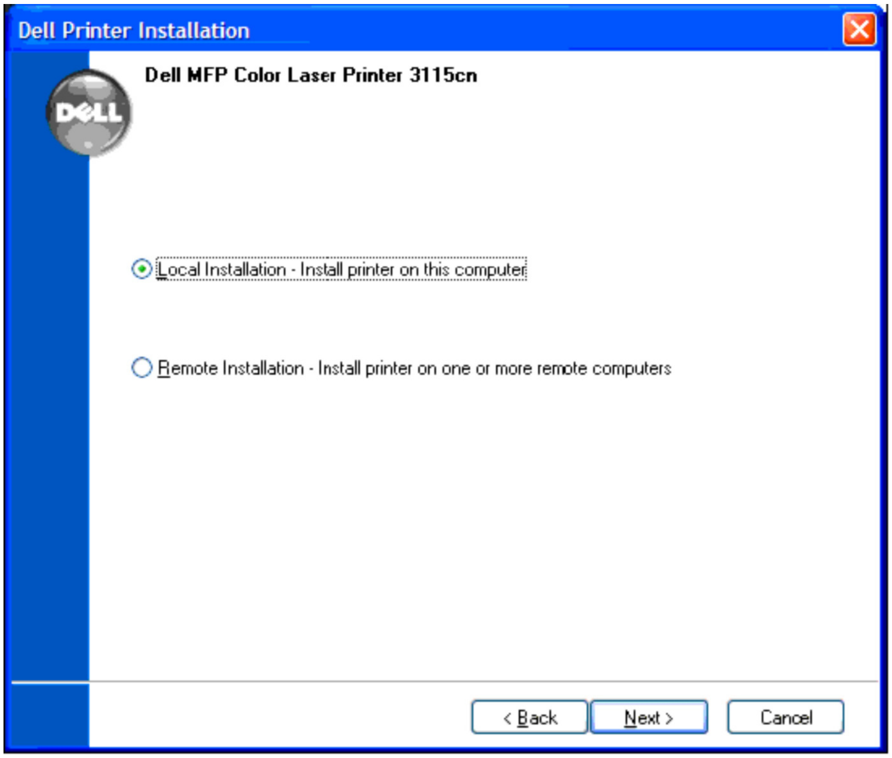
○ Configure Wireless Printer using wireless connection (Advanced)

Add New Wired Printer or Existing Network Printer

New wired printer is configured.

In addition, drivers and software for existing wired or wireless network printer and installed.

4. Click **Local Installation-Install printer on this computer** to install the printer software on your computer.

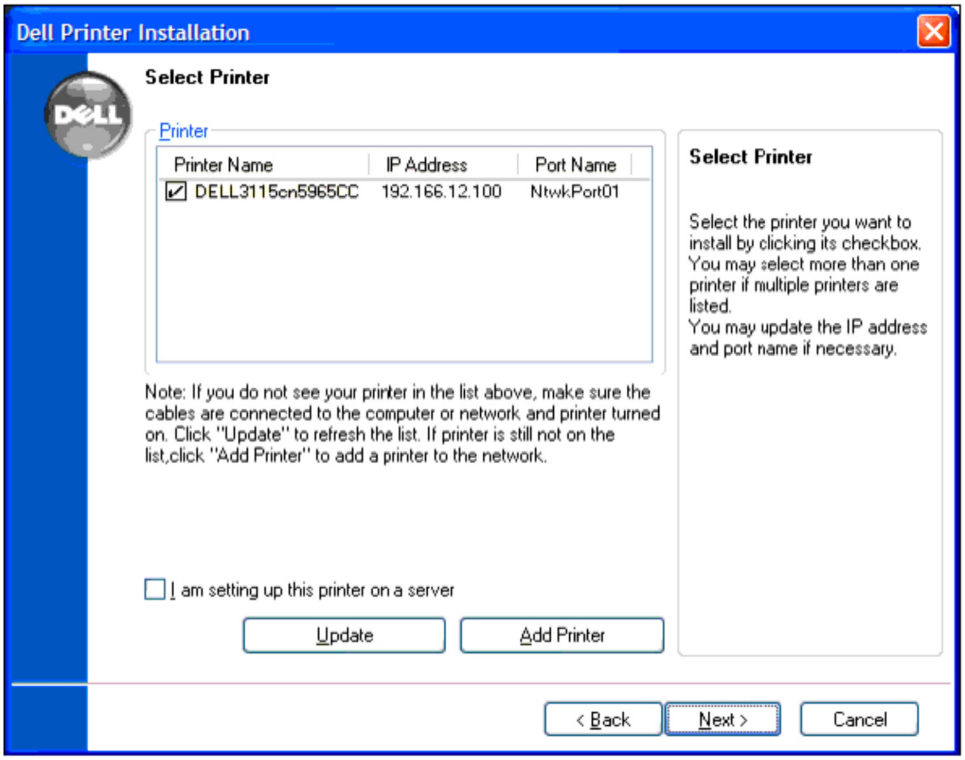


Dell MFP Color Laser Printer 3115cn

● Local Installation - Install printer on this computer

○ Remote Installation - Install printer on one or more remote computers

5. Click on the checkbox next to the printer to select the printer that you want to connect to for this installation.



Select Printer

Printer Name	IP Address	Port Name
☑ DELL3115cn5965CC	192.166.12.100	NtwkPort01

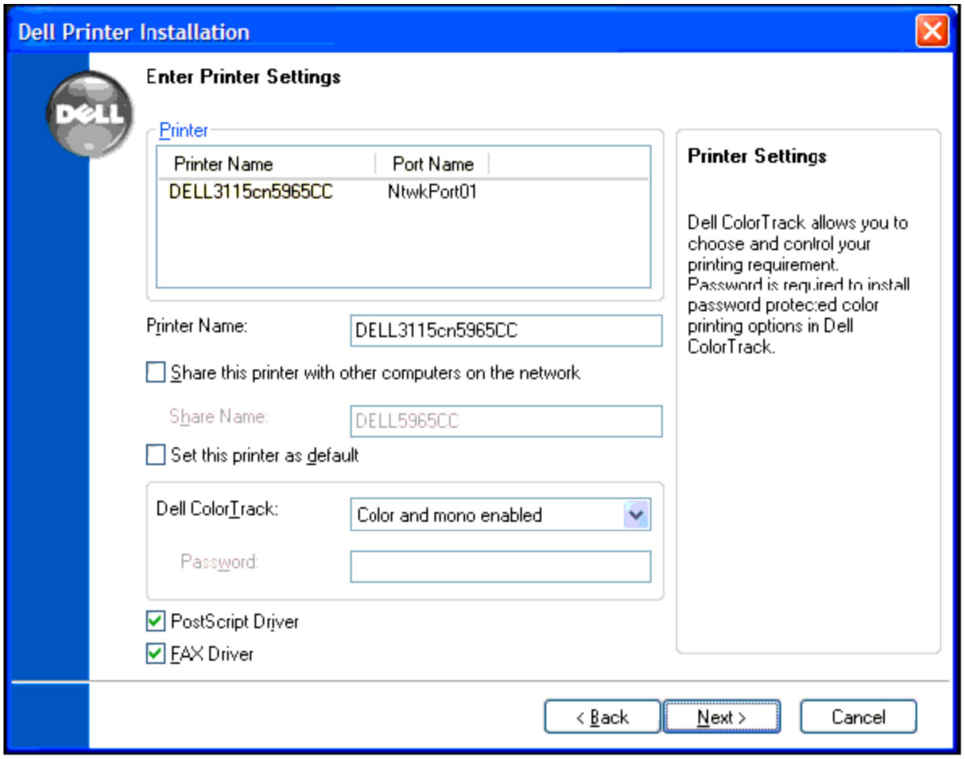
Note: If you do not see your printer in the list above, make sure the cables are connected to the computer or network and printer turned on. Click "Update" to refresh the list. If printer is still not on the list,click "Add Printer" to add a printer to the network.

☐ I am setting up this printer on a server

Select Printer

Select the printer you want to install by clicking its checkbox. You may select more than one printer if multiple printers are listed.
You may update the IP address and port name if necessary.

6. Click **Update** if you do not see your printer listed or click **Add Printer** to manually add the IP address.
7. Click **Next** to continue.
8. You can change the Printer Name and driver setup according to your requirement.



Enter Printer Settings

Printer Name	Port Name
DELL3115cn5965CC	NtwkPort01

Printer Name: DELL3115cn5965CC

☐ Share this printer with other computers on the network

Share Name: DELL5965CC

☐ Set this printer as default

Dell ColorTrack: Color and mono enabled

Password:

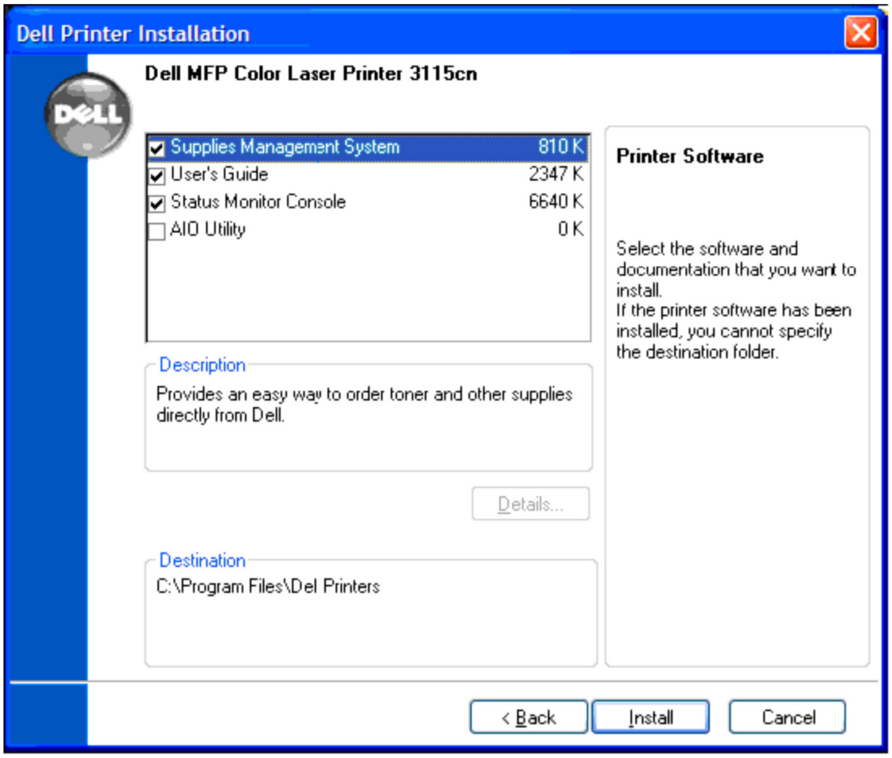
☑ PostScript Driver

☑ FAX Driver

Printer Settings

Dell ColorTrack allows you to choose and control your printing requirement.
Password is required to install password protected color printing options in Dell ColorTrack.

9. Click **Next** when you are done.
10. Select the different printer software to install.



Dell MFP Color Laser Printer 3115cn

☑ Supplies Management System	810 K
☑ User's Guide	2347 K
☑ Status Monitor Console	6640 K
☐ AIO Utility	0 K

Description

Provides an easy way to order toner and other supplies directly from Dell.

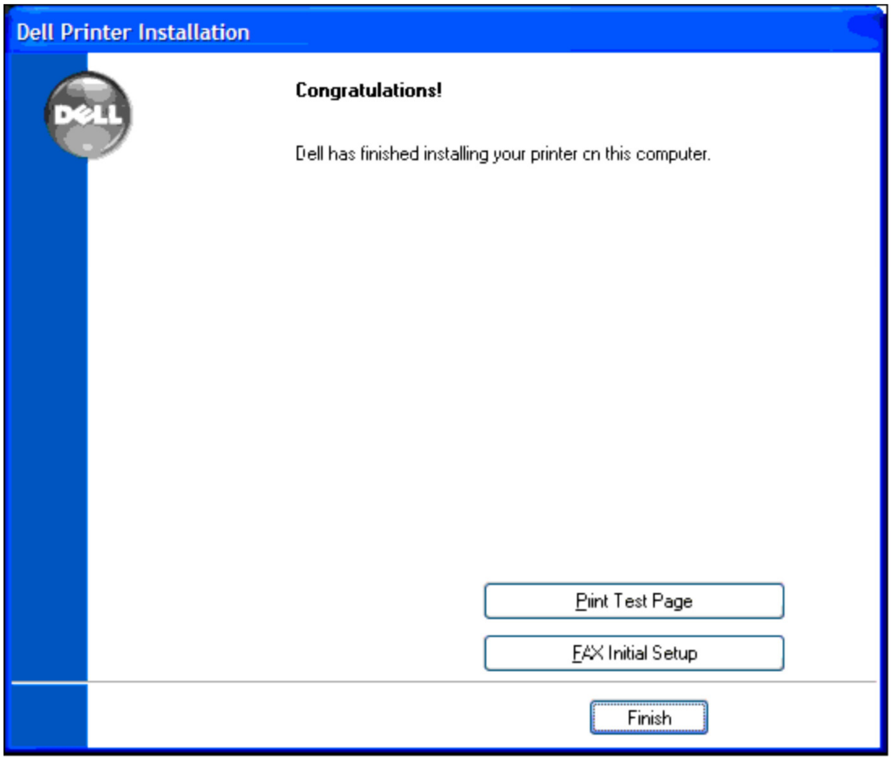
Destination

C:\Program Files\Del Printers

Printer Software

Select the software and documentation that you want to install.
If the printer software has been installed, you cannot specify the destination folder.

11. Click **Install** when you are done.
12. You have now successfully installed the printer software on the computer.
13. Click **Print Test Page** to test your printer software setup or **FAX Initial Setup** to setup the fax on your printer or click **Finish** to exit the installation.



Congratulations!

Dell has finished installing your printer on this computer.

Case 3. Construct new wireless network environment for both computer and multifunction printer (When wireless setting needs to be set to your computer)

1. Insert the *Drivers and Utilities* CD into your computer.
2. The *Drivers and Utilities* CD should launch the installation software automatically.
   If the CD does not automatically launch, click **Start**→**Run**, type `D:\Setup.exe` (where `D` is the drive letter of your CD), and then click **OK**.

NOTE: For Windows Vista, click **Continue** when the **User Account Control** dialog box appears.

3. Select the **Network Installation** option button, and then click **Next**.
4. Select the **Configure Wireless Printer using a USB connection (Recommended)** option button, and then click **Next**.
5. Reset the wireless setting of the multifunction printer following the steps on the **Reset Wireless Setting** screen.
6. In the list on the **Select Printer** screen, check the check box of the target printer that you are making wireless setting for, and then click **Next**.

NOTE: When you enter a fixed IP address, avoid the "169.254.*xxx.xxx*" address used by AutoIP.

7. On the **Enter Wireless Network Settings** screen, set each wireless setting item, and then click **Next**. When you select the **Fixed IP** option button for **IP Address assignment**, click **Change...** and enter the IP address and subnet mask on the screen.
8. Set each item on the **Enter Printer Settings** screen, and then click **Next**.
9. On the **Printer Software** screen, specify the software that you want to install and installation path, and then click **Next**. At this point, the wireless setting specified on the **Enter Wireless Network Settings** screen is sent to the multifunction printer.
10. On the **Wireless configuration is now complete** screen, create the wireless setting sent to the multifunction printer on your computer following the steps below, and then click **Next**.

    For Windows XP, Windows Server 2003:

    a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.

b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.
c. Select the **Wireless Network** tab.
d. Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.
e. Click **Advanced**.
f. Do either of the following:

When wireless ad-hoc mode is set to the multifunction printer:

- Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

When wireless infrastructure mode is set to the multifunction printer:

- Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

g. Click **Add** to display Wireless network properties.
h. Enter the setting that you send to the multifunction printer and click **OK**.
i. Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.
j. Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

a. Open **Control Panel**.
b. Select **Network and Internet**.
c. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**
d. Select **Connect to a network**.
e. Select the setting you send to the multifunction from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.
f. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.
g. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a. Open **Control Panel**.
b. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
c. Select **Connect to a network**.
d. Select the setting you send to the printer from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.
e. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.
f. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

11. On the **Setting-Ready Printer** screen, verify that the correct IP address is assigned to the multifunction printer to which the wireless setting is set, and then click **Install**.

NOTE: If your system has any of the following operating systems:

- Windows XP x64
- Windows Server® 2003 x64
- Windows Server® 2008 x64
- Windows Vista x64
- Windows Vista x86
,skip step 12 and go to step 13.

12. If you select the **I am setting up this printer on server** check box on the **Select Printer** screen and also select the **PostScript Driver** check box on the **Enter Printer Settings** screen, the **Adobe Systems Inc. License Agreement** screen appears. Select the **I accept the terms of the license agreement** option button, and then click **Install**.

13. On the **Congratulations!** screen, click **Finish** to complete the installation. A test page will be printed with the installed printer by clicking the **Print Test Page** button.

Use the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to monitor the status of your network printer without leaving your desk. You can view and/or change the printer configuration settings, monitor toner level, and when it is time to order replacement consumables, just click the Dell supplies link right from your Web browser.

NOTE: The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is not available when the multifunction printer is locally attached to a computer or a print server.

Wireless Installation using wireless connection

Step 1. Install a multifunction printer to the already-operating wireless network (When wireless setting is already set to your computer)

1. Insert the *Drivers and Utilities* CD into your computer to launch the installation software.

NOTE: If the CD does not automatically launch, click **Start**→**Run**, and then type `D:\setup.exe` (where `D` is the drive letter of your CD), and then click **OK**.

NOTE: For Windows Vista, click **Continue** when the **User Account Control** dialog box appears.

2. Select the **Network Installation** option button, and then click **Next**.
3. Select the **Configure Wireless Printer using a wireless connection (Advanced)** option button, and then click **Next**.
4. Reset the wireless setting of the multifunction printer following the steps on the **Reset Wireless Setting** screen.
5. Create the wireless setting of your computer following the steps shown on the **Enable Communication with Printer** screen, and then click **Next**.

   The steps are as follows:

   For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

   a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.
   b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.
   c. Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.
   d. Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

   NOTE: Ensure that you write down the current wireless computer settings in steps d and f so that you can restore them later.

   e. Click the **Advanced** button.
   f. Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.
   g. Click the **Add** button to display Wireless network properties.
   h. In the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

Network name (SSID): `dell_device`
Network Authentication: `Open`
Data encryption: `Disabled`
Ad hoc network: `checked`

   i. Click the **Move up** button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.
   j. Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

   a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Internet**.

c. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d. Select **Connect to a network**.

e. Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

f. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

g. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**

c. Select **Connect to a network**.

6. On the **Enter Wireless Network Settings** screen, set each wireless setting item, and then click **Next**.
7. When you select the **Fixed IP** option button for IP Address assignment, click **Change...** and enter the IP address and subnet mask on the screen.

NOTE: When you enter a fixed IP address, avoid the "169.254.*xxx.xxx*" address used by AutoIP.

8. Set each item on the **Enter Printer Settings** screen, and then click **Next**.
9. On the **Printer Software** screen, specify the software that you want to install and installation path, and then click **Next**. At this point, the wireless setting specified on the **Enter Wireless Network Settings** screen is sent to the multifunction printer.
10. On the **Wireless configuration is now complete** screen, change the wireless setting of your computer to the same as that sent to the multifunction printer, and then click **Next**.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.

b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

c. Select the **Wireless Network** tab.

d. Click **Advanced**.

e. Do either of the following:

When wireless ad-hoc mode is set to the multifunction printer:

- Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

When wireless infrastructure mode is set to the multifunction printer:

- Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

f. Select the setting that you send to the multifunction printer in the list in **Preferred Network** group.

g. Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.

h. Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Internet**.

c. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d. Select **Connect to a network**.

e. Select the original setting from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**, and then click **Connect**.

For Windows Server 2008:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**

c. Select **Connect to a network**.

d. Select the original setting from the network items listed in **Connect to a network,** and then click **Connect**.

11. On the **Setting-Ready Printer** screen, verify that the correct IP address is assigned to the multifunction printer to which the wireless setting is set, and then click **Install**.

NOTE: If your system has any of the following operating systems:

- Windows XP x64
- Windows Server® 2003 x64
- Windows Server® 2008x64
- Windows Vista x64
- Windows Vista x86

,skip step 12 and go to step 13.

12. If you select the **I am setting up this printer on server** check box on the **Select Printer** screen and also select the **PostScript Driver** check box on the **Enter Printer Settings** screen, the **Adobe Systems Inc. License Agreement** screen appears. Select the **I accept the terms of the license agreement** option button, and then click **Install**.

13. On the **Congratulations!** screen, click **Finish** to complete the installation. A test page will be printed with the installed printer by clicking the **Print Test Page** button.

Step 2. Construct new wireless network environment for both computer and multifunction printer (When wireless setting needs to be set to your computer)

1. Insert the *Drivers and Utilities* CD into your computer to launch the installation software.

NOTE: If the CD does not automatically launch, click **Start→Run**, and then type `D:\setup.exe` (where `D` is the drive letter of your CD), and then click **OK**.

NOTE: For Windows Vista, click **Continue** when the **User Account Control** dialog box appears.

2. Select the **Network Installation** option button, and then click **Next**.

3. Select the **Configure Wireless Printer using a wireless connection (Advanced)** option button, and then click **Next**.

4. Reset the wireless setting of the multifunction printer following the steps on the **Reset Wireless Setting** screen.

5. Create the wireless setting of your computer following the steps shown on the **Enable Communication with Printer** screen, and then click **Next**. The steps are as follows:

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.

b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

c. Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.

d. Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

NOTE: Ensure that you write down the current wireless computer settings in step d and step f so that you can restore them later.

e. Click the **Advanced** button.

f. Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

g. Click the **Add** button to display **Wireless network properties**.

h. In the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

Network name (SSID): `dell_device`
Network Authentication: `Open`
Data encryption: `Disabled`
Ad hoc network: `checked`

i. Click the **Move up** button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.

j. Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Internet**.

c. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d. Select **Connect to a network**.

e. Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

f. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

g. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**

c. Select **Connect to a network**.

d. Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

e. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

f. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

6. On the **Enter Wireless Network Settings** screen, set each wireless setting item, and then click **Next**.
7. When you select the **Fixed IP** option button for **IP address assignment**, click **Change...** and enter the IP address and subnet mask on the screen.

NOTE: When you enter a fixed IP address, avoid the "169.254.*xxx.xxx*" address used by AutoIP.

8. Set each item on the **Enter Printer Settings** screen, and then click **Next**.
9. On the **Printer Software** screen, specify the software that you want to install and installation path, and then click **Next**. At this point, the wireless setting specified on the **Enter Wireless Network Settings** screen is sent to the multifunction printer.
10. On the **Wireless configuration is now complete** screen, create the wireless setting sent to the multifunction printer on your computer following the steps below, and then click **Next**.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.

b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

c. Select the **Wireless Network** tab.

d. Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

e. Click **Advanced**.

f. Do either of the following:

When wireless ad-hoc mode is set to the multifunction printer:

- Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

When wireless infrastructure mode is set to the multifunction printer:

- Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

g. Click **Add** to display **Wireless network** properties.

h. Enter the setting that you send to the multifunction printer and click **OK**.

i. Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.

j. Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Internet**.

c. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**

d. Select **Connect to a network**.

e. Select the setting you send to the multifunction from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

f. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

g. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

c. Select **Connect to a network**.

d. Select the setting you send to the printer from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

e. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

f. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

11. On the **Setting-Ready Printer** screen, verify that the correct IP address is assigned to the multifunction printer to which the wireless setting is set, and then click **Install**.

NOTE: If your system has any of the following operating systems:

- Windows XP x64
- Windows Server® 2003 x64
- Windows Server® 2008 x64
- Windows Vista x64
- Windows Vista x86
,skip step 12 and go to step 13.

12. If you select the **I am setting up this printer on server** check box on the **Select Printer** screen and also select the **PostScript Driver** check box on the **Enter Printer Settings** screen, the **Adobe Systems Inc. License Agreement** screen appears. Select the **I accept the terms of the license agreement** option button, and then click **Install**.

13. On the **Congratulations!** screen, click **Finish** to complete the installation. A test page will be printed with the installed printer by clicking the **Print Test Page** button.

Use the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to monitor the status of your network printer without leaving your desk. You can view and/or change the printer configuration settings, monitor toner level, and when it is time to order replacement consumables, just click the Dell supplies link right from your Web browser.

NOTE: The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is not available when the multifunction printer is locally attached to a computer or a print server.

Wireless Installation using Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

Step 1. Install a multifunction printer to the already-operating wireless network (When wireless setting is already set to your computer)

For Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol network:

1. Create wireless setting of your computer following the steps below:

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.

b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

c. Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.

d. Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

NOTE: Ensure that you write down the current wireless computer settings in steps d and f so that you can restore them later.

e. Click the **Advanced** button.

f. Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

g. Click the **Add** button to display **Wireless network properties**.

h. In the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

Network name (SSID): `dell_device`
Network Authentication: `Open`
Data encryption: `Disabled`
Ad hoc network: `checked`

i. Click the **Move up** button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.

j. Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

NOTE: When your operating system is earlier than Windows 2000, create settings according to the manual of the wireless setting tool provided by your wireless device manufacturer.

For Windows Vista:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Internet**.

c. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d. Select **Connect to a network**.

e. Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

f. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

g. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**

c. Select **Connect to a network**.

d. Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

   e. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.
   f. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

2. Check the IP address assigned by AutoIP on the multifunction printer.

   For example, 168.254.1.1

3. Check that the IP address on your computer is assigned by DHCP.
4. Open Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool using the Web browser.

   For example, http://168.254.1.1/

5. Change the wireless setting of the multifunction printer on Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
6. Reset the multifunction printer.
7. Restore the wireless setting on your computer.

   For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

   a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.
   b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.
   c. Select **Wireless Network** tab.
   d. Click **Advanced**.
   e. Do either of the following:

   When wireless ad-hoc mode is set to the multifunction printer:

   - Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

   When wireless infrastructure mode is set to the multifunction printer:

   - Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

   f. Select the setting that you send to the multifunction printer in the list in **Preferred Network** group.
   g. Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.
   h. Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

   NOTE: When your operating system is earlier than Windows 2000, create settings according to the manual of the wireless setting tool provided by your wireless device manufacturer.

   For Windows Vista:

   a. Open **Control Panel**.
   b. Select **Network and Internet**.
   c. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
   d. Select **Connect to a network**.
   e. Select the original setting from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**, and then click **Connect**.

   For Windows Server 2008:

   a. Open **Control Panel**.
   b. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**
   c. Select **Connect to a network**.
   d. Select the original setting from the network items listed in **Connect to a network,** and then click **Connect**.

For Fixed IP network:

1. Create wireless setting of your computer following the steps below:

   For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

   a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.

   b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

   c. Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.

   d. Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

   NOTE: Ensure that you write down the current wireless computer settings in steps d and f so that you can restore them later.

   e. Click the **Advanced** button.

   f. Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

   g. Click the **Add** button to display **Wireless network properties**.

   h. In the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

   Network name (SSID): `dell_device`
   Network Authentication: `Open`
   Data encryption: `Disabled`
   Ad hoc network: `checked`

   i. Click the **Move up** button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.

   j. Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

   NOTE: When your operating system is earlier than Windows 2000, create settings according to the manual of the wireless setting tool provided by your wireless device manufacturer.

   For Windows Vista:

   a. Open **Control Panel**.

   b. Select **Network and Internet**.

   c. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

   d. Select **Connect to a network**.

   e. Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

   f. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

   g. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

   For Windows Server 2008:

   a. Open **Control Panel**.

   b. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**

   c. Select **Connect to a network**.

   d. Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

   e. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

   f. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

2. Check the IP address on your computer.

For example, 1.2.3.4

3. Set the IP address on the multifunction printer.

   For example, 1.2.3.5

4. Open Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool using the Web browser.

   For example, http://1.2.3.5/

5. Change the wireless setting of the multifunction printer on Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
6. Reset the multifunction printer.
7. Restore the wireless setting on your computer.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

   a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.
   b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.
   c. Select **Wireless Network** tab.
   d. Click **Advanced**.
   e. Do either of the following:

When wireless ad-hoc mode is set to the multifunction printer:

- Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

When wireless infrastructure mode is set to the multifunction printer:

- Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

   f. Select the setting that you send to the multifunction printer in the list in **Preferred Network** group.
   g. Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.
   h. Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

NOTE: When your operating system is earlier than Windows 2000, create settings according to the manual of the wireless setting tool provided by your wireless device manufacturer.

For Windows Vista:

   a. Open **Control Panel**.
   b. Select **Network and Internet**.
   c. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
   d. Select **Connect to a network**.
   e. Select the original setting from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**, and then click **Connect**.

For Windows Server 2008:

   a. Open **Control Panel**.
   b. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**
   c. Select **Connect to a network**.
   d. Select the original setting from the network items listed in **Connect to a network,** and then click **Connect**.

Step 2. Construct new wireless network environment for both computer and multifunction printer (When wireless setting needs to be set to your computer)

For Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol network:

1. Create wireless setting of your computer following the steps below:

   For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

   a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.

   b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

   c. Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.

   d. Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

   NOTE: Ensure that you write down the current wireless computer settings in steps e and g so that you can restore them later.

   e. Click the **Advanced** button.

   f. Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

   g. Click the **Add** button to display **Wireless network properties**.

   h. In the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

Network name (SSID): `dell_device`
Network Authentication: `Open`
Data encryption: `Disabled`
Ad hoc network: `checked`

   i. Click the **Move up** button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.

   j. Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

   NOTE: When your operating system is earlier than Windows 2000, create settings according to the manual of the wireless setting tool provided by your wireless device manufacturer.

   For Windows Vista:

   a. Open **Control Panel**.

   b. Select **Network and Internet**.

   c. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

   d. Select **Connect to a network**.

   e. Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

   f. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

   g. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

   For Windows Server 2008:

   a. Open **Control Panel**.

   b. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**

   c. Select **Connect to a network**.

   d. Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

   e. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

   f. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

2. Check the IP address assigned by AutoIP on the multifunction printer.

For example, 168.254.1.1

3. Check that the IP address on your computer is assigned by DHCP.
4. Open Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool using the Web browser.

For example, http://168.254.1.1

5. See "Print Server Settings" in the "Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool" to create a wireless setting.
6. Reset the multifunction printer.
7. Restore the wireless setting on your computer.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.

b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

c. Select **Wireless Network** tab.

d. Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

e. Click **Advanced**.

f. Do either of the following:

When wireless ad-hoc mode is set to the multifunction printer:

- Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

When wireless infrastructure mode is set to the multifunction printer:

- Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

g. Click **Add** to display **Wireless network properties**.

h. Enter the setting that you send to the multifunction printer and click **OK**.

i. Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.

j. Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

NOTE: When your operating system is earlier than Windows 2000, create settings according to the manual of the wireless setting tool provided by your wireless device manufacturer.

For Windows Vista:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Internet**.

c. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**

d. Select **Connect to a network**.

e. Select the setting you send to the multifunction from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

f. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

g. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

c. Select **Connect to a network**.

d. Select the setting you send to the printer from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

e. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

f. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Fixed IP network:

1. Create wireless setting of your computer following the steps below:

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.

b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

c. Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.

d. Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

NOTE: Ensure that you write down the current wireless computer settings in steps d and f so that you can restore them later.

e. Click the **Advanced** button.

f. Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

g. Click the **Add** button to display **Wireless network properties**.

h. In the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

Network name (SSID): `dell_device`
Network Authentication: `Open`
Data encryption: `Disabled`
Ad hoc network: `checked`

i. Click the **Move up** button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.

j. Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

NOTE: When your operating system is earlier than Windows 2000, create settings according to the manual of the wireless setting tool provided by your wireless device manufacturer.

For Windows Vista:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Internet**.

c. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d. Select **Connect to a network**.

e. Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

f. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

g. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**

c. Select **Connect to a network**.

d. Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

e. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

   f. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

2. Check the IP address on your computer.

   For example, 1.2.3.4

3. Set the IP address on the multifunction printer.

   For example, 1.2.3.5

4. Open Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool using the Web browser.

   For example, http://1.2.3.5

5. Change the wireless setting of the multifunction printer on Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
6. Reset the multifunction printer.
7. Restore the wireless setting on your computer.

   For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

   a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.
   b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.
   c. Select **Wireless Network** tab.
   d. Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.
   e. Click **Advanced**.
   f. Do either of the following:

   When wireless ad-hoc mode is set to the multifunction printer:

   - Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

   When wireless infrastructure mode is set to the multifunction printer:

   - Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

   g. Click **Add** to display **Wireless network properties**.
   h. Enter the setting that you send to the multifunction printer and click **OK**.
   i. Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.
   j. Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

   NOTE: When your operating system is earlier than Windows 2000, create settings according to the manual of the wireless setting tool provided by your wireless device manufacturer.

   For Windows Vista:

   a. Open **Control Panel**.
   b. Select **Network and Internet**.
   c. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**
   d. Select **Connect to a network**.
   e. Select the setting you send to the multifunction from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.
   f. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.
   g. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

   For Windows Server 2008:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

c. Select **Connect to a network**.

d. Select the setting you send to the printer from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

e. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

f. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

Wireless Setting through Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool - Advanced setup

Access point (Infrastructure, DHCP network)

1. Create new wireless settings for your computer.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.

b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

c. Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.

d. Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

NOTE: Ensure that you write down the current wireless computer settings in steps d and g so that you can restore them later.

e. Click the **Advanced** button.

f. Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

g. Click the **Add** button to display Wireless network properties.

h. In the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

Network name (SSID): `dell_device`
Network Authentication: `Open`
Data encryption: `Disabled`
Ad hoc network: `checked`

i. Click the **Move up** button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.

j. Click **OK** to close the Property dialog box.

NOTE: When your operating system is earlier than Windows 2000, create settings according to the manual of the wireless setting tool provided by your wireless device manufacturer.

For Windows Vista:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Internet**.

c. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d. Select **Connect to a network**.

e. Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

f. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

g. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

   b. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**
   c. Select **Connect to a network**.
   d. Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.
   e. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.
   f. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

2. Set up the printer wireless adapter IP address.
   a. Reset the settings for the wireless adapter to the default.

i. Press **Menu** on printer **Control Panel**.
ii. Scroll down and select **Admin Menu**.
iii. Scroll down and select **Wireless net**.
iv. Scroll down and select **Reset MPC**.
v. Restart the multifunction printer.

   b. Retrieve the wireless adapter IP address on the multifunction printer.

i. Press **Menu** on printer **Control Panel**.
ii. Scroll down and select **Admin Menu**.
iii. Scroll down and select **Wireless net**.
iv. Scroll down and select **TCP/IP**.
v. Scroll down and select **IP Address**.
(Default IP address range: 169.254. *xxx.yyy*, where "*xxx*" and "*yyy*" are variables ranging from 0 to 255)

3. Access Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool on your computer browser.
   a. Assign the TCP/IP address by DHCP mode (Change the TCP/IP properties to obtain the IP address automatically).
   b. Ensure that your computer has the same IP address range as the printer wireless adapter.

For example, 169.254. *xxx.zzz*, where "*xxx*" and "*zzz*" are variables ranging from 0 to 255

   c. Access the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool using the Web browser, and then type printer wireless adapter settings in the address field of the browser.

For example, http://169.254.*xxx.yyy*/, where "*xxx*" and "*yyy*" are variables ranging from 0 to 255 (Your wireless adapter IP address)

   d. Change wireless settings (SSID/ communication mode) from Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

i. Click **Print server setting** on the left navigational bar.
ii. Click the **Print server setting** tab.
iii. Click the **TCP/IP** sub-tab.
iv. Select **DHCP**.
v. Click the **Apply new setting** button without restarting the multifunction printer (Ignore the screen instructions to restart the multifunction printer).
vi. Click the **Wireless LAN** sub-tab.
vii. Change the **SSID** setting (according to your Access point SSID) and change **Network type** to **Infrastructure**.
viii. Click the **Restart printer to apply new settings** button.

4. Once printer wireless adapter is properly configured, you may use the typical network printer installation method to complete driver installation.
5. To communicate with the multifunction printer, you need to restore the previous wireless settings on your computer.
6. Restore the previous wireless settings for your computer.

   For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.
b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.
c. Select the **Wireless Network** tab.
d. Click the **Advanced** button.
e. Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the Advanced dialog box (Applicable to the multifunction printer with the wireless infrastructure mode).
f. Select the setting that you send to the multifunction printer in the list in the **Preferred Network** group
g. Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.
h. Click **OK** to close the Property dialog box.

NOTE: When your operating system is earlier than Windows 2000, create settings according to the manual of the wireless setting tool provided by your wireless device manufacturer.

For Windows Vista:

a. Open **Control Panel**.
b. Select **Network and Internet**.
c. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**
d. Select **Connect to a network**.
e. Select the setting you send to the multifunction from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.
f. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.
g. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a. Open **Control Panel**.
b. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
c. Select **Connect to a network**.
d. Select the setting you send to the printer from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.
e. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.
f. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

Access point (Infrastructure, Fixed IP network)

1. Ensure that the addresses of your computer and access point is in the same IP range. Match the subnet mask and gateway addresses of your computer to the access point settings.
2. Create new wireless settings of your computer by following the steps below:

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.
b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.
c. Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.
d. Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

NOTE: Ensure that you write down the current wireless computer settings in steps d and f so that you can restore them later.

e. Click the **Advanced** button.
f. Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the Advanced dialog box.

g. Click the **Add** button to display Wireless network properties.

h. In the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

Network name (SSID): `dell_device`
Network Authentication: `Open`
Data encryption: `Disabled`
Ad hoc network: `Checked`

i. Click the Move up button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.

j. Click OK to close the Property dialog box.

NOTE: When your operating system is earlier than Windows 2000, create settings according to the manual of the wireless setting tool provided by your wireless device manufacturer.

For Windows Vista:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Internet**.

c. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d. Select **Connect to a network**.

e. Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

f. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

g. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a. Open **Control Panel**.

b. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**

c. Select **Connect to a network**.

d. Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

e. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

f. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

3. Check the IP, subnet mask, and gateway address on your computer.

For example, IP: 192.168.1.1
Subnet mask: 255.255.0.0

4. Set the IP address from the multifunction printer **Control Panel** to be in the same range as that of your computer. Match the subnet mask and gateway addresses of the multifunction printer to your computer settings.

a. Press the **Menu** button.

b. Scroll to the **Admin** menu.

c. Select **Wireless Net**.

d. Select **TCP/IP**.

e. Select **Get IP Address**.

f. Select **Panel**.

g. Scroll back to **IP Address**.

h. Manually enter the IP address using the directional buttons on the control panel and press enter button.

For example, 192.168.1.2

i. Scroll back to **Subnet Mask**.
j. Manually enter the subnet mask address using the directional buttons on **Control Panel** and press the <Enter> button.
k. Scroll back to **Gateway Address**.
l. Manually enter the gateway address using the directional buttons on **Control Panel** and press the <Enter> button.
m. Restart the multifunction printer.

5. Open Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool using the Web browser.

For example, http://:192.168.1.2

6. Change wireless settings of the multifunction printer from Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

a. Click **Print server setting** on the left navigational bar.
b. Click **Print server setting** tab.
c. Click **Wireless LAN** sub-tab.
d. Change the SSID setting (according to your access point SSID) and change **Network type** to **Infrastructure**.
e. Click the **Restart printer to apply new settings** button.

7. Restore the previous wireless settings for your computer.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a. Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.
b. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.
c. Select **Wireless Network** tab.
d. Click **Advanced**.
e. Do either of the following:

When wireless ad-hoc mode is set to the multifunction printer:

- Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

When wireless infrastructure mode is set to the multifunction printer:

- Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

f. Select the setting that you send to the multifunction printer in the list in **Preferred Network** group.
g. Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.

For Windows Vista:

a. Open **Control Panel**.
b. Select **Network and Internet**.
c. Select **Network and Sharing Center.**
d. Select **Connect to a network**.
e. Select the setting you send to the multifunction from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.
f. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.
g. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

   a. Open **Control Panel**.
   b. Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
   c. Select **Connect to a network**.
   d. Select the setting you send to the printer from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.
   e. Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indication indicating you are entering an unsecured area.
   f. Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

8. Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

NOTE: When your operating system is earlier than Windows 2000, create settings according to the manual of the wireless setting tool provided by your wireless device manufacturer.

Confirming the Installation of the Wireless Printer Adapter

Print a system settings page to verify that the optional wireless printer adaptor is installed correctly.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Reports` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. `System Settings` is displayed. Press ✓ .

   The system settings page is printed.

4. Verify that the **Wireless LAN Adapter** is listed in the system settings under **Printer Options**.

   If it is not listed, turn off the multifunction printer, unplug the power cable, and reinstall the optional wireless printer adapter.

Print Media Guidelines

Print media is paper, transparencies, labels, envelopes, coated paper among others. Your multifunction printer provides high-quality printing on a variety of print media. Selecting the appropriate print media for your multifunction printer helps avoid printing troubles. This section describes how to select print media, how to care for print media, and how to load the print media in the standard 250-sheet tray or optional 550-sheet paper feeder.

- Paper
- Transparencies
- Envelopes
- Labels
- Storing Print Media
- Identifying Print Media Sources and Specifications

Paper

For the best print quality in color, use 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) xerographic, grain long paper. For the best print quality in black and white, use 90 g/m^2 (24 lb) xerographic, grain long paper. Before buying large quantities of any print media, Dell recommends trying a sample first.

When loading paper, identify the recommended print side on the paper package, and load the paper accordingly. See "Loading Print Media in Standard and Optional Trays" and "Loading the Multipurpose Feeder" for detailed loading instructions.

Paper Characteristics

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. Dell recommends that you follow these guidelines when evaluating new paper stock.

Weight

The tray automatically feeds paper weights from 60 to 216 g/m^2 (16 to 60 lb bond) grain long. The multipurpose feeder automatically feeds paper weights from 60 to 216 g/m^2 (16 to 80 lb bond) grain long. Paper lighter than 60 g/m^2 (16 lb) might not be stiff enough to feed properly, and could cause paper jams. For best performance, use 75 g/m^2 (20 lb bond) grain long paper.

Curl

Curl is the tendency of print media to curve at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl usually occurs after the paper passes through the multifunction printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped, even in the paper tray, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing and cause feeding problems regardless of humidity. When printing on curled paper, straighten the paper and then insert it into the multipurpose feeder.

Smoothness

The degree of paper smoothness directly affects print quality. If the paper is too rough, the toner does not fuse to the paper properly, resulting in poor print quality. If the paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding problems. Smoothness between 150 and 250 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.

Moisture Content

The amount of moisture in the paper affects both print quality and the ability of the multifunction printer to feed the paper properly. Leave the paper in its original packaging until you are ready to use it. This limits the exposure of the paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance.

Grain Direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either grain long, running the length of the paper, or grain short, running the width of the paper. For 60 to 135 g/m^2 (16 to 36 lb bond) paper, grain long fibers are recommended. For papers heavier than 135 g/m^2 (36 lb bond), grain short is preferred.

Fiber Content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100% chemically pulped wood. Paper containing fibers such as cotton possess characteristics that can result in degraded paper handling.

Recommended Paper

To ensure the best print quality and feed reliability, use 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) xerographic paper. Business papers designed for general business use also provide acceptable print quality. Only use paper able to withstand high temperatures without discoloring, bleeding, or releasing hazardous emissions. The laser printing process heats paper to high temperatures. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether the paper you have chosen is acceptable for laser printers.

Always print several samples before buying large quantities of any type of print media. When choosing any print media, you should consider the weight, fiber content, and color.

Unacceptable Paper

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the multifunction printer:

- Chemically treated papers used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless papers, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper
- Preprinted papers with chemicals that may contaminate the multifunction printer
- Preprinted papers that can be affected by the temperature in the printer fuser unit
- Preprinted papers that require a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than ±0.09 in., such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms

  In some cases, you can adjust registration with your software program to successfully print on these forms.

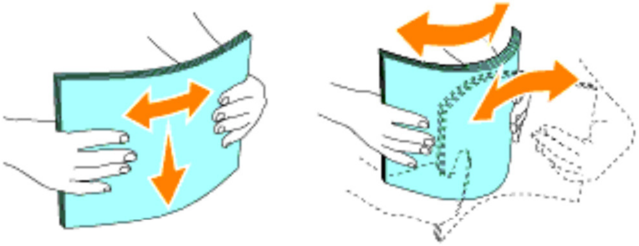
- Coated papers (erasable bond), synthetic papers, thermal papers
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface papers or curled papers
- Recycled papers containing more than 25% post-consumer waste that do not meet DIN 19 309
- Multiple-part forms or documents
- Print quality may deteriorate (blank spaces or blotches may appear in the text) when printing on talc or acid paper.

Selecting Paper

Proper paper selection helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

To help avoid jams or poor print quality:

- Always use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading the paper, identify the recommended print side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- Do not use paper that you have cut or trimmed yourself.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same source. This may result in a paper jam.
- Do not remove trays while a job is printing or `Printing` is displayed on the operator panel.
- Ensure the `Paper Type` setting is correct. (See "Tray Settings" for detailed information about these settings.)
- Ensure the paper is properly loaded in the tray.
- Flex paper back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.



Selecting Preprinted Forms and Letterhead

When selecting preprinted forms and letterhead paper for the multifunction printer:

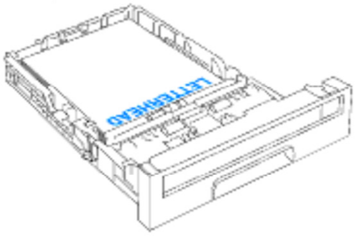
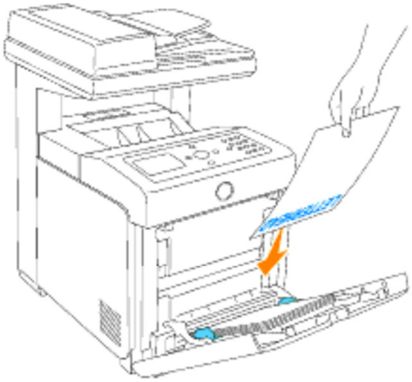
- Use grain long papers for best results.
- Use only forms and letterhead printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Select papers that absorb ink, but do not bleed.
- Avoid papers with rough or heavily textured surfaces.

- Use papers printed with heat-resistant inks designed for use in xerographic copiers. The ink must withstand temperatures of 225°C (437°F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Use inks that are not affected by the resin in toner or the silicone in the fuser unit. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based should meet these requirements; latex inks might not. If you are in doubt, contact your paper supplier.

Printing on Letterhead

Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether the pre-printed letterhead you have selected is acceptable for laser printers.

Page orientation is important when printing on letterhead. Use the following table for help when loading letterhead in the print media sources.

Print media source	Print side	Page orientation
Standard 250-sheet tray Optional 550-sheet paper feeder	Face up 	Letterhead enters the multifunction printer last
Multipurpose feeder	Face down 	Letterhead enters the multifunction printer first

Selecting Pre-punched Paper

Pre-punched paper brands can differ in the number and placement of holes and in manufacturing techniques. However, it may not be possible to print on the paper to depending on the placement of holes on the paper.

To select and use pre-punched paper:

- Test paper from several manufacturers before ordering and using large quantities of pre-punched paper.
- Paper should be punched at the paper manufacturer and not drilled into paper already packaged in a ream. Drilled paper can cause jams when multiple sheets feed through the multifunction printer. This

may result in a paper jam.

- Pre-punched paper can include more paper dust than standard paper. Your multifunction printer may require more frequent cleaning and feed reliability may not be as good as standard paper.
- Weight guidelines for pre-punched paper are the same as non-punched paper.

Transparencies

You can load up to 75 sheets of transparencies in the multipurpose feeder for a single print job. Before buying large quantities of any print media, Dell recommends trying a sample first.

When printing on transparencies:

- Set the paper type to **Transparency** from the printer driver to avoid damaging your multifunction printer.
- Use transparencies designed specifically for laser printers. Do not use regular transparencies. Transparencies must be able to withstand temperatures of 205°C (401°F) without melting, discoloring, offsetting or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Avoid getting fingerprints on the transparencies. This may result in poor print quality.
- Before loading transparencies, fan the stack to prevent sheets from sticking together.
- Non-white transparencies are not supported with the multifunction printer.

Selecting Transparencies

The multifunction printer can print directly on transparencies designed for use in laser printers. Print quality and durability depend on the transparency used. Before buying large quantities of any print media, Dell recommends trying a sample first.

The paper type setting for the multipurpose feeder should be set to `Transparency` to help prevent jams. (See "Tray Settings" for detailed information about this setting.) Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether your transparencies are compatible with laser printers that reach temperatures as high as 205°C (401°F). Only use transparencies that are able to withstand these temperatures without melting, discoloring, offsetting, or releasing hazardous emissions.

Envelopes

You can load a stack of envelopes up to 15 mm (0.59 in.) in height in the multipurpose feeder for a single print job. Depending on the type of envelope and how they have been stored, loading a large quantity of envelopes, within the maximum range, may not feed into the multifunction printer. If this happens, reduce the number of envelopes in the stack. Depending on the choice of envelopes, it is possible to expect variable levels of light wrinkling. Before buying large quantities of any print media, Dell recommends trying a sample first. See "Loading the Multipurpose Feeder" for instructions on loading an envelope.

When printing on envelopes:

- Use only high-quality envelopes that are designed for use in laser printers.

- Set the print media source to the multipurpose feeder. Set the paper type to **Envelope**, and select the correct size of envelope from the printer driver.
- For best performance, use envelopes made from 75 g/m^2 (20 lb bond) paper. You can use up to 105 g/m^2 (28 lb bond) weight for the envelope feeder as long as the cotton content is 25% or less. Envelopes with 100% cotton content must not exceed 90 g/m^2 (24 lb bond) weight.
- Use only new, undamaged envelopes.
- For best performance, do not use envelopes that:
  - Have excessive curl or twist
  - Are stuck together or damaged in any way
  - Contain windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, embossing
  - Use metal clasps, string ties, or metal folding bars
  - Have an interlocking design
  - Have postage stamps attached
  - Have any exposed adhesive when the flap is in the sealed or closed position
  - Have nicked edges or bent corners
  - Have rough, cockle, or laid finishes
- Use envelopes that can withstand temperatures of 205°C (401°F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions. If you have any doubts about the envelopes you are considering, check with the envelope supplier.
- Adjust the guide to fit the width of the envelopes.
- To load envelope in the multipurpose feeder, insert the envelopes with the flaps closed and the short-edge of the envelopes facing into the multifunction printer. The print side must be facing down.
- See "Loading the Multipurpose Feeder" for instructions on loading an envelope.
- Use one envelope size during a print job.
- Ensure the humidity is low because high humidity (more than 60%) and the high printing temperatures may seal the envelopes.

Labels

Your multifunction printer can print on many labels designed for use with laser printers. Label adhesives, face sheet (printable stock), and topcoats must be able to withstand temperatures of 205°C (401°F) and pressure of 25 pounds per square inch (psi). Before buying large quantities of any print media, Dell recommends trying a sample first.

When printing on labels:

- Set the paper type to `Label` in the `Tray Settings`. Set the paper type to **Label** from the printer driver.

- Do not load labels together with paper or transparencies in the same tray. This may result in a jam.
- Do not use label sheets with a slick backing material.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 in.) of the die cut.
- Use full label sheets. Partial sheets may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a jam. Partial sheets also contaminate your multifunction printer and your cartridge with adhesive, and could void your multifunction printer and cartridge warranties.
- Use labels that can withstand temperatures of 205°C (401°F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 in.) of the edge of the label, of the perforations, or between die-cuts of the label.
- Do not use label sheets that have adhesive to the edge of the sheet. Dell recommends zone coating of the adhesive at least 1 mm (0.04 in.) away from edges. Adhesive material contaminates your multifunction printer and could void your warranty.
- If zone coating of the adhesive is not possible, a 3 mm (0.125 in.) strip should be removed on the leading and driver edge, and a non-oozing adhesive should be used.
- Remove a 3 mm (0.125 in.) strip from the leading edge to prevent labels from peeling inside the multifunction printer.
- Portrait orientation is preferred, especially when printing bar codes.
- Do not use labels that have exposed adhesive.

Storing Print Media

For proper print media storage, the following guidelines help avoid media feeding problems and uneven print quality.

- For best results, store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40%.
- Store cartons of print media on a pallet or shelf, rather than directly on the floor.
- If you store individual packages of print media out of the original carton, ensure that they rest on a flat surface so that the edges do not buckle or curl.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

Identifying Print Media Sources and Specifications

The following tables provide information on standard and optional print media sources.

Print Media Sizes and Support

	Multipurpose feeder	Standard 250-sheet tray	Optional 550-sheet paper feeder	Optional duplexer
A4	Y	Y	Y	Y
A5	Y	Y	Y	Y
B5	Y	Y	Y	Y
Letter	Y	Y	Y	Y
Folio (8.5 x 13 in.)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Legal (8.5 x 14 in.)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Executive	Y	Y	Y	Y
COM-10 Envelope	Y	N	N	N
Monarch	Y	N	N	N
C5	Y	N	N	N
DL	Y	N	N	N
User-specified print size	Y[*1]	Y[*2]	Y[*2]	Y[*3]

[*1] The tray supports user-specified print media that are 76.2 mm (3.00 in.) to 220 mm (8.66 in.) wide and 98.4 mm (3.87 in.) to 355.6 mm (14.00 in.) long.

[*2] The tray supports user-specified print media that are 148.5 mm (5.85 in.) to 215.9 mm (8.50 in.) wide and 210 mm (8.27 in.) to 355.6 mm (14.00 in.) long.

[*3] The duplexer supports user-specified print media that are 148.5 mm (5.85 in.) to 215.9 mm (8.50 in.) wide and 210 mm (8.27 in.) to 355.6 mm (14.00 in.) long.

Print Media Supported

	Multipurpose feeder	Standard 250-sheet tray	Optional 550-sheet paper feeder	Optional duplexer
Plain Paper (60–80 gsm)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Plain Paper - Side2 (60–80 gsm)	Y	N	N	N
Plain Thick Paper (81–105 gsm)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Plain Thick Paper -Side2 (81–105 gsm)	Y	N	N	N
Covers (106–163 gsm)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Covers - Side2 (106–163 gsm)	Y	N	N	N
Covers Thick (164–216 gsm)	Y	Y	Y	N

Covers Thick - Side2 (164–216 gsm)*[1]	Y	N	N	N
Transparency	Y	N	N	N
Label	Y	Y	Y	N
Coated (106–163 gsm)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Coated - Side2 (106 –163 gsm)	Y	N	N	N
Coated Thick (164–216 gsm)*[1]	Y	Y	Y	N
Coated Thick - Side2 (164 –216 gsm)	Y	N	N	N
Envelope	Y	N	N	N
*[1] When you load several sheets of this type of paper on the ADF, two or more sheets of paper may be fed into the ADF at the same time. In this case, load fewer sheets of paper and ensure that the paper is not curled.				

Setup Paper Type

Paper type	Weight (gsm)	Remarks
Plain Paper	60-80	-
Plain Thick Paper	81-105	-
Covers	106-163	-
Covers Thick	164-216	-
Coated	106-163	Inkjet Printer paper cannot be used.
Coated Thick	164-216	Inkjet Printer paper cannot be used.
Transparency	-	Inkjet Printer paper cannot be used.
Label	-	Inkjet Printer paper cannot be used.
Envelopes	-	-

Loading Print Media

Loading print media properly helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

Before loading print media, identify the recommended print side of the print media. This information is usually on the print media package.

- Loading Print Media in Standard and Optional Trays
- Multipurpose Feeder
- Loading the Multipurpose Feeder
- Using the Multipurpose Feeder
- Linking Trays
- Using the Duplex Function
- Using the Output Tray
- Using the Output Tray Extension

NOTE: After loading paper in the tray, specify the same paper type on the operator panel.

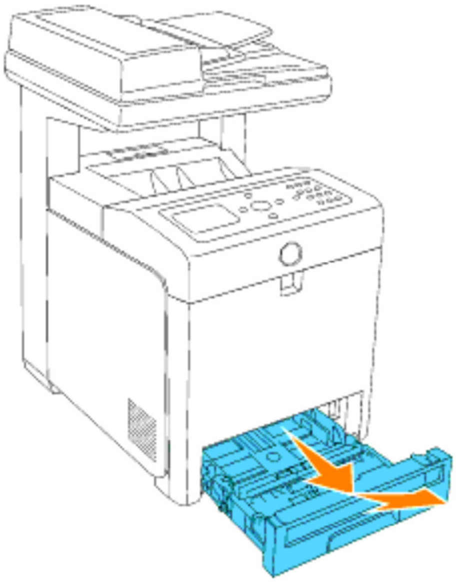
Loading Print Media in Standard and Optional Trays

NOTE: To avoid paper jams, do not remove trays while a job prints.

NOTE: Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in the multifunction printer.

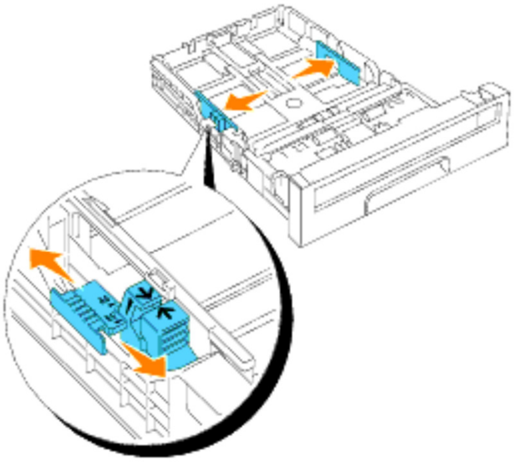
All trays are loaded the same way.

1. Pull the tray out of the multifunction printer until it stops. Hold the tray with both hands, lift the front slightly, and remove it from the multifunction printer.

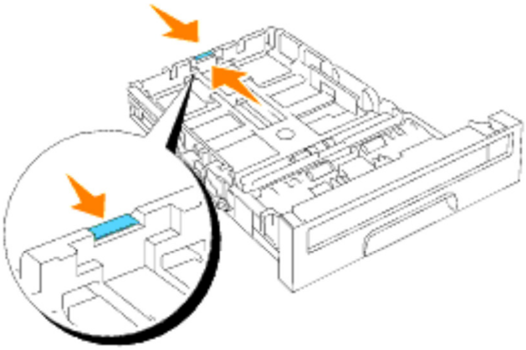


2. Slide the width guides to the edge of the tray. The width guides should be fully extended.

NOTE: For Letter paper, push the lever to the 8.5" position.

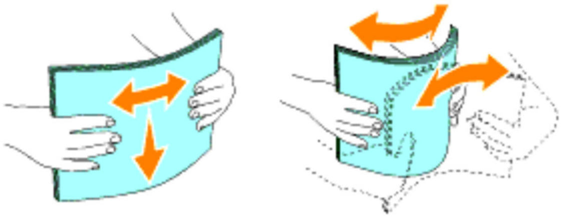


3. Slide the tray to the size of the paper to be loaded by using the length guide.



NOTE: When loading user-specified print media, fully extend the tray by squeezing the length guide at the back of the tray.

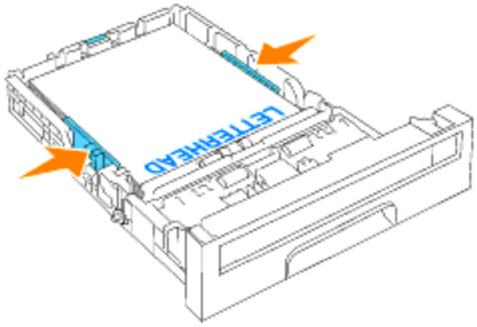
4. Before loading the print media, flex the sheets back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.



5. Place the print media into the tray with the recommended print side face up.

NOTE: Do not exceed the maximum fill line in the tray. Overfilling the tray may cause paper jams.

6. Adjust the width guides until they rest lightly against the edges of the stack of paper.



NOTE: When loading user-specified print media, adjust the width guides and slide the extendable part of the tray by squeezing the length guide and sliding it until it rests lightly against the edge of the stack of paper.

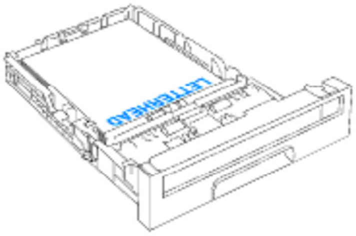
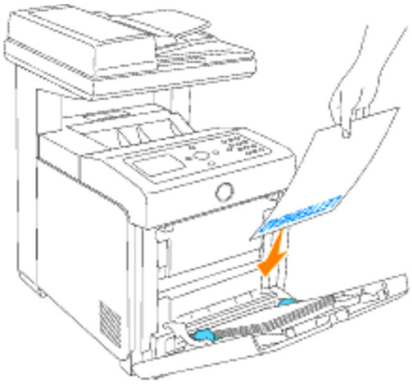
7. Insert the tray into the multifunction printer, and push until it stops.

8. Select the paper type from the operator panel if any print media other than plain print media is loaded. If a user-specified print media is loaded, you must specify the paper size setting by using the operator panel.

Loading Letterhead

The letterhead must be toward the top edge of the standard tray or the optional feeder with the print side facing up. However, the letterhead must be inserted top edge first with the print side facing down when loading paper into the multipurpose feeder.

Print media source	Print side	Page orientation
Standard 250-sheet tray Optional 550-sheet paper	Face up	Letterhead enters the multifunction printer last

feeder		
Multipurpose feeder	Face down 	Letterhead enters the multifunction printer first

---

Multipurpose Feeder

Capacity

The multipurpose feeder can hold approximately:

- 150 sheets of the standard paper or 15 mm (0.59 in.) or less in height.

Print Media Dimensions

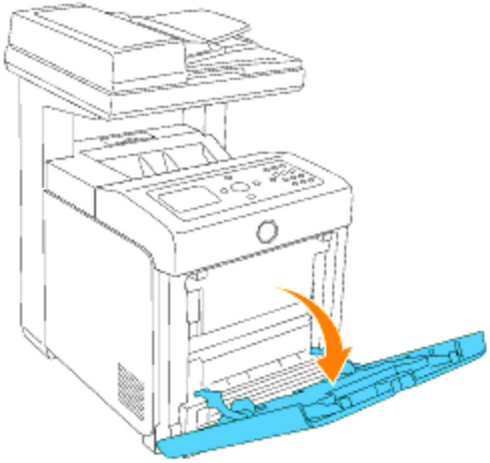
The multipurpose feeder accepts print media within the following dimensions:

- Width — 76.2 mm (3.00 in.) to 220.0 mm (8.66 in.)
- Length — 98.4 mm (3.87 in.) to 355.6 mm (14.00 in.)

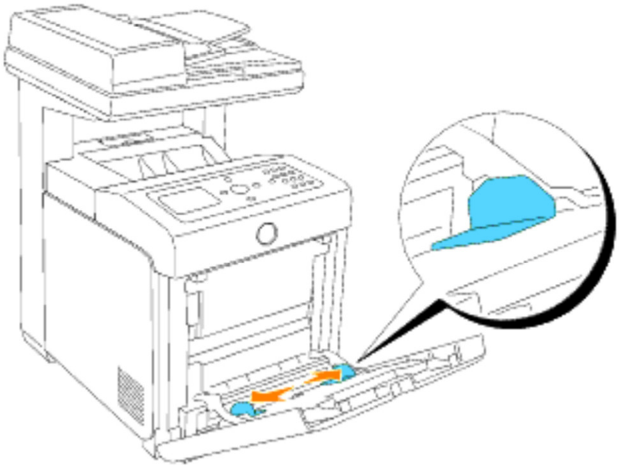
Loading the Multipurpose Feeder

In addition to plain paper, the multipurpose feeder can use various other sizes and types of print media such as envelopes, and transparencies.

1. Gently pull open the multipurpose feeder cover.

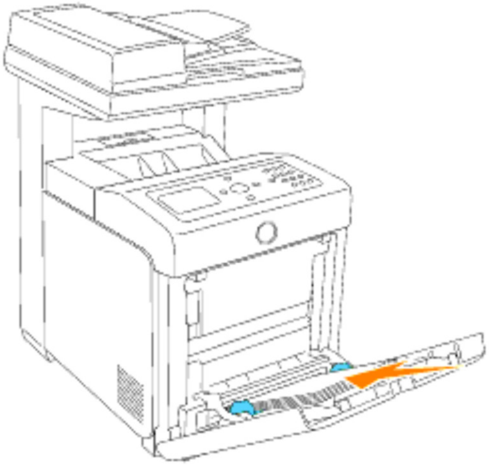


2. Slide the guides to the edge of the tray. The guides should be fully extended.



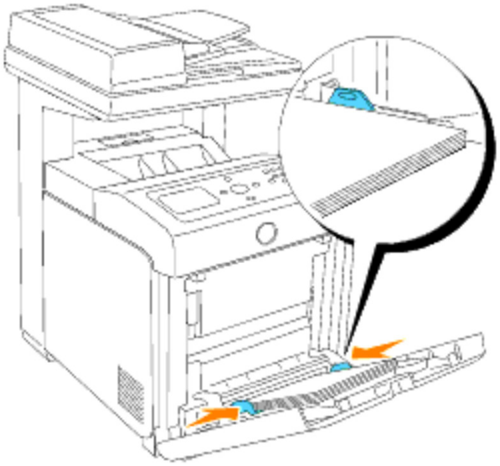
3. Insert all media face down and top edge first into the multipurpose feeder.

NOTE: Do not force the print media.



4. Slide both guides until they rest lightly against the edge of the print media stack.

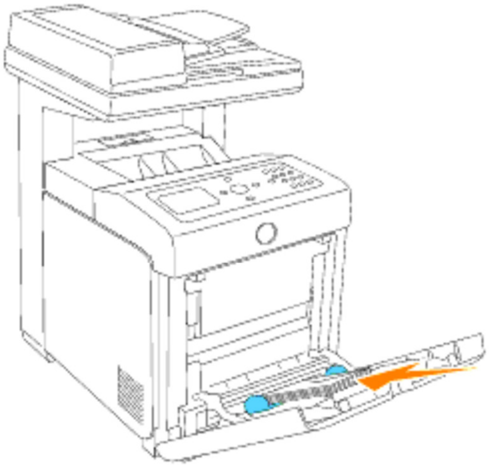
NOTE: Be careful not to bend the print media.



5. Ensure the type setting for the multipurpose feeder is set to the correct value for the print media you have loaded.
6. Select print media source, size, and type in your software program and select the print media size and type on the printer operator panel.

Loading Envelopes

To load envelopes in the multipurpose feeder, insert the envelopes with the flaps closed and the short-edge of the envelopes facing into the multifunction printer. Orientate the print side facing down and slide the envelope into the entry slot. You can load envelopes up to the maximum fill line in the tray at one time.



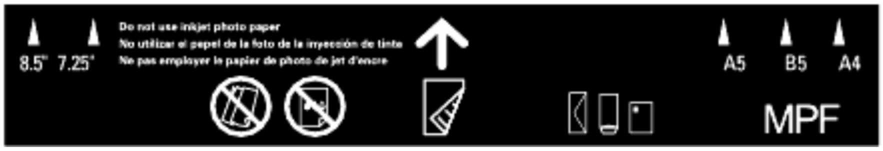
NOTE: Ensure to set the envelopes with the flaps completely closed.

NOTICE: Never use envelopes with windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These lead to paper jams and damage to the multifunction printer.

Using the Multipurpose Feeder

- Load only one size and type of print media during a single print job.
- To achieve the best possible print quality, use only high-quality print media that is designed for use in laser printers. For more guidelines on print media, see "Print Media Guidelines."
- Do not add or remove print media when there is still print media in the multipurpose feeder or when the multifunction printer is printing from the multipurpose feeder. This may result in a paper jam.
- Print media should be loaded with the recommended print side down and the top of the print media going into the multipurpose feeder first.
- Do not place objects on the multipurpose feeder. Also, avoid pressing down or applying excessive force on it.
- Do not remove any tray while a job is printing from the multipurpose feeder or `Printing` is displayed on the operator panel. This may result in a paper jam.

The icons on the multipurpose feeder identify how to load the multipurpose feeder with paper, and how to turn an envelope for printing.


8.5"
7.25"
Do not use inkjet photo paper
No utilizar el papel de la foto de la inyección de tinta
Ne pas employer le papier de photo de jet d'encre
A5
B5
A4
MPF

Linking Trays

Tray linking allows you to load the same size and type of print media in multiple sources. The multifunction printer automatically links the source/trays and will use the first tray until it runs out, then switch to the linked tray.

If you load the same size print media in each tray, ensure that the print media is the same type in order to link the trays.

When the selected trays are loaded with the same size and type of print media, select the `Paper Type` settings in the `Tray Settings` for each source.

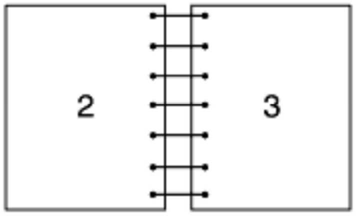
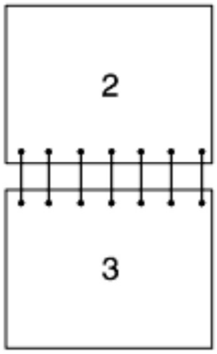
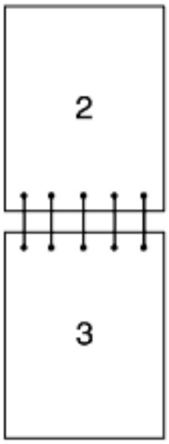
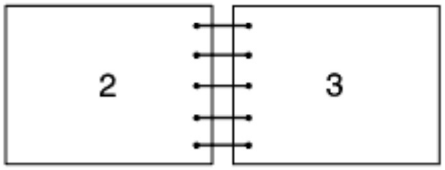
To disable tray linking, set the `Paper Type` to a unique value in each one of the trays. If all trays do not have the same type of print media when linked, you could mistakenly print a job on the wrong paper type.

Using the Duplex Function

Duplex printing (or two-sided printing) allows you to print on both sides of a sheet of paper. For sizes that are acceptable for duplex printing, see "Print Media Sizes and Support." Duplex printing is only available when the optional duplexer is installed on the multifunction printer. For information on how to install the duplexer, see "Installing a Duplexer."

Using Booklet Print

To use booklet print, you must select either **Flip on Short Edge** or **Flip on Long Edge** from the **Duplex** menu in the printer properties dialog box and then select **Booklet Creation** in the **Booklet/Poster/Mixed Document** dialog box displayed by clicking the **Booklet/Poster/Mixed Document** button. From the **Duplex** menu, you can define the way 2-sided print pages are bound, and how the printing on the back of the sheet (even-numbered pages) is oriented in relation to the printing on the front (odd-numbered pages).

Flip on Long Edge	Assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait orientation and top edge for landscape orientation). The following illustration shows long-edge binding for portrait and landscape pages:  
Flip on Short Edge	Assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait orientation and left edge for landscape orientation). The following illustration shows short-edge binding for portrait and landscape pages:  

Using the Output Tray

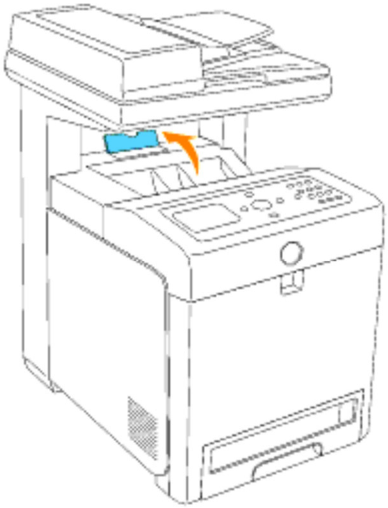
The output tray holds up to:

- 250 sheets (20 lb (75 g/m^2)) of plain paper

Using the Output Tray Extension

The output tray extension is designed to prevent print media from falling from the multifunction printer after the print job is complete.

Before printing a document, ensure that the output tray extension is fully extended.

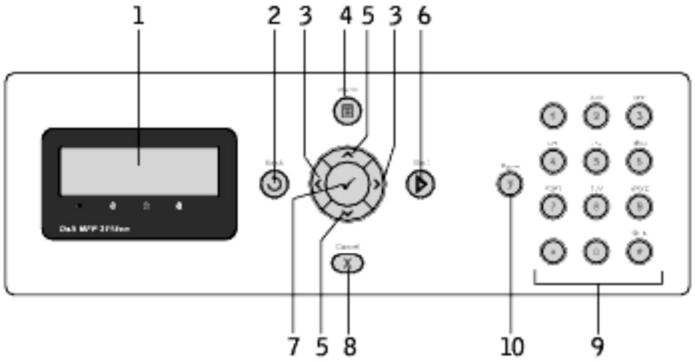


Operator Panel

- [Using the Operator Panel Buttons]
- [Printing a Panel Settings Page]

Using the Operator Panel Buttons

The printer operator panel has a 4-line by 20-character liquid crystal display (LCD), control buttons, and number pad, which allow you to control your multifunction printer.



1. LCD Panel
2. ↺ (Back) button
   - Returns to the previous screen.
3. ◀ ▶ buttons
   - In the **Menu mode**, selects submenus or sets values.
4. ▤ (Menu) button
   - Enters the operation menu from the top menu, and returns to the top menu from any menu level.
5. ▲ ▼ buttons
   - In the **Menu mode**, scrolls through menus or items.
   - To enter numbers or passwords, press these buttons.
6. ▷ (Start) button
   - Starts copying, scanning, or faxing.
7. ✓ button

- Choose the currently displayed menu or item.

8. ✕ (Cancel) button
   - In the **Menu mode**, returns to the standby mode without saving any settings.
   - Cancels the current working job (copy/scan/fax/print) by choosing the available listed job.
9. Number pad
   - Enters the characters and numbers, for example, for the Phone Book, and passwords.
10. ❜ (Pause) button
    - Enters a pause.

Printing a Panel Settings Page

The Panel Settings page shows current settings for the operator panel menus.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Reports` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▶ until `Panel Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .
   The panel settings page is printed.

System Settings

You can change most system settings from your software program or operator panel. If your multifunction printer is attached to the network, you can change settings from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, type the printer IP address in your Web browser. Print a printer settings page to find your printer's IP address (see "Printing a System Settings Page").

Settings from the software program update the default system settings for the multifunction printer. Settings from the printer driver only apply to the job you are sending to the multifunction printer.

If you cannot change a setting from your software program, use the printer operator panel or the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. Changing a system setting from the printer operator panel or from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** makes that setting the user default.

Printing a System Settings Page

The system settings page lists all the options you purchased or installed. If a feature or an option is not listed, you need to check your installation.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Reports` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. `System Settings` is displayed. Press ✓ .

   The system settings page is printed.
4. Verify that the options you installed are correctly listed under **Printer Options**.
5. If an option you installed is not listed, turn off the multifunction printer, unplug the power cord, and reinstall the option.
6. Verify the amount of memory installed is correctly listed under **General**.

Using the Operator Panel to Change System Settings

You can select menu items and corresponding values from the operator panel.

When you first enter the printer menus from the operator panel, you see an asterisk (*) next to a value in the menus.

Factory defaults may vary for different countries.

This asterisk indicates the factory default menu setting. These settings are the original system settings.

NOTE: Factory defaults may vary for different countries.

When you select a new setting from the operator panel, an asterisk appears next to the setting to identify it as the current user default menu setting.

These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.

To select a new value as a setting:

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ or ◄ until the desired menu appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ , ◄ , ► , or ▲ until the desired menu or menu item appears, and then press ✓ .
    - If the selection is a menu, the menu is opened and the first system setting in the menu appears.
    - If the selection is a menu item, the default menu setting for the menu item appears. (The current user default menu setting has an asterisk (*) beside it.)

    Each menu item has a list of values for the menu item. A value can be:

    - A phrase or word to describe a setting
    - A numerical value that can be changed
    - An On or Off setting
4. Press ► or ▲ to scroll until the desired value appears.
5. Press **Back** to return to the previous menu.
   To continue setting other items, select the desired menu. To quit setting new values, press **Cancel**.

Driver settings may override changes previously made and may require you to change the operator panel defaults.

NOTE: To adjust the density to make the scanned copy lighter or darker than the original.

Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool to Change System Settings

If your multifunction printer is connected to the network, you can change the operator panel settings from your Web browser. If you are a network administrator, you can clone the system settings of one printer to one or all printers on the network.

Type your network printer IP address in your Web browser. Choose **System Settings** from the topics list, and then select the system settings you want to change.

To copy your system settings to another printer on the network, choose **Copy Printer Settings** from the topics list, and then type the other printer's IP address.

If you do not know your printer IP address, see the system settings page. To print a system settings page:

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Reports` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. `System Settings` is displayed. Press ✓ .

    The system settings page is printed.

Resetting Defaults

After executing this function and rebooting the multifunction printer, all the menu parameters, except the parameters for the network, are reset to their default values.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Maintenance` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Initialize NVM` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Press ▼ to select `>User Section` or `>System Section`, and then press ✓ .
6. The `Are you sure?` message appears on the operator panel. Press ✓ .
7. The multifunction printer is turned off automatically to apply the settings.

Initializing NVRAM for Network Settings

You can initialize the IP address and network-related settings by initializing NVRAM for Network settings.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Wired Net or Wireless Net` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Reset LAN` or `>Reset MPC` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. The `Are you sure?` message appears on the operator panel. Press ✓ .
6. Turn off the multifunction printer, and then on again to apply the settings.

Understanding Menus

When your multifunction printer is configured as a network printer available to a number of users, the access to the **Admin Menu** menus can be limited. This prevents other users from using the operator panel to inadvertently change a printer user default that has been set by the administrator.

However, you can use your printer driver to override printer user defaults and select settings for individual print jobs.

- Using the Copy Menus
- Using the Scan Menus
- Using the Fax Menus
- Using the Job Status Menus
- Using the Setup Menus
- Setting of Panel Lock

Using the Copy Menus

Use the **Copy** menus to configure a variety of copy features.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Number of Copies

Purpose:

To select the number of copies from 1 to 99.

Color

Purpose:

To select color or black and white copying.

Values:

Color*	Prints in the color mode.
Black&White	Prints in the black and white mode.

Paper Tray

Purpose:

To specify the input tray.

Values:

Tray1*	The paper is fed from the standard 250-sheet tray.
Tray2*[1]	The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet paper feeder.
MPF	The paper is fed from the multipurpose feeder.
*[1] Only displayed when an optional 550-sheet paper feeder is installed on the multifunction printer.	

Reduce/Enlarge

Purpose:

To reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image.

Values:

100%*	**Custom 100% (25-400%)**
129% (in inch), 129% (in mm)	**50%**
154% (in inch), 141% (in mm)	**70% (in inch), 64% (in mm)**
200%	**78% (in inch), 81% (in mm)**

NOTE: You can set the value in a percent for Custom.

Original Type

Purpose:

To improve the image quality by selecting the document type.

Values:

Text&Photo*	Uses for documents with both text and photo/gray tones.
Photo	Uses for documents with photo or gray tones.
Best	Uses for documents with fine text of high resolution.
Text	Uses for documents with text.

Lighter/Darker

Purpose:

To adjust the density, to make the copy lighter or darker than the original.

Values:

Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	
Darker3	
Lighter3	Works well with dark print.
Lighter2	
Lighter1	

Sharpness

Purpose:

To adjust the sharpness to make the copy sharper or softer than the original.

Values:

Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Sharper	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Softer	Makes the copy softer than the original.

Color Saturation

Purpose:

To adjust the amount of color to make the colors higher or lower than the original.

Values:

Normal*	Does not adjust the amount of color to make the colors higher or lower than the original.
Higher	Adjusts the amount of color to make the colors higher than the original.
Lower	Adjusts the amount of color to make the colors lower than the original.

Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To adjust the overall brightness to make the copy overexposed than the original.

Values:

On*	Adjusts the overall brightness to make the copy overexposed than the original.
Off	Does not adjust the overall brightness to make the copy overexposed than the original.

Auto Fit

Purpose:

To automatically reduce or enlarge the image to fit the paper that is currently loaded in the multifunction printer.

Values:

On	Fits the image on the paper currently loaded.
Off*	Does not fit the image on the paper currently loaded.

2Sided

Purpose:

To print a two-sided original document onto one sheet of paper.

Values:

1->1Sided*	Does not print a 2-sided original document onto one sheet of paper.
LongEdgeBinding	Uses for long-edge binding when you perform duplex printing.
ShortEdgeBinding	Uses for short-edge binding when you perform duplex printing.

Multiple-Up

Purpose:

To print two original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.

Values:

Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.

ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge.

Collated

Purpose:

To sort the copy job.

Values:

Uncollated*	Does not sort the copy job.
Collated	Sorts the copy job.

Poster

Purpose:

To print an image onto several sheets of paper.

Values:

Off*	Does not print an image onto several sheets of paper.
2 x 2	Prints an image onto 4 sheets of paper (2 by 2).
3 x 3	Prints an image onto 9 sheets of paper (3 by 3).
4 x 4	Prints an image onto 16 sheets of paper (4 by 4).

Image Repeat

Purpose:

To print multiple image copies from the original document on a single page.

Values:

Off*	Does not print multiple image copies from the original document on a single page.
On	Prints multiple image copies from the original document on a single page.

Margin

Purpose:

To specify the margin of the copy.

Values:

Off*	Does not specify the margin of the copy.	
On	Margin Top/Bottom	Specifies the size of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Specifies the size of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Specifies the size of the middle margin.

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To use the **Copy Defaults** to modify the **Copy** menu defaults.

Using the Scan Menus

Use the **Scan** menus to configure a variety of scanner features.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Scan to Email

Purpose:

To attach the scanned image to an e-mail.

Values:

Enter E-Mail	Sends an e-mail by entering an e-mail address.
Address Book	Selects an e-mail to send from the **Address Book**.
Group E-Mail	Selects an e-mail to send from the group mail.
Search Address	Allows you search for an e-mail address or group address and specify it as the e-mail recipient.
From	Enters the sender from either of the following: · Enter E-mail · Address Book

Scan to Network

Purpose:

To store the scanned image in the network server or a computer.

Values:

Server	Stores the scanned image on the server by using the FTP protocol.
Search Address	Allows you search for a server address and specify it as the transfer destination.
Computer	Stores the scanned image on the computer by using the SMB protocol.

Scan to Application

Purpose:

To store the scanned image in the application file.

Values:

TIFF	Scans an image in TIFF.
JPEG	Scans an image in JPEG.
PDF	Scans an image in PDF.
BMP	Scans an image in BMP.

File Format

Purpose:

To specify the file format to save the scanned copy.

Values:

PDF*	**MultiPageTIFF**
TIFF	**JPEG**
MP TIFF NonComp	**TIFF NonComp**

NOTE: The MP TIFF NonComp and TIFF NonComp menus are only displayed when 256 MB or more of optional memory card is installed on the multifunction printer.

Color

Purpose:

To select color or black and white scanning.

Values:

Color*	Scans in the color mode.
Black&White	Scans in the black and white mode.

Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the resolution of a scanned image.

Values:

300	**400**
600	**150***

Original Type

Purpose:

To improve the image quality by selecting the document type.

Values:

Text&Photo*	Uses for documents with both text and photo/gray tones.
Photo	Uses for documents with photo or gray tones.
Text	Uses for documents with text.

Document Size

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

Values:

A4	Letter[*1]
B5	A5
Executive	8.5"x13"
Legal	

*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

Lighter/Darker

Purpose:

To adjust the density to make the scanned copy lighter or darker than the original.

Values:

Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	
Darker3	
Lighter3	Works well with dark print.
Lighter2	
Lighter1	

Sharpness

Purpose:

To adjust the sharpness to make the scanned copy sharper or softer than the original.

Values:

Normal*	Does not make the scanned copy sharper or softer than the original.
Sharper	Makes the scanned copy sharper than the original.
Softer	Makes the scanned copy softer than the original.

Contrast

Purpose:

To adjust the amount of color in a specified hue to make the scanned copy higher or lower than the original.

Values:

Normal*	Does not adjust the amount of color in a specified hue to make the scanned copy higher or lower than the original.
Higher	Adjusts the amount of color in a specified hue to make the scanned copy higher than the original.

Lower	Adjusts the amount of color in a specified hue to make the scanned copy lower than the original.

Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To adjust the overall brightness to make the scanned copy overexposed than the original.

Values:

On*	Adjusts the overall brightness to make the scanned copy overexposed than the original.
Off	Does not adjust the overall brightness to make the scanned copy overexposed than the original.

Scan Defaults

To use the **Scan Defaults** to modify the **Scan** menu defaults.

Using the Fax Menus

Use the **Fax** menus to configure a variety of fax features.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Phone Number

Purpose:

To enter the FAX number of the destination.

Speed Dial

Purpose:

To show up to 200 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations (001-200).

Phone Book

Purpose:

To list all of the numbers currently stored in the printer's memory as speed dial numbers.

Add PhoneBook Entry

Purpose:

To enter numbers in the Phone Book list as speed dial and group dial numbers.

Group Dial

Purpose:

To list a group of destinations and set them under a one-digit (1-6) group dial location.

Resolution

Purpose:

To improve the output quality of the original or if scanning photographic materials.

Values:

Standard*	For documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	For documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
SuperFine	For documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote printer also supports the Super Fine resolution. See the notes below.

NOTE: Faxes scanned in the SuperFine resolution transmits at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

Original Type

Purpose:

To improve the image quality by selecting the document type.

Values:

Text&Photo	Uses for documents with both text and photo/gray tones.
Photo	Uses for documents with photo or gray tones.
Text*	Uses for documents with text.

Lighter/Darker

Purpose:

To adjust the density to make the copy lighter or darker than the original.

Values:

Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	
Darker3	
Lighter3	Works well with dark print.
Lighter2	
Lighter1	

OnHook

Purpose:

To send or receive a fax manually.

Values:

Off*	Does not send or receive a fax manually.
On	Sends or receives a fax manually.

Polling Receive

Purpose:

To receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

Values:

Off*	Does not receive faxes using Polling Receive.
On	Receives faxes using Polling Receive.

Delayed Start

Purpose:

To send a fax at a later time when you will not be present.

Values:

Off*	Does not send a fax at a later time.

On	Sends a fax at a later time.

NOTE: A maximum of 19 delayed fax jobs can be stored in the Dell Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn.

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

To use the **Fax Defaults** to modify the **Fax** menu defaults.

Using the Job Status Menus

Use the **Job Status** menus to print the stored files and completed fax numbers.

Stored Print

This **Stored Print** menu provides applicable printing services such as **Secure Print** and **Proof Print**.

NOTE: The **Stored Print** menu is only displayed when 256 MB or more of optional memory card is installed on the multifunction printer.

Secure Print

Purpose:

To print confidential jobs. The multifunction printer can hold the job in memory until you arrive at the multifunction printer and type the password on the operator panel.

Values:

Del after Print	Prints the job, and then deletes it from print memory.
Print and Save	Prints the job, and then saves it in print memory.
Delete	Deletes the job from print memory.

Proof Print

Purpose:

To print only one copy and check the print result before printing all of the copies. This prevents a large number of misprinted copies from being printed at one time.

Values:

Del after Print	Prints the job, and then deletes it from print memory.
Print and Save	Prints the job, and then saves it in print memory.
Delete	Deletes the job from print memory.

Secure Receive

Purpose:

To list fax numbers received in the Secure Receive mode.

Completed Fax

Purpose:

To list completed fax numbers.

Pending Fax

Purpose:

To list pending fax numbers.

Using the Setup Menus

Defaults Settings

To use the **Defaults Settings** to modify the **Copy**, **Scan**, or **Fax** menu defaults.

Tray Settings

Use the **Tray Settings** menu to define the print media loaded in each tray.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

MPF

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder.

Values:

Paper Type	Plain*
	Plain Thick
	Transparency
	Covers
	Covers Thick
	Label
	Coated
	Coated Thick
	Envelope
	Plain S2
	Plain Thick S2
	Covers S2
	Covers Thick S2
	Coated S2
	Coated Thick S2
Paper Size	A4*
	A5
	B5
	Driver Size
	Letter
	8.5x13"
	Legal
	Executive
	Monarch
	DL
	C5
	Envelope #10
	Custom Size

MPF Mode	**Panel**	Stop printing and show an error on the operation panel if the paper specified from the printer driver does not match the paper configured for the MFP from

	Specified*	the operation panel.
	Driver Specified	Continue to print even if the paper specified from the printer driver does not match the paper configured for the MFP from the operation panel.
Display Pop Up	**On***	Specifies the size and type of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder. This item is available only when Panel Specified is selected for MFP Mode.
	Off	Size and type of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder is not specified. This item is available only when Panel Specified is selected for MFP Mode.

NOTE: For the standard 250-sheet tray or optional 550-sheet paper feeder, setting paper size is not required. These trays detect the paper size automatically. For more information on supported paper size for the standard and optional trays, see "Print Media Sizes and Support."

Use this menu item to:

- Optimize print quality for the specified paper.
- Automatically switches trays. The multifunction printer automatically switches any trays containing the same type and size of paper, if you have set the Paper Type to the correct values.

Tray 1

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the 250-sheet tray.

Values:

Paper Type	Plain*
	Plain Thick
	Covers
	Covers Thick
	Label
	Coated
	Coated Thick
Paper Size	Auto*
	Custom Size

Tray 2

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet paper feeder.

Values:

Paper Type	Plain*
	Plain Thick
	Covers
	Covers Thick
	Label
	Coated
	Coated Thick
Paper Size	Auto*
	Custom Size

Reports

Use the **Reports** menu to print various types of reports and lists.

System Settings

Purpose:

To print a list of the current user default values, the installed options, the amount of installed print memory, and the status of printer supplies.

Panel Settings

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of all the settings on the **operator panel** menus.

PCL Fonts List

Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PCL fonts.

See also:

"Understanding Fonts", "Printing a Font Sample List"

PS Fonts List

Purpose:

To print a sample of the available Adobe PostScript 3 fonts.

See also:

"Understanding Fonts", "Printing a Font Sample List"

Job History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of the processed print jobs. This list contains the latest 20 print jobs.

Error History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of paper jam and fatal errors.

Color Test Page

Purpose:

To print a page for testing colors.

Protocol Monitor

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of monitored protocols.

PCL Macro List

Purpose:

To print the information on the downloaded PCL macro.

Stored Documents

Purpose:

To print a list of all files that are stored as Secure, Store, and Proof Print in the RAM disk.

NOTE: **Stored Print** is only displayed when 256 MB or more of optional memory card is installed on the multifunction printer.

Admin Menu

Use the **Admin Menu** menu to configure a variety of printer features.

Phone Book

Use the **Phone Book** menu to configure the Speed Dial and Group Dial settings.

Speed Dial

Purpose:

To store up to 200 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations .

Group Dial

Purpose:

To create a group of these destinations and set them under a two-digit group dial location.

Print Language

Purpose:

To specify the settings for PCL and PostScript.

PCL

Use the **PCL** menu to change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PCL emulation printer language.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Paper Tray

Purpose:

To specify the input tray.

Values:

Auto*	Automatically selects a tray according to the paper size and type settings of the printing job.
Tray 1	The paper is fed from the standard 250-sheet tray.
Tray 2 *[1]	The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet paper feeder.
MPF	The paper is fed from the multipurpose feeder.
*[1] Only displayed when an optional 550-sheet paper feeder is installed on the multifunction printer.	

Paper Size

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

Values:

A4*[1]	**C5**
A5	**Executive**
B5	**Monarch**
Letter*[1]	**DL**
8.5x13"	**Envelope #10**
Legal	**Custom Size**
*[1] Denotes country-specific factory default values.	

NOTE: Selecting a custom size for the paper size prompts you to enter a custom length and width.

Orientation

Purpose:

To specify how text and graphics are oriented on the page.

Values:

Portrait*	Prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the paper.
Landscape	Prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the paper.

2 Sided Print

Purpose:

To set duplexing as the default for all print jobs. (Select **Duplex** from the printer driver to duplex only specific jobs.)

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

NOTE: The **2 Sided Print** menu is only available when the optional duplexer is installed on the multifunction printer.

Values:

Off*	Prints on one side of the paper.

On	Prints on both sides of the paper.

Binding Edge

To select binding along the long or short edge of the page. (Select Duplex from the printer driver to duplex only specific jobs.)

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

NOTE: The **2 Sided** menu is only available when the optional duplexer is installed on the multifunction printer.

Values:

Flip long edge*	Assumes binding along the long edge of the page. (Left edge for portrait orientation and top edge for landscape orientation)
Flip short edge	Assumes binding along the short edge of the page. (Top edge for portrait orientation and left edge for landscape orientation)

Font

Purpose:

To specify the default font from the registered fonts in the multifunction printer.

Values:

CG Times	**CG Times It**	**CG Times Bd**
CG Times BdIt	**Univers Md**	**Univers MdIt**
Univers Bd	**Univers BdIt**	**Univers MdCd**
Univers MdCdIt	**Univers BdCd**	**Univers BdCdIt**
AntiqueOlv	**AntiqueOlv It**	**AntiqueOlv Bd**
CG Omega	**CG Omega It**	**CG Omega Bd**
CG Omega BdIt	**GaramondAntiqua**	**Garamond Krsv**
Garamond Hlb	**GaramondKrsvHlb**	**Courier***
Courier It	**Courier Bd**	**Courier BdIt**

LetterGothic	**LetterGothic It**	**LetterGothic Bd**
Albertus Md	**Albertus XBd**	**Clarendon Cd**
Coronet	**Marigold**	**Arial**
Arial It	**Arial Bd**	**Arial BdIt**
Times New	**Times New It**	**Times New Bd**
Times New BdIt	**Symbol**	**Wingdings**
Line Printer	**Times Roman**	**Times It**
Times Bd	**Times BdIt**	**Helvetica**
Helvetica Ob	**Helvetica Bd**	**Helvetica BdOb**
CourierPS	**CourierPS Ob**	**CourierPS Bd**
CourierPS BdOb	**SymbolPS**	**Palatino Roman**
Palatino It	**Palatino Bd**	**Palatino BdIt**
ITCBookman Lt	**ITCBookman LtIt**	**ITCBookmanDm**
ITCBookmanDm It	**HelveticaNr**	**HelveticaNr Ob**
HelveticaNr Bd	**HelveticaNrBdOb**	**N C Schbk Roman**
N C Schbk It	**N C Schbk Bd**	**N C Schbk BdIt**
ITC A G Go Bk	**ITC A G Go BkOb**	**ITC A G Go Dm**
ITC A G Go DmOb	**ZapfC MdIt**	**ZapfDingbats**

Symbol Set

Purpose:

To specify a symbol set for a specified font.

Values:

ROMAN-8*	**ISO L1**	**ISO L2**
ISO L5	**ISO L6**	**PC-8**
PC-8 DN	**PC-775**	**PC-850**
PC-852	**PC-1004**	**PC-8 TK**
WIN L1	**WIN L2**	**WIN L5**
DESKTOP	**PS TEXT**	**MC TEXT**
MS PUB	**MATH-8**	**PS MATH**
PI FONT	**LEGAL**	**ISO-4**
ISO-6	**ISO-11**	**ISO-15**
ISO-17	**ISO-21**	**ISO-60**
ISO-69	**WIN 3.0**	**WINBALT**
SYMBOL	**WINGDINGS**	**DNGBTSMS**

Font Size

Purpose:

To specify the font size for scalable typographic fonts.

Values:

4.00 - 50.00	The values are in units of 0.25.
12.00*	

Font size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 1/72 of an inch.

NOTE: The **Font Size** menu is only displayed for typographic fonts.

See also:

"Pitch and Point Size"

Font Pitch

Purpose:

To specify the font pitch for scalable monospaced fonts.

Values:

6.00 - 24.00	The values are in units of 0.01.
10.00*	

Font pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters in a horizontal inch of type. For nonscalable monospaced fonts, the pitch is displayed, but cannot be changed.

NOTE: The **Font Pitch** menu is only displayed for fixed, or monospaced, fonts.

See also:

"Pitch and Point Size"

Form Line

Purpose:

To set the number of lines in a page.

Values:

5 - 128	The values are in units of 1.
64* or 64*[1]	
*[1] Denotes country-specific factory default values.	

The multifunction printer sets the amount of space between each line (vertical line spacing) based on the **Form Line** and **Orientation** menu items. Select the correct **Form Line** and **Orientation** before changing **Form Line**.

See also:

"Orientation," "Use this menu item to:"

Quantity

Purpose:

To set the number of copies you want for the printer default value. (Set the number of copies required for a specific job from the printer driver. Values selected from the printer driver always override values selected from the operator panel.)

Values:

1-999	The values are in units of 1.
1*	

Image Enhance

Purpose:

To specify whether to perform the image enhancement feature. Image enhancement is a feature that makes the boundary line between black and white smoother to decrease jagged edges and enhance the visual appearance.

Values:

On*	Enables to perform the image enhancement feature.
Off	Disables to perform the image enhancement feature.

Hex Dump

Purpose:

To help isolate the source of a print job problem. With Hex Dump selected, all data sent to the multifunction printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation. Control codes are not executed.

Values:

Disable*	Disables the Hex Dump feature.
Enable	Enables the Hex Dump feature.

Draft Mode

Purpose:

To save toner by printing in the draft mode. The print quality is reduced when printing in the draft mode.

Values:

Disable*	Does not print in the draft mode.

Enable	Prints in the draft mode.

LineTermination

Purpose:

To add the line termination commands.

Values:

Off*	The line termination command is not added. CR=CR, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-LF	The LF command is added. CR=CR-LF, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-CR	The CR command is added. CR=CR, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-FF
CR-XX	The CR and LF commands are added. CR=CR-LF, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-FF

Default Color

Purpose:

To specify the color mode to **Color** or **Black**. This setting is used when the color printing mode setting is not specified for the print job that is sent to the multifunction printer.

Value:

Black*	Prints in the black and white mode.
Color	Prints in the color mode.

PostScript

Use the **PostScript** menu to change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PostScript emulation printer language.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

PS Error Report

Purpose:

To specify whether the multifunction printer outputs error contents for a PostScript error. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

On*	Prints an error message before it discards the job.
Off	Discards the print job without printing an error message.

NOTE: This instructions from the PS driver override the settings specified on the operator panel.

PS Job Time-Out

Purpose:

To specify the execution time for one PostScript job. The change becomes effective after the multifunction printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Off*	Job timeout does not occur.
1-900min.	A PostScript error occurs if processing is not completed after the specified time.

Paper Select Mode

Purpose:

To specify the way to select the tray for PostScript mode. The change becomes effective after the multifunction printer is turned off and then on again.

Value:

Auto*	The tray is selected as the same setting as in the PCL mode.
Select From Tray	The tray is selected in a method compatible with regular Post Script printers.

Wired Network

Use the **Wired Network** menu to change printer settings affecting jobs sent to the multifunction printer through the wired network.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Ethernet

Purpose:

To specify the communication speed and the duplex settings of Ethernet. The change becomes effective after the multifunction printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto*	Detects the Ethernet settings automatically.
10 Base Half	Uses 10base-T half-duplex.
10 Base Full	Uses 10base-T full-duplex.
100 Base Half	Uses 100base-TX half-duplex.
100 Base Full	Uses 100base-TX full-duplex.

TCP/IP

Purpose:

To specify the TCP/IP settings for the wired network. The change becomes effective after the multifunction printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

IP Mode*[1]	**Dual Stack**		Uses both IPv4 and IPv6 to set the IP address.
	IPv4 Mode		Uses IPv4 to set the IP address.
	IPv6 Mode*[3]		Uses IPv6 to set the IP address.
IPv4	**Get IP Address**	**AutoIP***	Automatically sets the IP address.
		BOOTP	Uses BOOTP to set the IP address.
		RARP	Uses RARP to set the IP address.
		DHCP	Uses DHCP to set the IP address.
		Panel	Enables the IP address entered on the operator panel.
	IP Address		Sets the IP address allocated to the printer by using the keys on the operator panel.
	Subnet Mask		Sets the subnet mask.
	Gateway Address		Sets the gateway address.

Reset IPsec*[2]	Disables IPsec.

*[1] Only displayed when an optional multi-protocol card is installed on the printer.

*[2] Only displayed when IPsec is enabled.

*[3] This mode is available only when firmware version 200706291103 or later and network (MPC) firmware version 16.03 or later are installed. Since you cannot set IPsec in Windows Vista in this mode, use the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. The **Get Information from Printer** function on the **Options** tab of the printer driver is not available when using this mode.

Protocol

Purpose:

To enable or disable each item. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

LPD	**Enable***	Enables the LPD port.
	Disable	Disables the LPD port.
Port9100	**Enable***	Enables the Port9100 port.
	Disable	Disables the Port9100 port.
IPP*[1]	**Enable***	Enables the IPP port.
	Disable	Disables the IPP port.
SMB TCP/IP*[1]	**Enable***	Uses TCP/IP for SMB.
	Disable	Does not use TCP/IP for SSB.
SMB NetBEUI*[1]	**Enable***	Uses NetBEUI for SMB.
	Disable	Does not use Net BEUI for SMB.
FTP	**Enable***	Enables the FTP port.
	Disable	Disables the FTP port.
NetWare IP	**Enable***	Enables the IP.

	Disable	Disables the IP.
NetWare IPX	**Enable***	Enables the IPX.
	Disable	Disables the IPX.
WSD	**Enable***	Enables the WSD port.
	Disable	Disables the WSD port.
SNMP UDP	**Enable***	Enables the UDP.
	Disable	Disables the UDP.
E-Mail Alert	**Enable***	Enables the E-Mail Alert feature.
	Disable	Disables the E-Mail Alert feature.
EWS	**Enable***	Enables an access to **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** embedded in the printer.
	Disable	Disables an access to **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** embedded in the printer.
Apple Talk*[1]	**Enable***	Enables the AppleTalk port.
	Disable	Disables the AppleTalk port.
Bonjour(mDNS)*[1]	**Enable***	Enables the Bonjour(mDNS) port.
	Disable	Disables the Bonjour(mDNS) port.
*[1] Only displayed when an optional multi-protocol card is installed on the printer and the optional wireless printer adapter is not installed on the card.		

IPX/SPX

Purpose:

To configure the **IPX/SPX** settings for the wired network. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto*	Automatically sets the frame type.
	Uses the Ethernet II frame type.

Ethernet II	
Ethernet 802.3	Uses the IEEE802.3 frame type.
Ethernet 802.2	Uses the IEEE802.2 frame type.
Ethernet SNAP	Use the SNAP frame type.

NOTE: The **IPX/SPX** menu is only displayed when an optional multi-protocol card is installed on the printer and the optional wireless printer adapter is not installed on the card.

IP Filter (IPv4)

Purpose:

To specify that data received from certain IP addresses through the wired network is blocked. You can set up to five IP addresses. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Filter*[1]	**No. n/Address** (n is 1-5.)		Sets the IP address for Filter *n*.
	No. n/Mask (n is 1-5.)		Sets the mask for Filter *n*.
	No. n/Mode (n is 1-5.)	**Off***	Disable the IP Filter feature for Filter *n*.
		Accept	Accepts an access from specified IP address.
		Reject	Rejects an access from specified IP address.
*[1] This item is only available for LPD or Port9100.			

Initialize NVM

Purpose:

To initialize wired network data stored in NVM. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wired network settings are reset to their default values.

Adobe Protocol

Purpose:

To specify PostScript communication protocol for each interface. You can configure the Adobe Protocol settings for the wired network. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto*	Used when auto-detecting the PostScript communication protocol.
Standard	Used when the communication protocol is in ASCII interface.
BCP	Used when the communication protocol is in binary format.
TBCP	Used when the communication protocol supports both ASCII and binary data to switch between them according to the specified control code.
Binary	Used when no special processing is required for data.

Wireless Network

Use the **Wireless Network** menu to change print settings affecting jobs sent to the printer through a wireless network.

NOTE: The **Wireless Net** menu is only displayed when an optional multi-protocol card is installed on the printer and the optional wireless printer adapter is installed on the card.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Wireless/Status

Purpose:

To display the information on the wireless signal strength. Any change cannot be made on the operator panel to improve the status of the wireless connection.

Values:

Good	Indicates good signal strength.
Acceptable	Indicates marginal signal strength.
Low	Indicates insufficient signal strength.
No Reception	Indicates that no signal is received.

Wireless/Reset Wireless

Purpose:

To initialize wireless network settings. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wireless network settings are reset to their default values.

TCP/IP

Purpose:

To specify the TCP/IP settings for the wireless network. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

IP Mode*[1]	**Dual Stack**		Uses both IPv4 and IPv6 to set the IP address.
	IPv4 Mode		Uses IPv4 to set the IP address.
	IPv6 Mode*[3]		Uses IPv6 to set the IP address.
IPv4	**Get IP Address**	**AutoIP***	Automatically sets the IP address.
		BOOTP	Uses BOOTP to set the IP address.
		RARP	Uses RARP to set the IP address.
		DHCP	Uses DHCP to set the IP address.
		Panel	Enables the IP address entered on the operator panel.
	IP Address		Sets the IP address allocated to the printer by using the keys on the operator panel.
	Subnet Mask		Sets the subnet mask.
	Gateway Address		Sets the gateway address.
Reset IPsec*[2]			Disables IPsec.

*[1] Only displayed when an optional multi-protocol card is installed on the printer.

*[2] Only displayed when IPsec is enabled.

*[3] This mode is available only when firmware version 200706291103 or later and network (MPC) firmware version 16.03 or later are installed. Since you cannot set IPsec in Windows Vista in this mode, use the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. The **Get Information from Printer** function on the **Options** tab of the printer driver is not available when using this mode.

Protocol

Purpose:

To enable or disable each item. The change becomes effective after the multifunction printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

LPD	**Enable***	Enables the LPD port.
	Disable	Disables the LPD port.
Port9100	**Enable***	Enables the Port9100 port.
	Disable	Disables the Port9100 port.
IPP	**Enable***	Enables the IPP port.
	Disable	Disables the IPP port.
SMB TCP/IP	**Enable***	Uses TCP/IP for SMB.
	Disable	Does not use TCP/IP for SMB.
SMB NetBEUI	**Enable***	Uses NetBEUI for SMB.
	Disable	Does not use Net BEUI for SMB.
FTP	**Enable***	Enables the FTP port.
	Disable	Disables the FTP port.
NetWare IP	**Enable***	Enables the IP.
	Disable	Disables the IP.
NetWare IPX	**Enable***	Enables the IPX.
	Disable	Disables the IPX.
WSD	**Enable***	Enables the WSD port.
	Disable	Disables the WSD port.
SNMP UDP	**Enable***	Enables the UDP.
	Disable	Disables the UDP.
SNMP IPX	**Enable***	Enables the IPX.
	Disable	Disables the IPX.

E-Mail Alert	**Enable***	Enables the E-Mail Alert feature.
	Disable	Disables the E-Mail Alert feature.
EWS	**Enable***	Enables an access to **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** embedded in the multifunction printer.
	Disable	Disables an access to **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** embedded in the multifunction printer.
Apple Talk	**Enable***	Enables the AppleTalk port.
	Disable	Disables the AppleTalk port.
Bonjour (mDNS)	**Enable***	Enables the Bonjour(mDNS) port.
	Disable	Disables the Bonjour(mDNS) port.

IPX/SPX

Purpose:

To configure the IPX/SPX settings for the wireless network. The change becomes effective after the multifunction printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto*	Automatically sets the frame type.
Ethernet II	Uses the Ethernet II frame type.
Ethernet 802.3	Uses the IEEE802.3 frame type.
Ethernet 802.2	Uses the IEEE802.2 frame type.
Ethernet SNAP	Use the SNAP frame type.

IP Filter (IPv4)

Purpose:

To specify that data received from certain IP addresses through the wireless network is blocked. You can set up to five IP addresses. The change becomes effective after the multifunction printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

IP Filter*[1]	**No. n/Address** (n is 1-5.)		Sets the IP address for Filter *n*.
	No. n/Mask (n is 1-5.)		Sets the mask for Filter *n*.
	No. n/Mode (n is 1-5.)	**Off***	Disable the IP Filter feature for Filter *n*.
		Accept	Accepts an access from specified IP address.
		Reject	Rejects an access from specified IP address.
*[1] This item is only available for LPD or Port9100.			

Initialize NVM

Purpose:

To initialize wireless network data stored in NVRAM.

Adobe Protocol

Purpose:

To specify PostScript communication protocol for each interface. You can configure Adobe Protocol settings for the wireless network. The change becomes effective after the multifunction printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto	Used when auto-detecting the PostScript communication protocol.
Standard	Used when the communication protocol is in ASCII interface.
BCP	Used when the communication protocol is in binary format.
TBCP*	Used when the communication protocol supports both ASCII and binary data to switch between them according to the specified control code.
Binary	Used when no special processing is required.

Parallel Settings

The **Parallel Settings** menu can be adjusted to configure the parallel interface.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

ECP

Purpose:

To specify the ECP communication mode of the parallel interface. The change becomes effective after the multifunction printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Enable*	The ECP communication mode is enabled.
Disable	The ECP communication mode is disabled.

Adobe Protocol

Purpose:

To specify PostScript communication protocol for each interface. You can configure Adobe Protocol settings for the wireless network. The change becomes effective after the multifunction printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto	Used when auto-detecting the PostScript communication protocol.
Standard	Used when the communication protocol is in ASCII interface.
BCP	Used when the communication protocol is in binary format.
TBCP*	Used when the communication protocol supports both ASCII and binary data to switch between them according to the specified control code.
Binary	Used when no special processing is required.

USB Settings

Use the **USB Settings** menu to change printer settings affecting a USB port.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Fax Settings

Use the **Fax Settings** menu to configure the basic fax settings.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Interval Timer

Purpose:

To specify the interval time (3-255 seconds) of the resend attempts.

Number of Redial

Purpose:

To specify the number of redial attempts, 0-9. If you enter 0, the multifunction printer will not redial.

Int. of Redial

Purpose:

To automatically redial a remote fax machine if it was busy. Intervals from 1-15 minutes can be entered.

Ans Select

Purpose:

To select the default fax receiving mode.

Values:

TEL Mode	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external phone and then pressing the remote receive code, or by setting OnHook to On (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine) and then pressing Start.
FAX Mode*	A fax is automatically received.
TEL/FAX Mode	When the multifunction printer receive an incoming a fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in Auto Ans. TEL/FAX, and then the multifunction printer automatically receive a fax. If incoming data is not a fax, the multifunction printer beeps from the internal speaker.
Ans/FAX Mode	The multifunction printer can share one telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the multifunction printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication in your country is serial, this mode is not available.
DRPD Mode	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

Auto Answer Fax

Purpose:

To answer an incoming call and automatically go into the receive mode. You can specify the time for incoming call of the external phone in 0-255 seconds.

Auto Ans. TEL/FAX

Purpose:

To share one telephone line with an external telephone. You can specify the time for incoming call of the external phone in 0-255 seconds.

Auto Ans. Ans/FAX

Purpose:

To share one telephone line with an answering machine. You can specify the time for incoming call of the external phone in 0-255 seconds.

Line Monitor

Purpose:

To specify the volume of the external phone (line monitor).

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the external phone.
Min	Selects the volume of the external phone.
Middle*	
Max	

Ring Tone Volume

Purpose:

To specify the volume for the incoming faxes.

Values:

None	Turns off the volume for the incoming faxes.
Min	Selects the volume for the incoming faxes.
Middle	
Max*	

Line Type

Purpose:

To select the default line type.

Values:

PSTN*	Uses PSTN.
PBX	Uses PBX.

Dialing Type

Purpose:

To select the dialing type.

Values:

PB*	Uses PB.
DP (10PPS)	Uses DP (10PPS).
DP (20PPS)	Uses DP (20PPS).

DM Prevention

Purpose:

To reject faxes sent from unwanted stations.

Values:

On	Only accepts faxes from numbers registered in the PhoneBook. Incoming faxes from numbers whose G3ID is not registered correctly are not accepted even if the number is registered in the PhoneBook.
Off*	Accepts faxes from numbers that are not registered in the PhoneBook.

Remote Receive

Purpose:

To receive a fax by pressing the remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.

Values:

On	Receives a fax by pressing the remote receive code on the external telephone.
Off*	Does not receive a fax by pressing the remote receive code on the external telephone.

Remote Rcv Tone

Purpose:

To specify the tone in two digits to start Remote Receive.

Duplex Print

Purpose:

To use duplex printing when you receive a fax. This option is available only when the optional duplexer is installed on your multifunction printer.

Values:

On	Uses duplex printing.
Off*	Does not use duplex printing.

Send Header

Purpose:

To print the sender record at the head of the fax.

Values:

On*	Prints the sender record at the head of the fax.
Off	Does not print the sender record at the head of the fax.

Send Header Name

Purpose:

To register the sender name to be recorded in the sender report.

G3ID

Purpose:

To contain your telephone number, which is printed at the top of each page sent from your multifunction printer.

NOTE: Ensure to specify G3ID before using DM Prevention.

Local Name

Purpose:

To contain your name or company name, which is printed on the report sheet.

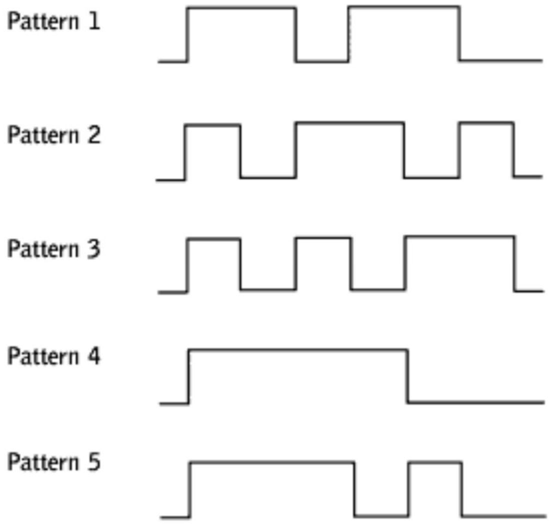
DRPD Pattern

Purpose:

To provide a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.

Values:

Pattern1-5	DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies. DRPD Patterns are specified by your telephone company. The patterns provided with your multifunction printer are shown below:

	 Pattern 1 Pattern 2 Pattern 3 Pattern 4 Pattern 5 Ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service.

Forward Settings

Purpose:

To set the multifunction printer to always forward all of the incoming faxes to the specified destination.

Values:

Trans. at Error	Forwards the incoming faxes when an error occurs.
Trans. Always	Always forwards the incoming faxes.
Not Trans.*	Does not forward incoming faxes.

Fwd. Settings Num

Purpose:

To set the number of the multifunction printer to always forward all of the incoming faxes to the specified destination.

Fwd. Set Print

Purpose:

To print all of the ongoing faxes when you can set the multifunction printer to always forward the faxes to the specified destination.

Values:

On	Prints all of the ongoing faxes.
Off*	Does not print all of the ongoing faxes.

Prefix Dial

Purpose:

To select whether or not to add the prefix number when you send a fax.

Values:

On	Adds the prefix number when you send a fax.
Off*	Does not add the prefix number when you send a fax.

Prefix Dial Num

Purpose:

To set a prefix dial number up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the PABX exchange.

Discard Size

Purpose:

To set the multifunction printer to discard any excess at the bottom of the page.

Values:

On	Discards any excess at the bottom of the page.
Off*	Prints any excess at the bottom of the page without discarding it.
Auto Reduction	Automatically reduces the document to fit it onto the appropriate sized paper.

Color Fax

Purpose:

To set the multifunction printer to send and receive color faxes.

Values:

On	Allows color faxes to be sent and received (select color or black and white when sending a fax).
Off*	Faxes are sent and received in black and white only.

Extel Hook Thresh

Purpose:

To set the threshold value for the external telephone.

Values:

Lower	Sets **Lower** in the threshold value.
Normal*	Sets **Normal** in the threshold value.

Higher	Sets **Higher** in the threshold value.

Country

Purpose:

To select the country where the multifunction printer is used.

Fwd. Error Print

Purpose:

To print the documents failed to transfer when Forward Set Print is set to `Off`.

Values:

On*	Prints documents that failed to transfer when Forward Set Print is set to Off.
Off	Does not print documents that failed to transfer when Forward Set Print is set to Off.

System Settings

Use the **System Settings** menu to configure the basic printer settings.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Power Saver Mode2

Purpose:

To enable Power Saver Mode2.

Values:

Enable*	Enables Power Saver Mode2.
Disable	Disables Power Saver Mode2.

Power Saver Timer

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time the multifunction printer waits after a job is submitted before it goes into the power saver mode.

Values:

Mode1	**5-60 min**	Specifies the amount of time before the multifunction printer enters power saver mode after it finishes a job.

	5 min*	
Mode2	**1-6 min**	
	6 min*	

Enter 5 to put the multifunction printer in power saver mode five minutes after it finishes a job. This uses much less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the multifunction printer. Enter 5 if your multifunction printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.

Select a high value if your multifunction printer is in constant use. Under most circumstances, this keeps the multifunction printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time. Select a value between 5 and 60 minutes for power save mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.

The multifunction printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the power saver mode when it receives data from the computer or remote fax machine. You can also return the multifunction printer to the standby mode by pressing any button on the operator panel.

Auto Reset

Purpose:

To automatically reset the settings for `COPY`, `SCAN`, or `FAX` to the default and return to the standby mode after you do not specify any settings for the specified time.

Values:

45sec
1min
2min
3min
4min

Alert Tone

Purpose:

To sound an alert when an event associated each function occurs.

Values:

Panel Select Tone	**Soft**	Sounds an alert when you press a button on the operator panel.
	Normal	

	Loud	
	Off*	Does not sound an alert when you press a button on the operator panel.
Panel Alert Tone	**Soft**	Sounds an alert when you press a wrong button.
	Normal	
	Loud	
	Off*	Does not sound an alert when you press a wrong button.
Machine Ready Tone	**Soft**	Sounds an alert when the multifunction printer is ready.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
	Off	Does not sound an alert when the multifunction printer is ready.
Copy Job Tone	**Soft**	Sounds an alert when copying is completed.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
	Off	Does not sound an alert when copying is completed.
Non-Copy Job Tone	**Soft**	Sounds an alert when any other job except copying is completed.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
	Off	Does not sound an alert when any other job except copying is completed.
Fault Tone	**Soft**	Sounds an alert when a job is terminated by some faults.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
	Off	Does not sound an alert when a job is terminated by some faults.
Alert Tone	**Soft**	Sounds an alert when a job is reserved by some reasons.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
	Off	Does not sound an alert when a job is reserved by some reasons.
Out of Paper	**Soft**	Sounds an alert when the multifunction printer runs out of paper.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
	Off	Does not sound an alert when the multifunction printer runs out of paper.

Low Toner	**Soft**	Sounds an alert when toner becomes low.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
	Off	Does not sound an alert when toner becomes low.
Auto Clear Alert	**Soft**	Sounds an alert before 5 seconds when an operator panel message is cleared automatically.
	Normal	
	Loud	
	Off*	Does not sound an alert before 5 seconds when an operator panel message is cleared automatically
Base Tone	**Soft**	Sounds an alert when an operator panel display is returned to the default setting by scrolling the loop menu.
	Normal	
	Loud	
	Off*	Does not sound an alert when an operator panel display is returned to the default setting by scrolling the loop menu.
All Tones	**Soft**	All tone settings can be changed at one time by this setting.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
	Off	

Time-Out

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time the multifunction printer waits to receive additional bytes of data from the computer. When this timeout expires, the print job is canceled.

Values:

Off	Disables the job timeout.
5-300 sec	Specifies the amount of time the multifunction printer waits for additional data before it cancels the job.
30 sec*	

Clock Settings

Purpose:

To specify the date format.

Values:

Set Date:yy/mm/dd	Sets the date in the yy/mm/dd format depending on the settings for Date Format.	
Set Time	Sets the time.	
Date Format	Sets the date format.	
Time Format	12H	Sets the time in the 12H format.
	24H*	Sets the time in the 24H format.
Time Zone	Sets the time zone.	

mm/inch

Purpose:

Specifies the default measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.

Values:

mm	Selects millimeter as the default measurement unit.
inch*	Selects inch as the default measurement unit.

Auto Log Print

Purpose:

To automatically print the Job History report when the number of Job History items reaches the maximum.

Values:

Off*	Does not automatically print the Job History report.
On	Automatically print the Job History report when the number of Job History items reaches the maximum.

Print logs can also be printed using the **Report/List** menu.

See also:

"USB Settings"

Print ID

Purpose:

To specify a location where the user ID is printed. This feature is available for the PCL driver and unavailable for the PS driver.

Values:

Off*	Does not print the user ID.
Top Left	Prints the user ID on the top left of the page.
Top Right	Prints the user ID on the top right of the page.
Bottom Left	Prints the user ID on the bottom left of the page.
Bottom Right	Prints the user ID on the bottom right of the page.

NOTE: When printing on DL size paper, a part of the user ID may not be printed correctly.

Print Text

Purpose:

To specify whether the multifunction printer outputs PDL data, which is not supported by the multifunction printer, as text when the multifunction printer receives it. Text data is printed on A4 or Letter size paper.

Values:

Off	Does not print the received data.
On*	Prints the received data as text data.

Banner Sheet

Purpose:

To specify the position of banner sheet, and also specify the tray in which the banner sheet is loaded. This feature is available for the PCL driver but is not available for the PS driver.

Values:

Insert Position	**Off***	Does not print the banner sheet.

	Front	Prints on the beginning of document.
	Back	Prints on the end of document.
	Front & Back	Prints on both beginning and end of document.
Specify Tray*[1]	**Tray 1***	The banner sheet is loaded in the standard 250-sheet tray.
	Tray 2*[2]	The banner sheet is loaded in tray 2.
	MPF	The banner sheet is loaded in multipurpose feeder.
*[1] When you load paper in the multipurpose feeder to print banner sheets, specify MPF Mode as Panel Specified and specify MPF PaperSize other than Driver Size from the operator panel. *[2] Only displayed when an optional 550-sheet paper feeder is installed on the multifunction printer.		

Fax Activity

Purpose:

To show information about the faxes you recently received or sent.

Values:

Auto Print*	Automatically prints information about the faxes when you received or sent 50 items of faxes.
No Auto Print	Does not automatically print information about the faxes when you received or sent 50 items of faxes.

Fax Transmit

Purpose:

To specify the communication result for the fax transmission.

Values:

Not Print	Does not print the report.
Print at Error	Prints the report when a communication error is detected.
Print Always*	Always prints the report for the fax transmission.

Fax Broadcast

Purpose:

To specify the communication result for a fax to multiple locations.

Values:

Not Print	Does not print the report.
Print at Error	Prints the report when a communication error is detected.
Print Always*	Always prints the report for the fax transmission.

Protocol Monitor

Purpose:

To specify the protocol monitor report to detect the cause of the communication trouble.

Values:

Not Print	Does not print the report.
Print at Error	Prints the report when a communication error is detected.
Print Always*	Always prints the report for the fax transmission.

RAM Disk

Purpose:

To allocate memory to the RAM disk file system for the Secure Print and Proof Print features. The change becomes effective after the multifunction printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Disable	Does not allocate memory to the RAM disk file system. Secure Print, Proof Print, and Copy Collate jobs will abort and be recorded to the job log.
Enable*	Allocates memory to the RAM disk file system automatically.

NOTE: The **RAM Disk** menu is only displayed when 256 MB or more of additional print memory is installed on the multifunction printer.

NOTE: Restart your multifunction printer when you change the settings for the **RAM Disk** menu.

Substitute Tray

Purpose:

Specifies whether or not to use another size paper when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.

Values:

Off*	No tray size substitute accepted.
Larger Size	Substitutes paper of next largest size. When there is no larger paper size, the multifunction printer substitutes paper of nearest size.
Nearest Size	Substitutes paper of nearest size.
MPF Feed	Substitutes paper from the multipurpose feeder.

Maintenance

Use the **Maintenance** menu to initialize the NV (non-volatile) memory, configure the plain paper quality adjustment settings, and configure the security settings.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Paper Density

Purpose:

To specify the paper density.

Values:

Plain	Normal*
	Light
Label	Normal
	Light*

Adjust BTR

NOTICE: The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

Purpose:

To specify the reference voltage settings for the transfer roller.

Values:

Plain	-3 - +3
	0*
Plain Thick	-3 - +3
	0*
Transparency	-3 - +3
	0*
Covers	-3 - +3
	0*
Covers Thick	-3 - +3
	0*
Label	-3 - +3
	0*
Coated	-3 - +3
	0*
Coated Thick	-3 - +3
	0*
Envelope	-3 - +3
	0*

Adjust Fuser

NOTICE: The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

Purpose:

To specify the temperature settings value for the fuser unit.

Values:

Plain	-2 - +2
	0
Plain Thick	-2 - +2
	0
Transparency	-2 - +2
	0
Covers	-2 - +2
	0
Covers Thick	-2 - +2
	0
Label	-2 - +2
	0
Coated	-2 - +2
	0
Coated Thick	-2 - +2
	0
Envelope	-2 - +2
	0

Auto Reg Adjust

Purpose:

To adjust the registration automatically.

Values:

On	Adjusts the registration automatically.
Off*	Does not adjust the registration automatically.

Color Reg Adjust

Purpose:

To print the color registration chart and to adjust the color registration by using the chart.
This function is required after the multifunction printer is set up or moved.

Values:

Auto Correct	Adjusts color registration automatically.		
Color Reg Chart	Prints the color registration chart.		
Enter Number	**Y**	**-9-+9**	Specifies the values that are found in the color registration chart for Yellow.
	M	**-9-+9**	Specifies the values that are found in the color registration chart for Magenta.
	C	**-9-+9**	Specifies the values that are found in the color registration chart for Cyan.

Initialize NVM

Purpose:

To initialize the NVM. After executing this function and rebooting the multifunction printer, all the default settings are reset to their default values.

Values:

User Section	Initializes the user section.
System Section	Initializes the system section.

Init Print Meter

Purpose:

To initialize the data for the print meter. When initializing the data on the print meter, the value of the meter resets to 0.

Clear Storage

Purpose:

To clear all files that are stored as Secure, Store, and Proof Print in the RAM disk.

NOTE: The **Clear Storage** menu is only displayed when 256 MB or more of additional print memory is installed on the multifunction printer and then the **RAM Disk** menu is set to **Enable**.

Non-DELL Toner

NOTICE: When Non-Dell toner is used, the multifunction printer may be severely damaged and may not be covered by your warranty.

Purpose:

To specify whether to use the refilled print cartridge or not. When this setting is on, you can use print cartridges provided by other companies.

Values:

On	Enables the use of refilled print cartridges.
Off*	Disables the use of refilled print cartridges.

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To adjust the height of the installation location of the multifunction printer.

0m*	Selects the value close to the height of the installation location of the multifunction printer.
1000m	
2000m	
3000m	

Secure Settings

Use the **Secure Settings** menu to set a password to limit access to the menus. This prevents items from being change accidentally.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

See also:

"Setting of Panel Lock"

Panel Lock/Panel Lock Set

Purpose:

To limit access to the **Admin** menu.

Values:

Disable*	Does not limit access to the **Admin** menu.
Enable	Limits access to the **Admin** menu.

Panel Lock/Change Password

Purpose:

To set a password to limit access to the **Admin** menu.

Values:

0000-9999
0000*

Copy/Scan/Fax Lock/Copy/Scan/Fax Set

NOTE: Before enabling `COPY/Scan/Fax Lock`, ensure that `Panel Lock` is enabled.

Purpose:

To limit access to the **Copy**, **Scan**, and **Fax** menus.

Values:

Disable*	Does not limit access to the **Copy**, **Scan**, and **Fax** menus.
Enable	Limits access to the **Copy**, **Scan**, and **Fax** menus.

Copy/Scan/Fax Lock/Change Password

Purpose:

To set a password to limit access to the **Copy**, **Scan**, and **Fax** menus.

Values:

0000-9999
0000*

Secure Receive/Secure Receive Set

NOTE: Before enabling `Secure Receive`, ensure that `Panel Lock` is enabled.

Purpose:

To set a password when you print received fax documents.

Values:

Disable*	Does not limit when you print received fax documents.
Enable	Limits when you print received fax documents.

Secure Receive/Change Password

Purpose:

To set a password when you receive a fax.

Values:

0000-9999
0000*

Admin Reports

Use the **Admin Reports** menu to print various types of **Admin Menu** reports and lists.

Speed Dial

Purpose:

To print the Speed Dial report.

Protocol Monitor

Purpose:

To print Protocol Monitor report.

Address Book

Purpose:

To print **Address Book** report.

Server Address

Purpose:

To print server address report.

Fax Activity

Purpose:

To print fax activity report.

Fax Pending

Purpose:

To print pending faxes report.

Print Meter

Purpose:

To print the reports for the total number of pages printed. When printed using either the printer control panel or **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, the report will be titled **Print Volume Report**.

Panel Language

Purpose:

To determine the language of the text on the operator panel screen.

Values:

English*	**French**
Italian	**German**
Spanish	**Danish**
Dutch	**Norwegian**
Swedish	

Setting of Panel Lock

This feature prevents unauthorized personnel from changing settings made by the printer administrator. For regular printing, items can be selected from the menu and printer settings remain unchanged. For regular printing, items can be configured using the printer driver.

NOTE: Disabling the operator panel menus does not prevent access to the **Stored Print** and **Tray Settings** menus.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Secure Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. `Panel Lock` is displayed. Press ✓ .
5. Press ▶ until `Enable` appears, and then press ✓ .
6. Press **Back** to return to the previous menu.
7. Press ▼ until `>Change Password` appears, and then press ✓ .
8. Reenter the password to confirm the password that you entered, and then press ✓ .
   The password has been changed.

NOTE: If you forget your password, turn off the multifunction printer. Then, while holding **Menu**, turn on the multifunction printer. Continue to hold **Menu** until the display indicates `Ready to Init`. This will recover the factory default panel password.
Note that the password for Panel Lock, COPY/SCAN/FAX Lock, and Secure Lock is disabled. Also note that the settings for AddressBook and FAX are cleared.

NOTE: If panel lock is `Enable`, the factory-default panel password is 0000.

See also:

"Panel Lock/Change Password"

Disabling Panel Lock

NOTE: Before disabling `Panel Lock`, ensure that `Copy/Scan/Fax Lock` and `Secure Receive` is disabled.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Secure Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .

4. `Panel Lock` is displayed. Press ✓ .
5. `Panel Lock Set is` displayed. Press ✓ .
6. Press ▶ until `Disable` appears, and then press ✓ .

Understanding Your Multifunction Printer Software

- Printer Settings Utility

Use the *Drivers and Utilities* CD that came with your multifunction printer to install a combination of software programs, depending on your operating system.

The following software programs can only operate on Windows. They cannot operate on Macintosh, UNIX, or Linux.

Printing Status Window

The **Printing Status Window** alerts you when an error or warning occurs, for example, when a paper jam occurs or toner is running low.

You can select whether to display the **Printing Status Window** when printing. When an error occurs, the error message appears on the **Printing Status Window**.

Status Window

On the **Status Window**, you can check how much toner and paper are remaining or the configuration of options for the local printer.

Status Monitor Console

Use the **Status Monitor Console** to manage multiple **Status Window**.

- Select a multifunction printer from the list view (or **Printer Selection**) by clicking its name to open a **Status Window** or **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** for a particular printer.
- The **Status Monitor Console** displays the **Status Window** for local connections, or the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** for network connections.

Dell Supplies Management System™

You can launch the **Dell Supplies Management System** dialog box from the **Printing Status window**, the **All Programs** menu, or the desktop icon. You can also launch it from the **Status Window** when a toner error occurs.

You can order consumables by phone or from the web.

1. Click **Start**→**All Programs**→**Dell Printers**→**Additional Color Laser Software**→**Dell Supplies Management System**.

   The **Dell Supplies Management System** window appears.

2. Select your multifunction printer from the **Select Printer Model** list.

3. If ordering from the Web:
    1. When you cannot get information from the multifunction printer automatically by two- way communication, a window that prompts you to type the Service Tag number appears. Type your Dell printer Service Tag number in the field provided.
       Your Service Tag number is located inside the front door of your multifunction printer.
    2. Select an URL from the **Select Reorder URL** list.
    3. Click **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site**.
4. If ordering by phone, call the number that appears under the **By Telephone** heading.

User Setup Disk Creating Tool

The **User Setup Disk Creating Tool** program located in the **MakeDisk** folder of the **Utilities** folder on the *Drivers and Utilities* CD and the printer drivers located on the *Drivers and Utilities* CD are used to create driver installation packages that contain custom driver settings. A driver installation package can contain a group of saved printer driver settings and other data for things such as:

- Print orientation and Multiple Up (document settings)
- Watermarks
- Font references

If you want to install the printer driver with the same settings to multiple computers running the same operating system, create a setup disk in a floppy disk or in a server on the network. Using the setup disk that you have created will reduce the amount of work required when installing the printer driver.

- Install in advance the Dell™ Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn printer driver in the computer on which the setup disk is to be created.
- The setup disk can only be used on the operating system on which the disk was created or computers running the same operating system. Create a separate setup disk for different types of operating systems.

Software Update

The firmware and/or driver updates can be downloaded from **http://support.dell.com**.

Printer Settings Utility

Using the Dell MFP Laser 3115cn Launcher window, you can set up scan system data options, and create and edit **Address Book** entries from your computer. You can also use Dell ScanCenter to organize, access, share, and manage documents and image files on your computer.

When you install the Dell software, the Dell MFP Laser 3115cn Launcher is automatically installed.

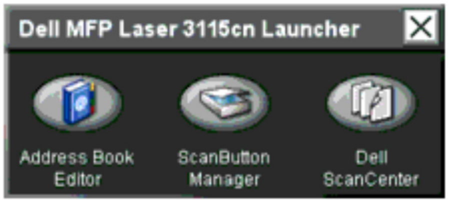
For information about installing the software, see "Networking".

NOTE: The computer must be connected to the device by USB in order to be able to retrieve address lists from the device.

To open the Dell MFP Laser 3115cn Launcher window:

1. Click **Start**→**Programs**→**Dell Printers**→**Dell MFP Color Laser Printer 3115cn**→**Launcher**.

   The Dell MFP Laser 3115cn Launcher window opens.


Dell MFP Laser 3115cn Launcher
Address Book Editor
ScanButton Manager
Dell ScanCenter

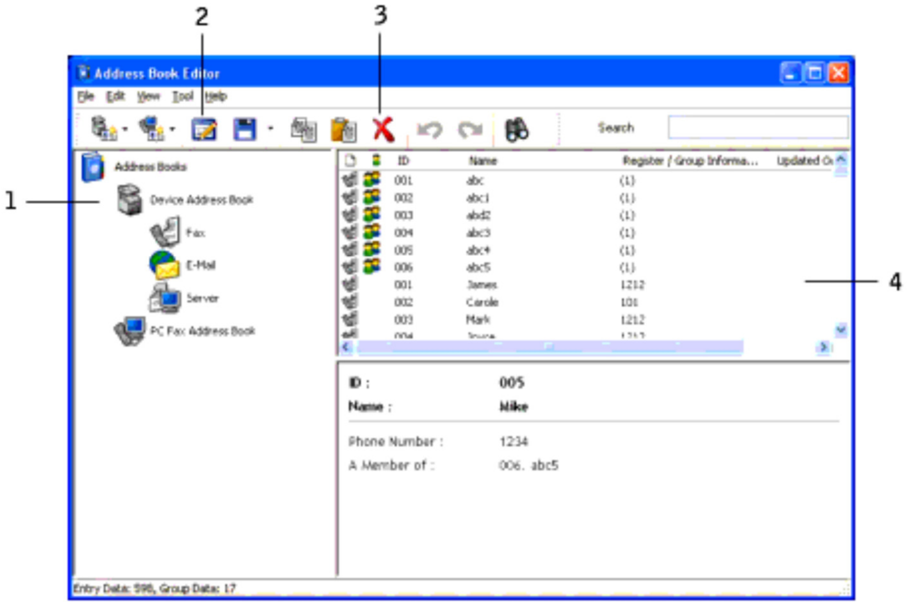
2. The Dell MFP Laser 3115cn Launcher window provides three buttons; Address Book Editor, ScanButton Manager, and Dell ScanCenter.

   To exit, click the X button at the top-right of the window.

   For details, click the **Help** button of each application.

Address Book Editor

Click the Address Book Editor button to create and edit **Address Book** entries.


2
3
1
4
Address Book Editor
File
Edit
View
Tool
Help
Search
Address Books
Device Address Book
Fax
E-Mail
Server
PC Fax Address Book

ID	Name	Register / Group Informa...	Updated O
001	abc	(1)	
002	abc1	(1)	
003	abc2	(1)	
004	abc3	(1)	
005	abc4	(1)	
006	abc5	(1)	
001	James	1212	
002	Carole	101	
003	Mark	1212	

ID : 005
Name : Mike
Phone Number : 1234
A Member of : 006. abc5

Entry Data: 598, Group Data: 17

1 Read the **Address Book** entries from the multifunction printer to the Address Book Editor.

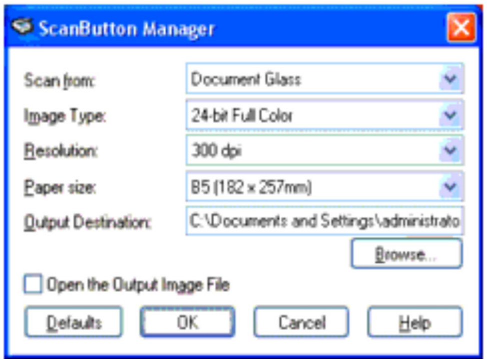
2 Allows you to edit a selected **Address Book** entry in the edit dialog box.

3 Deletes a selected **Address Book** entry.

4 Displays **Address Book** entries.

ScanButton Manager

Click the ScanButton Manager button to configure the scan destination list that appears on the operator panel display when you press the **Start** button on the operator panel.



ScanButton Manager

Scan from: Document Glass

Image Type: 24-bit Full Color

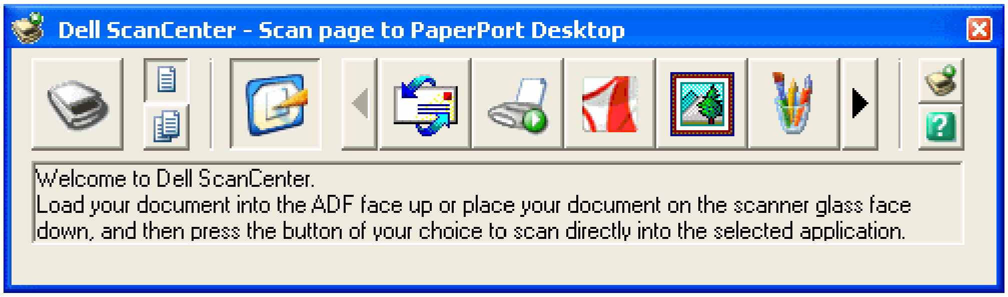
Resolution: 300 dpi

Paper size: B5 (182 x 257mm)

Output Destination: C:\Documents and Settings\administrato

Dell ScanCenter

Dell ScanCenter is a PaperPort application that enables you to scan items and send them directly to PaperPort or other programs on your computer without first running PaperPort. For more information about using Dell ScanCenter, refer to PaperPort's Help menu.



Dell ScanCenter - Scan page to PaperPort Desktop

Welcome to Dell ScanCenter.
Load your document into the ADF face up or place your document on the scanner glass face down, and then press the button of your choice to scan directly into the selected application.

Printing

This chapter covers tips for printing, how to print certain lists of information from your multifunction printer, and how to cancel a job.

- Tips for Successful Printing
- Sending a Job to Print
- Canceling a Print Job
- Printing a Report Page
- Using the Print and Hold Function

Tips for Successful Printing

Tips on Storing Print Media

Store your print media properly. For more information, see "Storing Print Media."

Avoiding Jams

NOTE: Dell recommends that you try a limited sample of any print media you are considering using with the multifunction printer before purchasing large quantities.

By selecting appropriate print media and loading it properly, you are able to avoid most jams. See the following for instructions on loading print media:

- "Loading Print Media in Standard and Optional Trays" (which includes the standard 250-sheet tray and the optional 550-sheet paper feeder)
- "Loading the Multipurpose Feeder"
- "Avoiding Jams"

If you experience a jam, see "Clearing Jams" for instructions.

Sending a Job to Print

To support all of the printer features, use the printer driver. When you choose **Print** from a software program, a window representing the printer driver opens. Select the appropriate settings for the specific job you are sending to print. Print settings selected from the driver override the default menu settings selected from the printer operator panel.

You may need to click **Properties** or **Setup** from the initial Print box to see all of the available system settings you can change. If you are not familiar with a feature in the printer driver window, open the online

Help for more information. Changing paper size or type that is different from type setting in the operator panel will require a user to change the operator panel tray setting before the job will print.

To print a job from a typical Windows application:

1. Open the file you want to print.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.
3. Verify that the correct printer is selected in the dialog box. Modify the system settings as appropriate (such as the pages you want to print or the number of copies).
4. Click **Properties** or **Setup** to adjust system settings not available from the first screen, and then click **OK**.
5. Click **OK** or **Print** to send the job to the selected printer.

Canceling a Print Job

There are several methods for canceling a print job.

Canceling From the Printer Operator Panel

To cancel a print job after it has started printing:

1. Press **Cancel**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ until `>Print` appears in the Job List screen, and then press ✔ .
   Printing is canceled only for the current print job. All the following print jobs will continue to print.

Canceling a Job From the Computer Running Windows

Canceling a Job From the Taskbar

When you send a job to print, a small printer icon appears in the right corner of the taskbar.

1. Double-click the printer icon.
   A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.
2. Select the job you want to cancel.
3. Press **Delete** on the keyboard.

Canceling a Job From the Desktop

1. Minimize all programs to reveal the desktop.
2. Click **Start**→**Printers and Faxes**.
   Click **Start**→**Control Panel**→**Hardware and Sound**→**Printers** (for Windows Vista).
   A list of available printers appears.
3. Double-click the multifunction printer you selected when you sent the job.

A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.

4. Select the job you want to cancel.
5. Press **Delete** on the keyboard.

Printing a Report Page

By using the **Report** menu, you can print a various of settings for your multifunction printer including system settings, panel setting, and font list. The following describes two examples of printing from the **Report** menu.

Printing a System Settings Page

To verify detailed system settings, print a system settings page. A printed system settings page also allows you to verify whether or not options have been installed properly.

See "Understanding Menus" to identify the display and operator panel buttons if you need help.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Reports` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. `System Settings` is displayed. Press ✓ .

   The system settings page is printed.

The message `System Settings Printing` appears while the page prints. The multifunction printer returns to the standby mode after the system settings page prints.

If any other message appears when you print this page, see "Understanding Multifunction Printer Messages" for more information.

Printing a Font Sample List

To print samples of all the fonts currently available for your multifunction printer:

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Reports` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▶ until either `PCL Fonts List` or `PS Fonts List` appears.
   - Select `PCL Fonts List` to print a listing of the fonts available to the PCL.
   - Select `PS Fonts List` to print a listing of the fonts available to the Adobe PostScript 3™.
4. Press ✓ .

The message `PCL Fonts List Printing` or `PS Fonts List Printing` appears and remains on the operator panel until the page prints. The multifunction printer returns to the standby mode after the font sample list prints.

Using the Print and Hold Function

When you send a job to the multifunction printer, you can specify in the driver that you want the multifunction printer to hold the job in memory. When you are ready to print the job, you must go to the multifunction printer and use the operator panel menus to identify which job in the memory you want to print. You can use this function to print a confidential job (Secure Print), or verify one copy before printing additional copies (Proof Print).

NOTE: The multifunction printer holds the job until you delete it by using the operator panel or you turn off the multifunction printer. The data on memory is cleared when the multifunction printer is turned off.

NOTE: Print and Hold functions require a minimum of 384 MB available print memory. Also, you need to configure the RAM disk settings on both the operator panel and the printer driver.

NOTE: Depending on the documents, its job may be too big for the available memory. In this case, an error occurs.

NOTE: If a document name is not assigned to your print job in the print driver, the job's name will be identified using the PC's time and date of submission to distinguish it from other jobs you have stored under your name.

Printing and Deleting Held Jobs

Once held jobs are stored in print memory, you can use the printer operator panel to specify what you want to do with one or more of the jobs. You can select either `Secure Print` and `Proof Print` from "Stored Print". Then, you select your user name from a list. If you select `Secure Print`, you must type the password you specified in the driver when you sent the job. See "Secure Print" for more information.

From either the Secure Print or Proof Print menu items, you have three choices:

- Del after Print
- Print and Save
- Delete

NOTE: To send a job to print as Secure Printing or Proof Printing, select Secure Printing or Proof Printing in Job Type in the Paper/Output tab of the Properties dialog box.

Printing Held and Proof Print Jobs

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Reports` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Stored Documents` appears, and then press ✓ .

Store Print

If you send a Store Print job, the multifunction printer does not print the job immediately, but stores the job in memory so you can print the job later. See "Printing and Deleting Held Jobs" for more information.

NOTE: The multifunction printer holds the job until you delete it by using the operator panel or you turn off the multifunction printer.

NOTE: When you select Del after Print, the held job is automatically deleted after printing.

Proof Print

If you send a Proof Print job, the multifunction printer prints one copy and holds the remaining copies you requested from the driver in print memory. Use Proof Print function to examine the first copy to see if it is satisfactory before printing the remaining copies.

See "Printing and Deleting Held Jobs" if you need help printing the additional copies stored in memory.

NOTE: The multifunction printer holds the job until you delete it by using the operator panel or you turn off the multifunction printer. The data on memory is cleared when the multifunction printer is turned off.

NOTE: When you select `Del after Print`, the held job is automatically deleted after printing.

Secure Print

When you send a job to the multifunction printer, you can specify a password from the driver. The password must be between 1 and 12 digits using numbers 0-9. The job is then held in print memory until you enter the same numeric password from the printer operator panel and choose to print or delete the job. This function is called "Store Print". This ensures that the job does not print until you are there to retrieve it, and no one else using the multifunction printer can print the job.

When you select `Secure Print` from `Stored Print` after selecting your user name, the following prompt is displayed:

```
Use Ten Key
[XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX]
```

Use the buttons on the operator panel to enter the numeric password associated with your confidential job. As you enter the password, the password you entered is displayed to ensure confidentiality.

If you enter an invalid password, the message `Wrong Password` appears. Wait three seconds, or Press ✓ or **Cancel** to return to the screen for user selection.

When you enter a valid password, you have access to all print jobs matching the user name and password you entered. The print jobs matching the password you entered appear on the screen. You can then choose to print or delete jobs matching the password you entered. (See "Printing and Deleting Held Jobs" for more information.)

NOTE: The multifunction printer holds the job until you delete it by using the operator panel or you turn off the multifunction printer. The data on memory is cleared when the multifunction printer is turned off.

NOTE: When you select `Del after Print`, the held job is automatically deleted after printing.

Copying

- Loading Paper for Copying
- Selecting Paper Tray
- Preparing a Document
- Making Copies From the Document Feeder Glass
- Making Copies From the ADF
- Setting Copy Options
- Changing the Default Settings
- Setting the Power Saver Timer Option

Loading Paper for Copying

The instructions for loading print materials are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying. For further details, see "Print Media Guidelines".

Selecting Paper Tray

After loading the print media for copy output, you have to select the paper tray you will use for the copy job.

1. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `Paper Tray` appears.
3. Press ◀ or ▶ until the desired tray appears, and then press ✓ .
   You can select from Tray1, Tray2 (option) and Multipurpose Feeder.

Preparing a Document

You can use the document feeder glass or the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) to load an original document for copying, scanning and sending a fax. Using the ADF, you can load up to 50 sheets of 75 g/m2 (20 lb) documents for one job. Using the document feeder glass, you can load one sheet at a time.

NOTE: To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document feeder glass instead of the ADF.

When you use the ADF:

- Do not load documents smaller than 5.59 by 5.83 in. (142 by 148 mm) or larger than 8.5 by 14 in. (216 by 356 mm).
- Do not attempt to feed the following types of documents:
  - Carbon-paper or carbon-backed paper
  - Coated paper
  - Onion skin or thin paper
  - Wrinkled or creased paper
  - Curled or rolled paper
  - Torn paper
- Remove all staples and paper clips before loading documents.
- Ensure any glue, ink or correction fluid on the paper is completely dry before loading documents.
- Do not load documents containing different sizes or weights of paper.
- Do not load booklets, pamphlets, transparencies or documents having other unusual characteristics.

Making Copies From the Document Feeder Glass

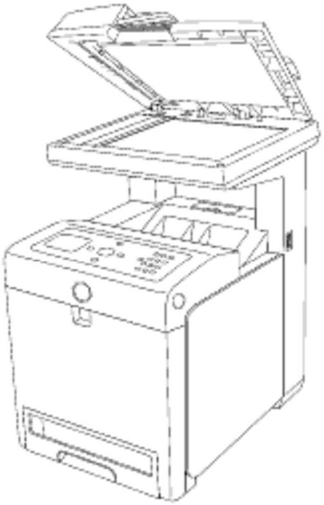
NOTE: A computer connection is not required for copying.

NOTE: Remove any documents from the ADF before copying from the document feeder glass.

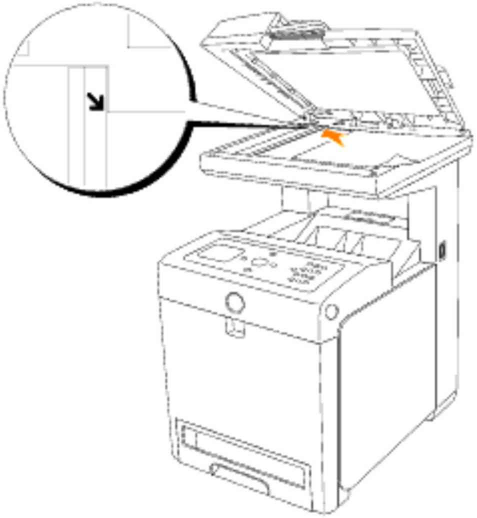
NOTE: Contaminants on the document feeder glass may cause black spots on the printout. For best results, clean the document feeder glass before use. See "Cleaning the scanner".

To make a copy from the document feeder glass:

1. Lift and open the document cover.



2. Place the document face down on the document feeder glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the glass.



3. Close the document cover.

NOTE: Leaving the cover open while copying may affect the copy quality and toner consumption.

NOTE: If you are copying a page from a book or magazine, lift the cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start copying with the cover open.

4. Customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, the contrast, and the image quality. See "Setting Copy Options".
   To clear the settings, use the **Cancel** button.
5. Press **Start**.

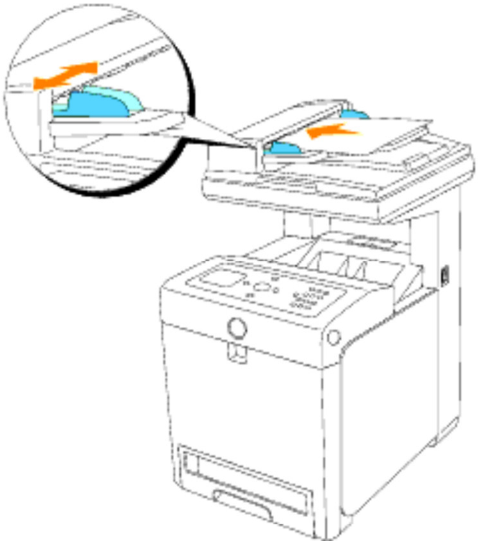
NOTE: You can cancel the copy job at any time. Press ▲ or ▼ to select `>COPY` in the Job List screen, and then press ✓ .

Making Copies From the ADF

NOTICE: Do not load more than 50 sheets into the ADF or allow more than 50 sheets to be fed to the ADF output tray. The ADF output tray should be emptied before it exceeds 50 sheets or your original documents may be damaged.

NOTE: A computer connection is not required for copying.

1. Load up to 50 sheets of 75 g/m2 (20 lb) documents face up on the ADF with top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.



2. Customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, contrast, and image quality. See "Setting Copy Options".
   To clear the settings, use **Cancel**.
3. Press **Start**.

Setting Copy Options

Set the following options for the current copy job before pressing **Start** to make copies.

NOTE: The copy options automatically return to their default status after copying.

Number of Copies

You can select the number of copies from 1 to 99.

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
   OR
   Place a single document face down on the document feeder glass.
   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document".

2. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `Number of Copies` appears.
4. Press ▶ to select the desired settings, and then press ✓ .
5. Press **Start** to begin copying.

Color

You can select color or black and white copying.

1. Load the document to be copied on the document feeder glass, and close the cover.
2. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `Color` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▶ to select the desired settings, and then press ✓ .

Color	Prints in the color mode.
Black&White	Prints in the black and white mode.

5. Press **Start** to begin copying.

Reduce/Enlarge

You can reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image, from 25 percent to 400 percent when you copy original documents from the document feeder glass or ADF.

NOTE: When you make a reduced copy, black lines may appear at the bottom of your copy.

To select from the predefined copy sizes:

1. Load the document to be copied on the document feeder glass, and close the cover.
2. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `Reduce/Enlarge` appears.
4. Press ▶ to select the desired settings, and then press ✓ .

100%*	**Custom 100% (25-400%)**
129% (in inch), 129% (in mm)	**50%**
154% (in inch), 141% (in mm)	**70% (in inch), 64% (in mm)**
200%	**78% (in inch), 81% (in mm)**

NOTE: You can set the value in a percent for Custom.

5. Press **Start** to begin copying.

Original Type

The Original Type setting is used to improve the image quality by selecting the document type for the current copy job.

To select the image quality:

1. Load the document to be copied on the document feeder glass, and close the cover.
2. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `Original Type` appears.
4. Press ▶ to select the desired settings, and then press ✓ .

Text&Photo*	Uses for documents with both text and photo/gray tones.
Photo	Uses for documents with photo or gray tones.
Best	Uses for documents with fine text of high resolution.
Text	Uses for documents with text.

5. Press **Start** to begin copying.

Lighter/Darker

Adjust the contrast to make the copy lighter or darker than the original.

To adjust the contrast:

1. Load the document to be copied on the document feeder glass, and close the cover.
2. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `Lighter/Darker` appears.
4. Press ▶ to select the desired settings, and then press ✓ .

Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	
Darker3	
Lighter3	Works well with dark print.

Lighter2	
Lighter1	

5. Press **Start** to begin copying.

Sharpness

Adjust the sharpness to make the copy sharper or softer than the original.

To adjust the sharpness:

1. Load the document to be copied on the document feeder glass, and close the cover.
2. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `Sharpness` appears.
4. Press ▶ to select the desired settings, and then press ✓ .

Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Sharper	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Softer	Makes the copy softer than the original.

5. Press **Start** to begin copying.

Color Saturation

Adjusts the amount of color to make the colors deeper or lighter than the original.

To adjust the sharpness:

1. Load the document to be copied on the document feeder glass, and close the cover.
2. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `Color Saturation` appears.
4. Press ▶ to select the desired settings, and then press ✓ .

Normal*	Does not adjust the amount of color in a specified hue to make the colors deeper or lighter than the original.
Higher	Adjusts the amount of color in a specified hue to make the colors deeper than the original.
Lower	Adjusts the amount of color in a specified hue to make the colors lighter than the original.

5. Press **Start** to begin copying.

Auto Exposure

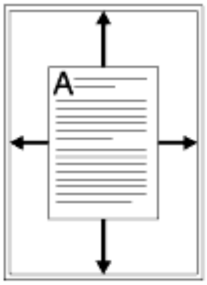
Adjust the overall brightness to make the copy overexposed than the original.

To make the Auto Exposure copying:

1. Load the document to be copied on the document feeder glass, and close the cover.
2. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `Auto Exposure` appears.
4. Press ▶ to select `On`, and then press ✓ .
5. Press **Start** to begin copying.

Auto Fit

Automatically reduces or enlarges the original image to fit on the paper currently loaded in the multifunction printer.



This special copy mode can be applied when you load a document using only the document feeder glass. When this mode is On, a document loaded on the ADF cannot be copied. Set this mode to Off, if you want to copy documents loaded on the ADF.

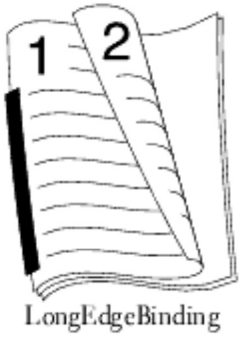
NOTE: You cannot adjust the copy size using the Reduce/Enlarge menu item while the Auto Fit copying is enabled.

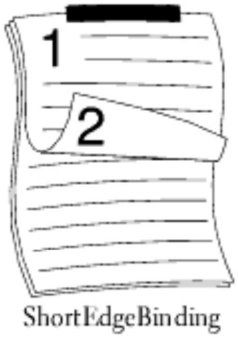
To make the Auto Fit copying:

1. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `Auto Fit` appears.
3. Press ▶ to select `On`, and then press ✓ .
4. If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, contrast, and image quality. See "Setting Copy Options".
5. Press **Start** to begin copying.

2Sided

Print a two-sided original document onto one sheet of paper.





When you copy using this feature, the multifunction printer prints one side on the upper half of the paper and the other side on the lower half without reducing the original.

If the original document is larger than the printable area, some portions may not be printed.

To make the 2Sided copying:

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
   OR
   Place a single document face down on the document feeder glass.
   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document".
2. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `2Sided` appears.
4. Press ▶ to select the desired setting, and then press ✓ .

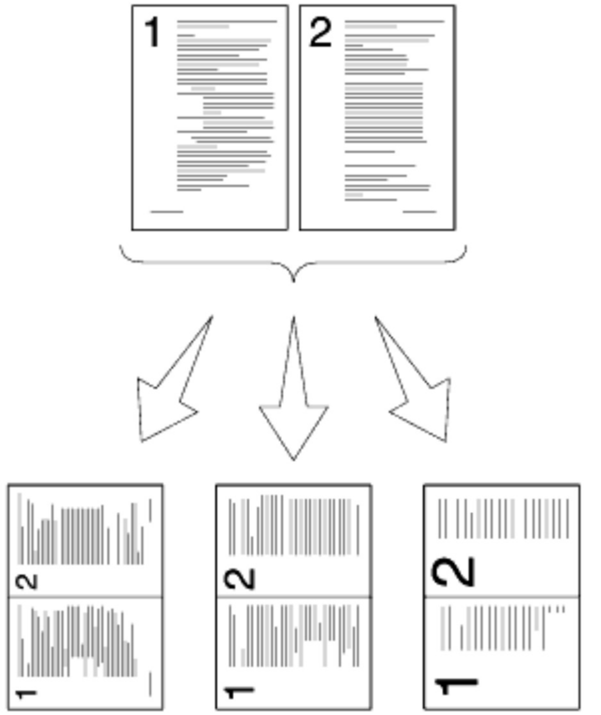
1->1Sided*	Does not print a two-sided original document onto one sheet of paper.
LongEdgeBinding	Uses for long-edge binding when you perform duplex printing.
ShortEdgeBinding	Uses for short-edge binding when you perform duplex printing.

5. If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, contrast, and image quality. See "Setting Copy Options".
6. Press **Start** to begin copying.
   For the document loaded on the document feeder glass, the display asks if you want to load another page. Press ▶ to select `Yes` or `No`, and then press ✓ .
7. If you select `Yes`, press ▶ to select `Continue` or `Cancel`, and then press ✓ .

NOTE: If you press the **Cancel** button or if no buttons are pressed for about 60 seconds, the multifunction printer proceeds the copy job and returns to the standby mode.

Multiple-Up

Print two original images to fit onto one sheet of paper.



Auto:
Automatically reduces the pages to fit in one page.

ID Copy:
Always prints two sides of the ID card in one page in the original size (by 100%).

Manual:
Reduces the pages in the custom size depending on the setting of the Reduce/Enlarge menu.

To make the Multiple-Up copying:

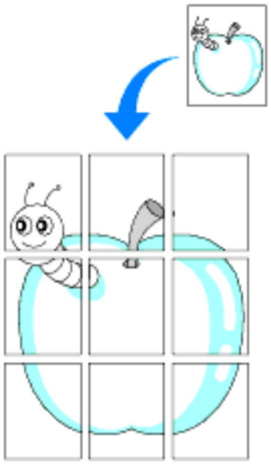
1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
   OR
   Place a single document face down on the document feeder glass.
   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document".
2. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `Multiple-Up` appears.
4. Press ▶ to select the desired setting, and then press ✓ .

Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge.

5. If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, contrast, and image quality. See "Setting Copy Options".
6. Press **Start** to begin copying.
   For the document loaded on the document feeder glass, the display asks if you want to load another page. Press ▶ to select `Yes` or `No`, and then press ✓ .

Poster Copying

Print an image onto several sheets of paper. You can paste the printed pages together to make one poster-size document.



This special copy mode can be applied when you load a document using only the document feeder glass.

NOTE: You cannot adjust the copy size using the Reduce/Enlarge option for making a poster.

To make the Poster copying:

1. Load the documents to be copied on the document feeder glass and close the cover.
2. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `Poster` appears.
4. Press ▶ to select the desired setting, and then press ✓ .

Off*	Does not print an image onto several sheets of paper.
2 x 2	Prints an image onto 4 sheets of paper (2 by 2).
3 x 3	Prints an image onto 9 sheets of paper (3 by 3).
4 x 4	Prints an image onto 16 sheets of paper (4 by 4).

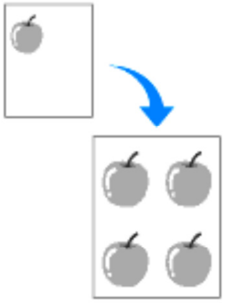
5. If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, contrast, and image quality. See "Setting Copy Options".

6. Press **Start** to begin copying.
   Your original document is divided into 9 portions. Each portion is scanned and printed one by one in the following order:

1	2	3
4	5	6
7	8	9

Image Repeat

Print multiple image copies from the original document on a single page. The number of images is automatically determined by the original image and paper size.



This special copy mode can be applied when you load a document using only the document feeder glass.

NOTE: You cannot adjust the copy size using the Reduce/Enlarge menu item while the Image Repeat copying is enabled.

To make the Image Repeat copying:

1. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `Image Repeat` appears.
3. Press ▶ to select `On`, and then press ✓ .
4. If necessary, customize the copy settings including number of copies, contrast, and image quality. See "Setting Copy Options".
5. Press **Start** to begin copying.

Margin

Specify the margin of the copy.

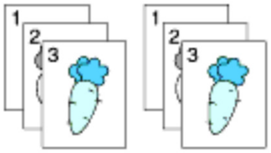
To make the Margin copying:

1. Load the document to be copied on the document feeder glass, and close the cover.
2. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `Margin` appears.
4. Press ▶ to select `On`, and then press ✓ .
5. Press **Start** to begin copying.

Collated

Sort the copy job. For example, if you make two copies of three page documents, one complete three page document will print followed by the second complete document.

NOTE: Copy collate is only available when optional memory card is installed.



1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
   OR
   Place a single document face down on the document feeder glass.
   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document".
2. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `Collated` appears.
4. Press ▶ to select `Collated`, and then press ✓ .
5. If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, contrast, and image quality. See "Setting Copy Options".
6. Press **Start** to begin copying.
   For the document loaded on the document feeder glass, the display asks if you want to load another page. Press ▶ to select `Yes` or `No`, and then press ✓ .
7. If you select `Yes`, press ▶ to select `Continue` or `Cancel`, and then press ✓ .

Changing the Default Settings

The **Copy** menu options, including contrast, and image quality can be set to the most frequently used modes. When you copy a document, the default settings are used unless they are changed by using the corresponding buttons on the operator panel.

NOTE: While you set copy options, pressing **Cancel** cancels the changed settings and returns to the default status.

To create your own default settings:

1. Press ▲ until `>COPY` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Copy Defaults` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until the desired menu item appears.
4. Press ► to change the setting, and then press ✓ .
5. Repeat steps 3 to 4, as needed.
6. To return to the standby mode, press **Cancel**.

Setting the Power Saver Timer Option

You can set the power saver timer for the multifunction printer. The multifunction printer waits before it restores the default copy settings, if you do not start copying after changing them on the operator panel.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>System Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Power Saver Timer` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Press ► to select Mode1 or Mode2, and then press ✓ .

   You can select from 5-60 minutes in Mode1 or 1-6 minutes in Mode2. Selecting `Disable` in Power Saver Mode2 means that the multifunction printer does not restore the default settings until you press **Start** to begin copying, or **Cancel** to cancel.

6. To return to the standby mode, press **Cancel**.

Scanning

- Scanning Overview
- Scanning From Operator Panel
- Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver
- Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver
- Using a Scanner on the Network
- Sending an E-Mail with the Scanned Image

Scanning Overview

Use your Dell™ Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn to turn pictures and text into editable images on your computer.

PaperPort is a program that you organize, find and share all your paper and digital documents, and is supplied with your multifunction printer.

The resolution setting to use when you scan an item depends on the item type and how you plan to use the image or document after you scan it in to your computer. For the best results, use these recommended settings.

Type	Resolution
Documents	300 dpi black-and-white or 200 dpi grayscale or color
Documents of poor quality or that contain small text	400 dpi black-and-white or 300 dpi grayscale
Photographs and pictures	100-200 dpi color or 200 dpi grayscale
Images for an inkjet printer	150-300 dpi
Images for a high-resolution printer	300-600 dpi

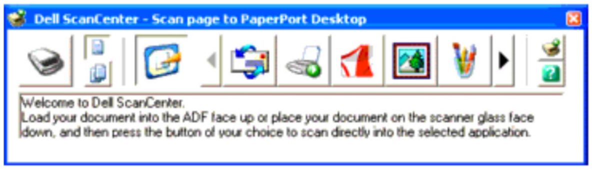
Scanning above these recommended resolutions may exceed the capabilities of the application. If you require a resolution above those recommend in the above table, you should reduce the size of the image by previewing (or pre-scan) and cropping before scanning the image.

NOTE: You can use PaperPort's built-in OCR software to copy text from scanned documents so that you can use and edit the text in any text editing, word processing, or spreadsheet program. The OCR process requires textual images scanned at 150-600 dpi and 300 dpi or 600 dpi is recommended for graphics.

If you prefer to use another application, such as Adobe PhotoShop, you must assign the application to the multifunction printer by selecting it from the list of available applications via the Select Software button each time you start scanning. If you do not assign an application to the Select Software button, PaperPort is automatically selected when you start scanning. Refer to "Printer Settings Utility".

NOTE: PaperPort application for Microsoft Windows Vista may not be available, for more information see the Dell Support website at **www.support.dell.com**.

Dell ScanCenter is a PaperPort application that enables you to scan items and send them directly to PaperPort or other programs on your computer without first running PaperPort. Dell ScanCenter runs as a separate application from the **Windows Start** menu and displays the Dell ScanCenter bar. For more information about using Dell ScanCenter, refer to the **PaperPort's Help** menu.



Welcome to Dell ScanCenter.
Load your document into the ADF face up or place your document on the scanner glass face down, and then press the button of your choice to scan directly into the selected application.

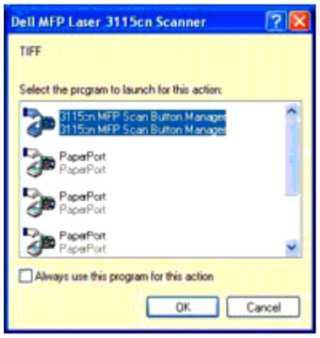
Icons on the Dell ScanCenter bar represent the programs that are limited to PaperPort and to Dell ScanCenter. To scan and send an item to a program, click the program icon and then scan the item. Dell ScanCenter automatically starts the selected program when the scan is complete.

Scanning From Operator Panel

NOTE: Ensure that the multifunction printer is connected to the computer by using the USB cable.

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
   OR
   Place a single document face down on the document feeder glass.
   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document".
2. Do either of the following:
   - Scanning from the document feeder glass
     Select **Document Glass** from ScanButton Manager.
   - Scanning form the ADF
     Select **Document Feeder** from ScanButton Manager.
3. Press ▼ until `>SCAN` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Scan to Application`, and then press ✓ .
5. Press ▶ to select an application file to which you want to send the scanned image, and then press ✓ .
6. Press **Start**. The selected application window opens. Adjust the scan settings and start scan. For details, refer to the user's guide of the application.

NOTE: If the following dialog box appears on your PC, select **3115cn MFP Scan Button Manager**, and then click **OK**.


Dell MFP Laser 3115cn Scanner
TIFF
Select the program to launch for this action:
3115cn MFP Scan Button Manager
3115cn MFP Scan Button Manager
PaperPort
PaperPort
PaperPort
PaperPort
PaperPort
PaperPort
☐ Always use this program for this action
OK
Cancel

Note that you must use ScanButton Manager on your computer to change the settings for scanning. For details, see "Printer Settings Utility".

Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver

Your multifunction printer supports the TWAIN driver for scanning images. TWAIN is one of the standard components provided by Microsoft® Windows® 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista®, and works with various scanners.

To scan an image from the drawing software:

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
   OR
   Place a single document face down on the document feeder glass.
   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document".

2. Start the drawing software, such as **Imaging** for Windows.

   NOTE: When you use Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Vista, use **PaperPort** instead of **Imaging**.

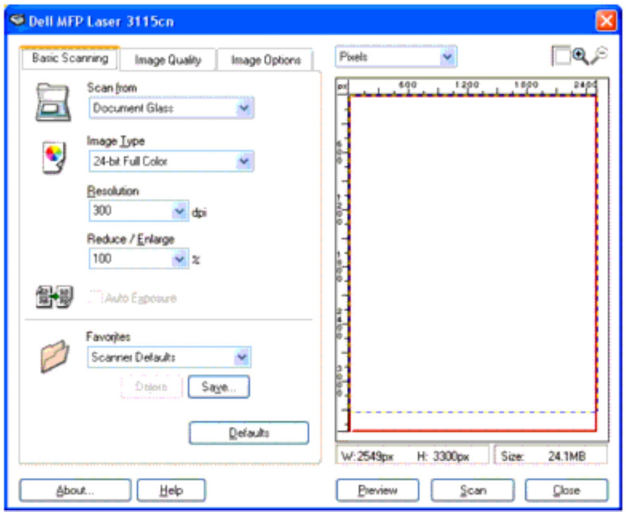
3. Click **File**→**Scan or Get Photo...**

   The **Available Scanner** dialog box appears.

   NOTE: If the **Available Scanner** dialog box does not appear, click the **Select...** button in the left pane of the **Scan or Get Photo** window.

4. In the **Available Scanner** dialog box, select **Dell MFP Laser 3115cn Scanner**, and then click **OK**.
5. In the left pane of the **Scan or Get Photo** window, select the **Display scanner dialog box** check box, and then click **Scan**.

   The **Dell MFP Laser 3115cn Scanner** window appears.



Scan from: Document Glass

Image Type: 24-bit Full Color

Resolution: 300 dpi

Reduce / Enlarge: 100 %

Favorites: Scanner Defaults

W: 2549px H: 3300px Size: 24.1MB

NOTE: The illustration may vary for different operating systems.

6. Select your scanning preferences and click **Preview** to display the preview image.
7. Select the desired properties from the **Image Quality** and **Image Options** tabs.
8. Click **Scan** to start scanning.
9. Enter a picture name, and select a file format and destination to save the picture.
10. Follow the on-screen instructions to edit the picture after it is copied to your computer.

Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver

Your multifunction printer also supports the WIA driver for scanning images. WIA is one of the standard components provided by Microsoft® Windows Vista®, Windows® XP and works with digital cameras and scanners. Unlike the TWAIN driver, the WIA driver allows you to scan an image and easily manipulate those images without using additional software.

NOTE: WIA is not available for Windows 2000.

NOTE: Ensure that the multifunction printer is connected to the computer by using the USB cable.

To scan an image from the drawing software:

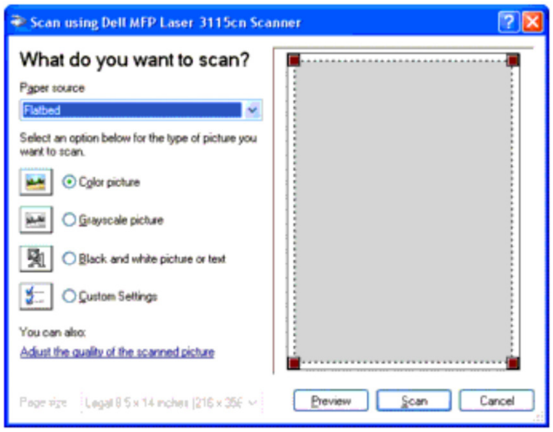
1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
   OR

Place a single document face down on the document feeder glass.
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document".

2. Start the drawing software, such as Microsoft Paint.

   NOTE: When you use Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008, use **Windows Photo Gallery** instead of **Paint**.

3. Click **File→From Scanner or Camera**.
   The Scan using Dell MFP Laser 3115cn window appears.

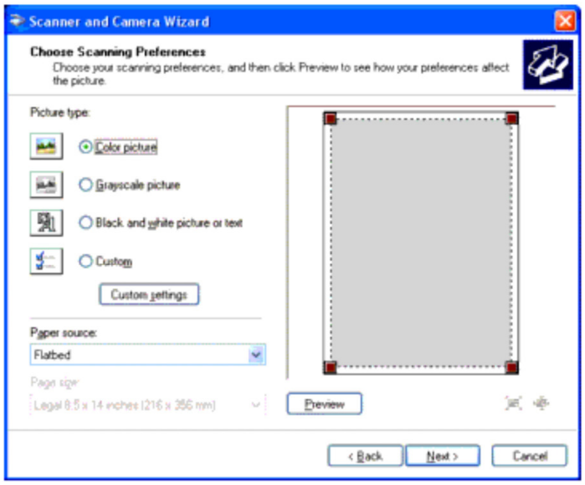

Scan using Dell MFP Laser 3115cn Scanner
What do you want to scan?
Paper source
Flatbed
Select an option below for the type of picture you want to scan.
Color picture
Grayscale picture
Black and white picture or text
Custom Settings
You can also:
Adjust the quality of the scanned picture
Page size
Legal 8.5 x 14 inches (216 x 356
Preview
Scan
Cancel

NOTE: The illustration may vary for different operating systems.

4. Select your scanning preferences and click **Adjust the quality of the scanned picture** to display the **Advanced Properties** dialog box.
5. Select the desired properties including brightness and contrast, and then click **OK**.
6. Click **Scan** to start scanning.
7. Enter a picture name, and select a file format and destination to save the picture.
8. Follow the on-screen instructions to edit the picture after it is copied to your computer.

To scan an image from **Control Panel**:

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
   OR
   Place a single document face down on the document feeder glass.
   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document".
2. Click **Start→Control Panel→Printers and Other Hardware→Scanners and Cameras**.
3. Double-click the printer icon. The **Welcome to Scanners and Camera Wizard** launches.
4. Click **Next** to display the **Scanner and Camera Wizard**.



Choose Scanning Preferences

Choose your scanning preferences, and then click Preview to see how your preferences affect the picture.

Picture type:

● Color picture

○ Grayscale picture

○ Black and white picture or text

○ Custom

Paper source: Flatbed

Page size: Legal 8.5 x 14 inches (216 x 356 mm)

NOTE: The illustration may vary for different operating systems.

5. Select your scanning preferences and click **Next**.
6. Enter a picture name, and select a file format and destination to save the picture.
7. Click **Next** to start scanning.
8. Follow the on-screen instructions to edit the picture after it is copied to your computer.

Using a Scanner on the Network

The Scan to Server/Computer feature allows you to scan a document from the Dell MFP 3115cn and store it in a folder on your computer through File Transfer Protocol (FTP) or Server Message Block (SMB). To retrieve the scanned document from the computer:

1. Create a shared folder in your computer for Scan to Computer. See "Sharing a Folder From Your Computer" for more details.
2. Setup the address book through the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. See "Setting Up the Address Book" for more details.
3. Create a shared folder with sub-folder in your computer for Scan to Computer. See "Sharing a Folder With Sub-folder From Your Computer" for more details.
4. Scan to Server/Computer through Wireless Setup (if you have the Optional Wireless Network Card). See "Scan to Computer/Server Through Wireless Setup" for more details.
5. Start to send the scanned file on the network. See "Start to send the scanned file on the Network" for more details.

Here are some additional instructions if you need to create a password for your user account or locate the IP address of your computer.

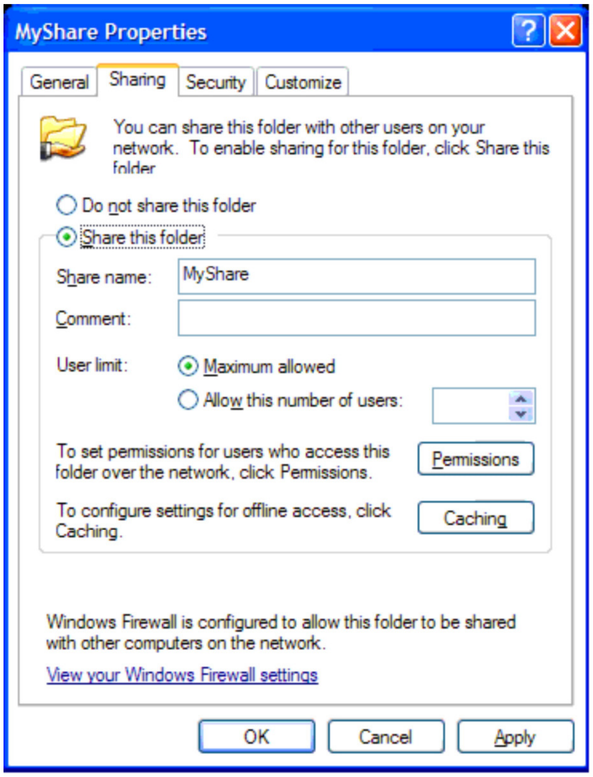
- Create a Password For Your User Login Account.
- Locate the IP Address Of Your Computer.

Sharing a Folder From Your Computer

If you are using Microsoft® Windows® XP or Windows 2000, you can share a folder with the following instructions:

1. Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, `MyShare`).
2. Right-click on the folder, and then select **Properties**.
3. The **Properties** dialog box appears, click on the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder**.
4. Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

NOTE: Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.


MyShare Properties
General
Sharing
Security
Customize
Permissions
Caching
View your Windows Firewall settings
OK
Cancel
Apply

You can share this folder with other users on your network. To enable sharing for this folder, click Share this folder.

○ Do not share this folder

● Share this folder

Share name: MyShare

Comment:

User limit: ● Maximum allowed

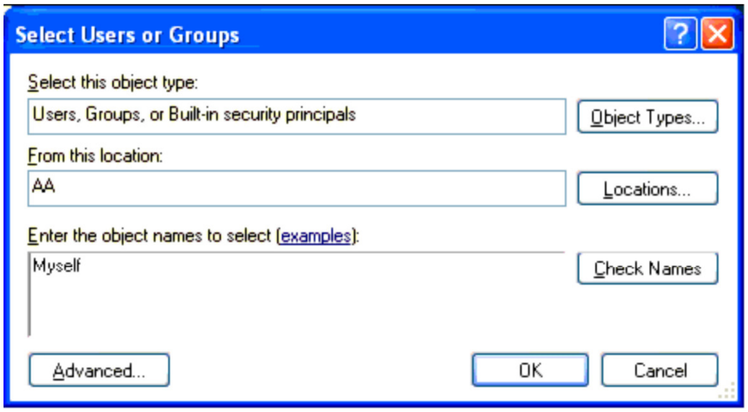
○ Allow this number of users:

To set permissions for users who access this folder over the network, click Permissions.

To configure settings for offline access, click Caching.

Windows Firewall is configured to allow this folder to be shared with other computers on the network.

5. Click on **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.
6. Click **Add**.
7. Enter your user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box (Example of user login name, `Myself`).


Select Users or Groups
Object Types...
Locations...
Check Names
Advanced...
OK
Cancel

Select this object type: Users, Groups, or Built-in security principals

From this location: AA

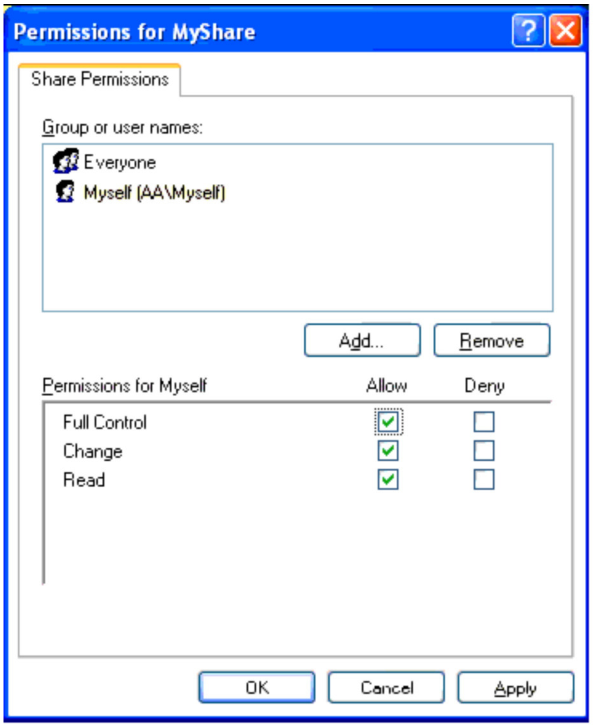
Enter the object names to select (examples): Myself

NOTE: User login account with empty password will be rejected in the Scan to Folder authentication. Ensure that all user login accounts have a valid and non-empty password. See "Create a Password for Your User Login Account" for details on how to assign a password for your user login account.

8. Click **OK**.

NOTE: Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.

9. Click on the user login name that you have just entered. Select **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.


Permissions for MyShare
Share Permissions
Group or user names:
Everyone
Myself (AA\Myself)
Add...
Remove
Permissions for Myself
Allow
Deny
OK
Cancel
Apply

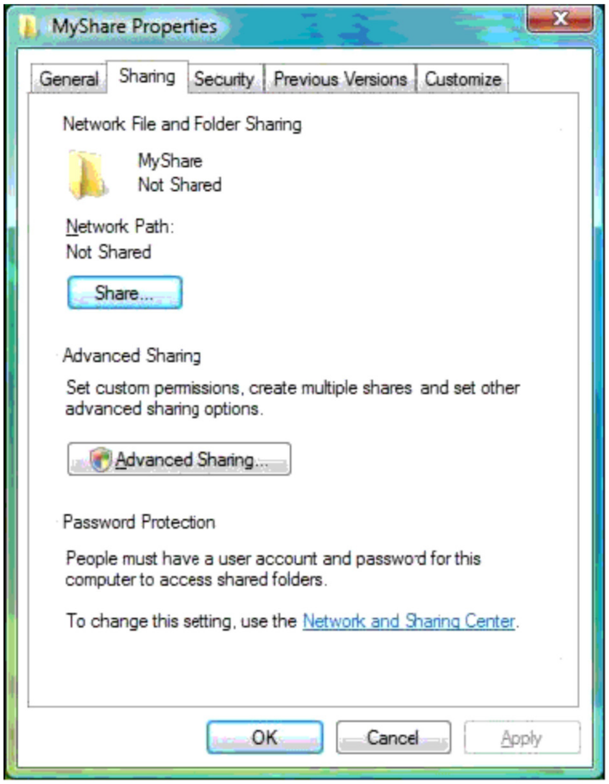
Full Control ☑ ☐

Change ☑ ☐

Read ☑ ☐

If you are using Windows Vista® or Windows Server 2008, you can share a folder with the following or similar instructions:

1. Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, `MyShare`).
2. Right-click on the folder, and then select **Properties**.
3. The **Properties** dialog box appears, click on the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Advanced Sharing**.


MyShare Properties
General
Sharing
Security
Previous Versions
Customize
Network File and Folder Sharing
MyShare
Not Shared
Network Path:
Not Shared
Share...
Advanced Sharing
Advanced Sharing...
Password Protection
OK
Cancel
Apply

Set custom permissions, create multiple shares and set other advanced sharing options.

People must have a user account and password for this computer to access shared folders.

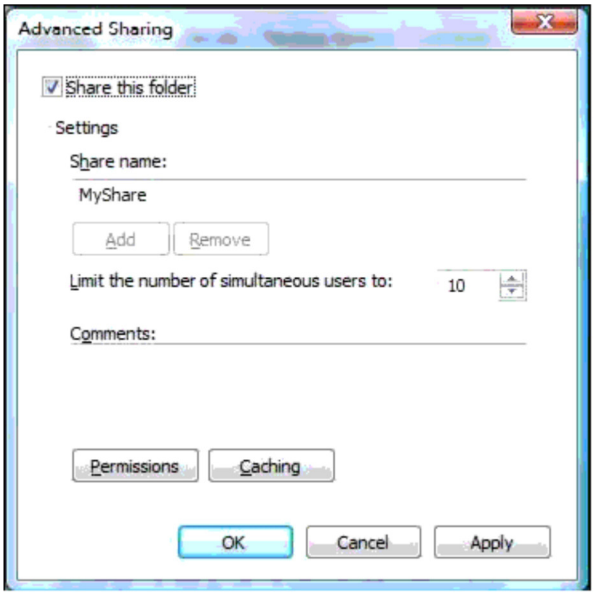
To change this setting, use the Network and Sharing Center.

4. Select the **Share this folder** check box.

5. Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

NOTE: Note down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.

6. Click on **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.



Advanced Sharing

☑ Share this folder

Settings

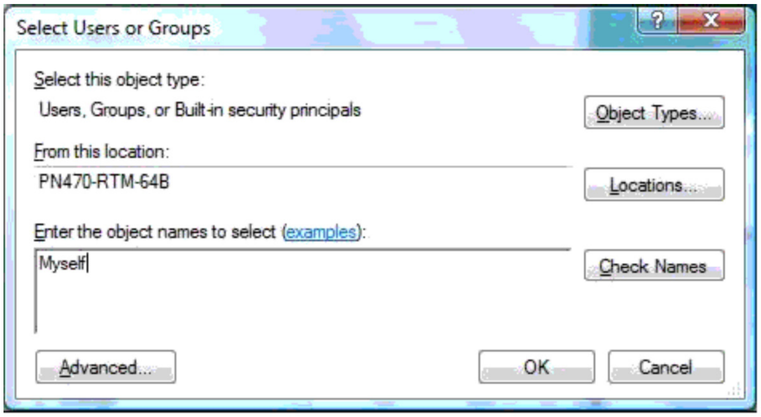
Share name:

MyShare

Limit the number of simultaneous users to: 10

Comments:

7. Click **Add**.
8. Enter your user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box (Example of user login name, `Myself`).



Select Users or Groups

Select this object type:

Users, Groups, or Built-in security principals

From this location:

PN470-RTM-64B

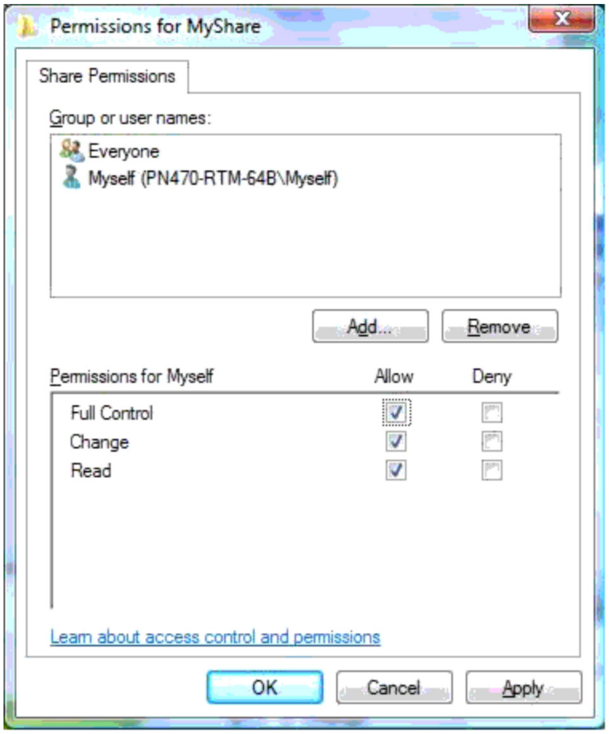
Enter the object names to select (examples):

Myself

NOTE: User login account with empty password will be rejected in the Scan to Folder authentication. Ensure that all user login accounts have a valid and non-empty password. See "Create a Password for Your User Login Account" for details on how to assign a password for your user login account.

9. Click **OK** when you are done.
10. Click on the user login name that you have just entered. Select **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.

NOTE: Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.



Everyone
Myself (PN470-RTM-64B\Myself)

Permissions for Myself	Allow	Deny
Full Control	☑	☐
Change	☑	☐
Read	☑	☐

Setting Up the Address Book

To setup the Scan to Server/Computer address book through the network, you will first need to locate the IP address of the Dell MFP Laser 3115cn. You can obtain this IP address from the System Settings report by performing the following steps from the operator panel:

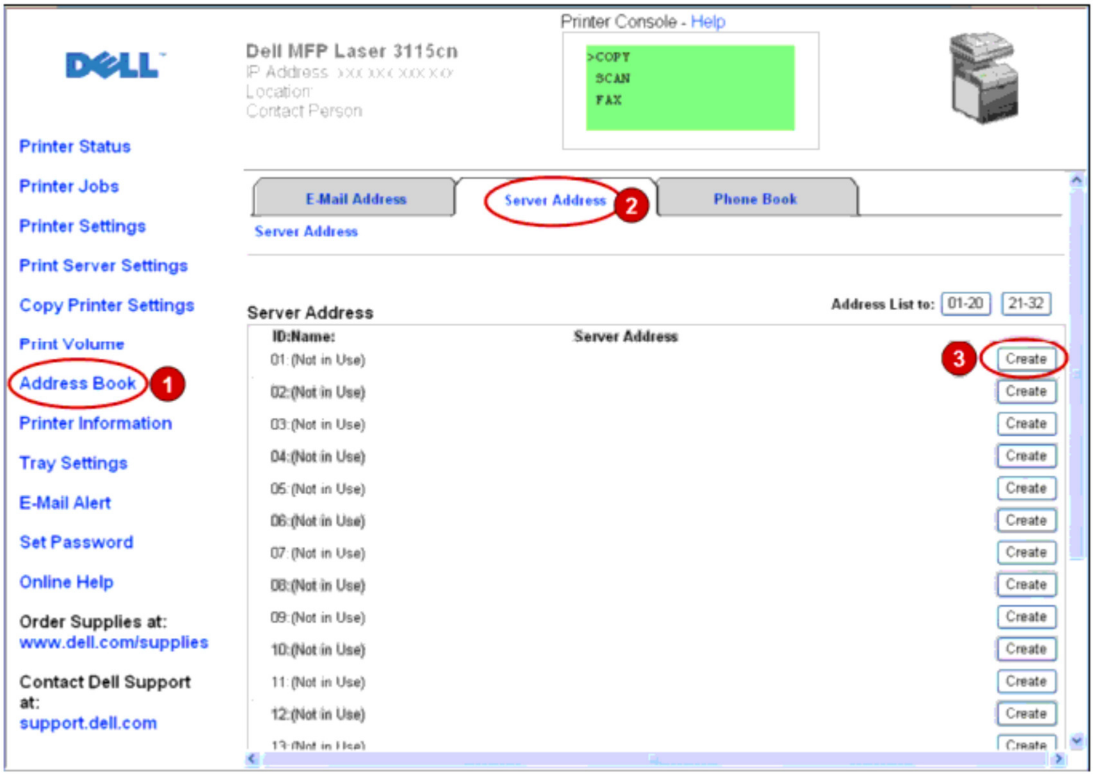
1. When the printer is Ready (Copy, Scan, Fax appears in the LCD), press ▼ until `SETUP` is indicated, then press ✔ .
2. Press ▼ until `Reports` appears, then press ✔ .
3. When `System Settings` is indicated, then press ✔ and a System Settings report will be printed.

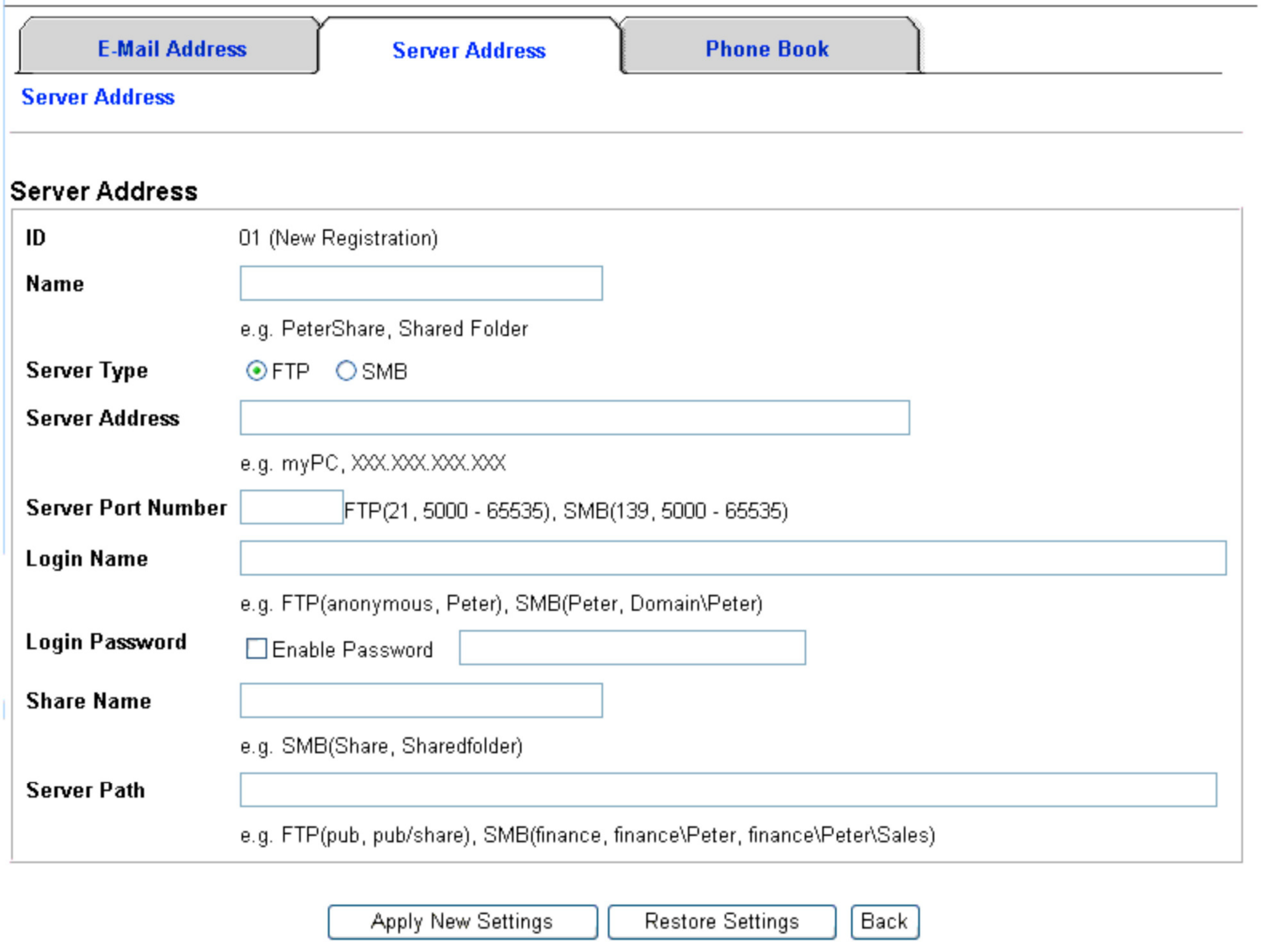
Once you have obtained the IP address of the Dell MFP Laser 3115cn, you can setup the Address book by performing the following steps from a web browser.

1. Open a web browser.
2. Type in the IP address of the printer and click **Go**. The printer's web page appears.
3. Click **Address Book**, then click the **Server Address** tab, then click the **Create** button. If a **security login** dialog box appears, type in the correct User name and Password. If you access the Address Book first time, enter the following defaults value:

   User name: Enter "admin".

   Password: Leave blank.


DELL
Dell MFP Laser 3115cn
IP Address xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
Location
Contact Person
Printer Console - Help
>COPY
SCAN
FAX
Printer Status
Printer Jobs
Printer Settings
Print Server Settings
Copy Printer Settings
Print Volume
Address Book
1
Printer Information
Tray Settings
E-Mail Alert
Set Password
Online Help
Order Supplies at:
www.dell.com/supplies
Contact Dell Support at:
support.dell.com
E-Mail Address
Server Address
2
Phone Book
Server Address
Server Address
Address List to: 01-20 21-32
ID:Name:
Server Address
3
01:(Not in Use) Create
02:(Not in Use) Create
03:(Not in Use) Create
04:(Not in Use) Create
05:(Not in Use) Create
06:(Not in Use) Create
07:(Not in Use) Create
08:(Not in Use) Create
09:(Not in Use) Create
10:(Not in Use) Create
11:(Not in Use) Create
12:(Not in Use) Create
13:(Not in Use) Create



Server Address

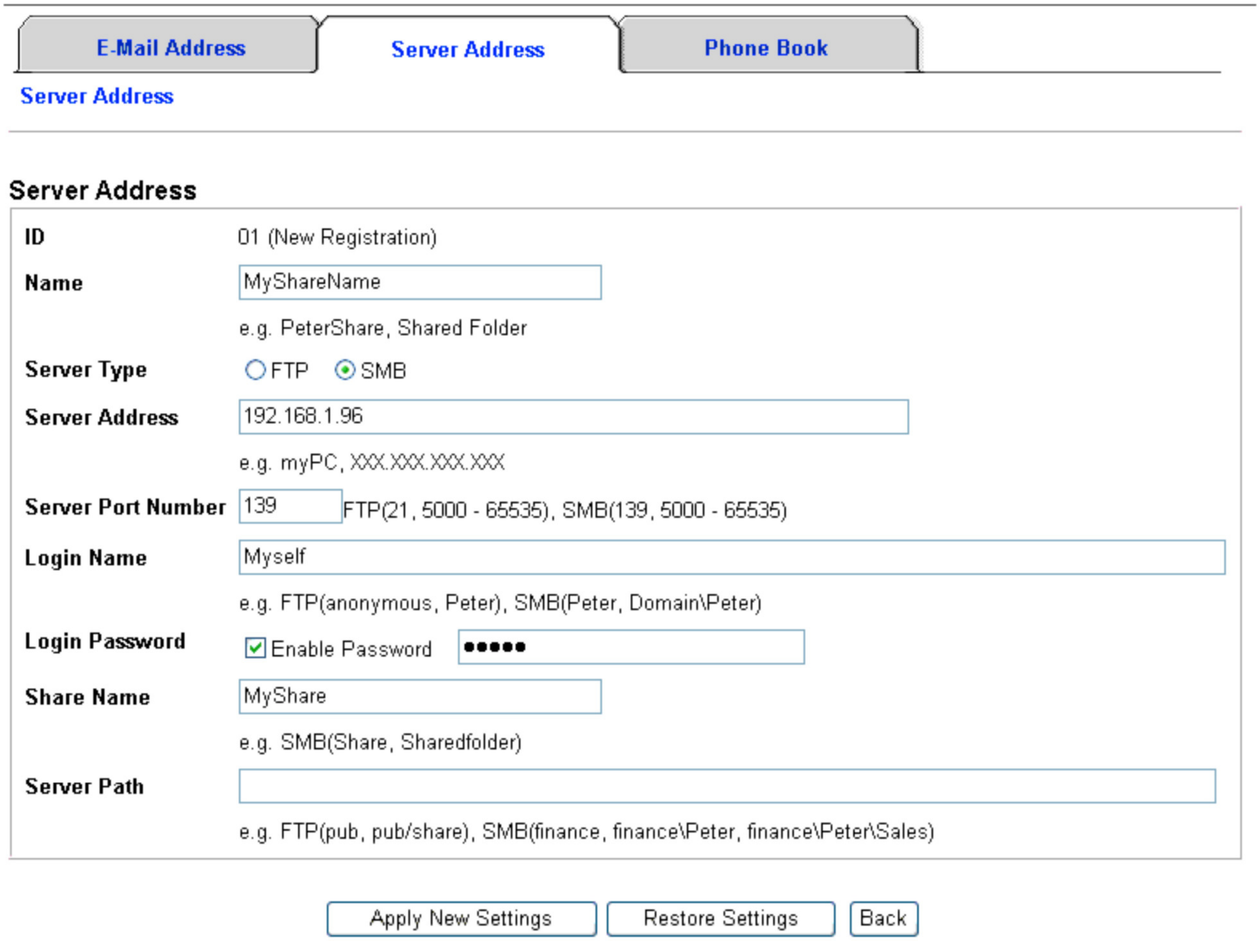
ID	01 (New Registration)
Name	e.g. PeterShare, Shared Folder
Server Type	● FTP ○ SMB
Server Address	e.g. myPC, XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Server Port Number	FTP(21, 5000 - 65535), SMB(139, 5000 - 65535)
Login Name	e.g. FTP(anonymous, Peter), SMB(Peter, Domain\Peter)
Login Password	☐ Enable Password
Share Name	e.g. SMB(Share, Sharedfolder)
Server Path	e.g. FTP(pub, pub/share), SMB(finance, finance\Peter, finance\Peter\Sales)

To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

Name:	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the address book.
Server Type:	Select SMB if you storing the document in a shared folder from your Microsoft Windows operating system. Select FTP if you have a FTP server. NOTE: FTP Server depends on Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) and may not be installed on your computer. Please refer to Microsoft document for detailed instructions on how to setup FTP server.
Server Address:	Enter the IP address of the computer or the FTP server that you have shared out. (Refer to "Locate the IP Address of Your Computer" for more information)
Server Port Number:	Enter the Server Port Number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for SMB and 21 for FTP.
Login Name:	Enter the user account name that has access to the shared folder on your computer or FTP server.
Login Password:	Check on **Enable Password** and enter the password corresponding to the above login name. NOTE: Empty password is not valid in the Scan to Computer feature. Please ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (Refer to "Create a Password for Your User Login Account" for details on how to add a password in your user login account).
Share Name:	Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer. For SMB only.
Server Path:	Enter the path where you want the scanned document to be stored. Ensure that the path is already created in the shared folder or FTP server.

4. Click the **Apply New Settings** button.

Example of an entry for Scan to Computer, SMB.

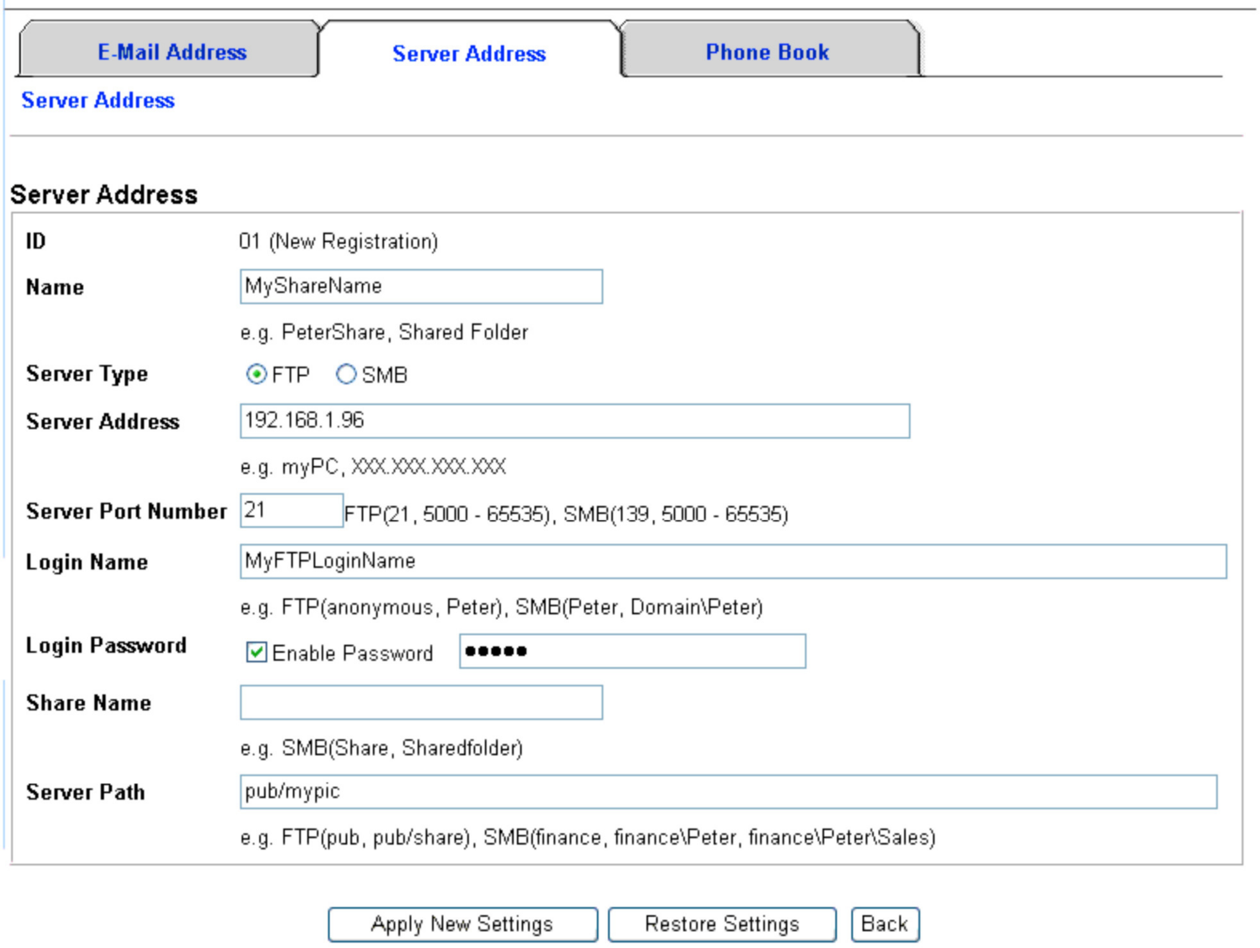

E-Mail Address
Server Address
Phone Book
Server Address

Server Address

ID	01 (New Registration)
Name	MyShareName e.g. PeterShare, Shared Folder
Server Type	○ FTP ● SMB
Server Address	192.168.1.96 e.g. myPC, XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Server Port Number	139 FTP(21, 5000 - 65535), SMB(139, 5000 - 65535)
Login Name	Myself e.g. FTP(anonymous, Peter), SMB(Peter, Domain\Peter)
Login Password	☑ Enable Password ●●●●●
Share Name	MyShare e.g. SMB(Share, Sharedfolder)
Server Path	 e.g. FTP(pub, pub/share), SMB(finance, finance\Peter, finance\Peter\Sales)

Apply New Settings
Restore Settings
Back

Example of an entry for Scan to Server, FTP.



Server Address

ID	01 (New Registration)
Name	MyShareName e.g. PeterShare, Shared Folder
Server Type	● FTP ○ SMB
Server Address	192.168.1.96 e.g. myPC, XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Server Port Number	21 FTP(21, 5000 - 65535), SMB(139, 5000 - 65535)
Login Name	MyFTPLoginName e.g. FTP(anonymous, Peter), SMB(Peter, Domain\Peter)
Login Password	☑ Enable Password ●●●●●
Share Name	 e.g. SMB(Share, Sharedfolder)
Server Path	pub/mypic e.g. FTP(pub, pub/share), SMB(finance, finance\Peter, finance\Peter\Sales)

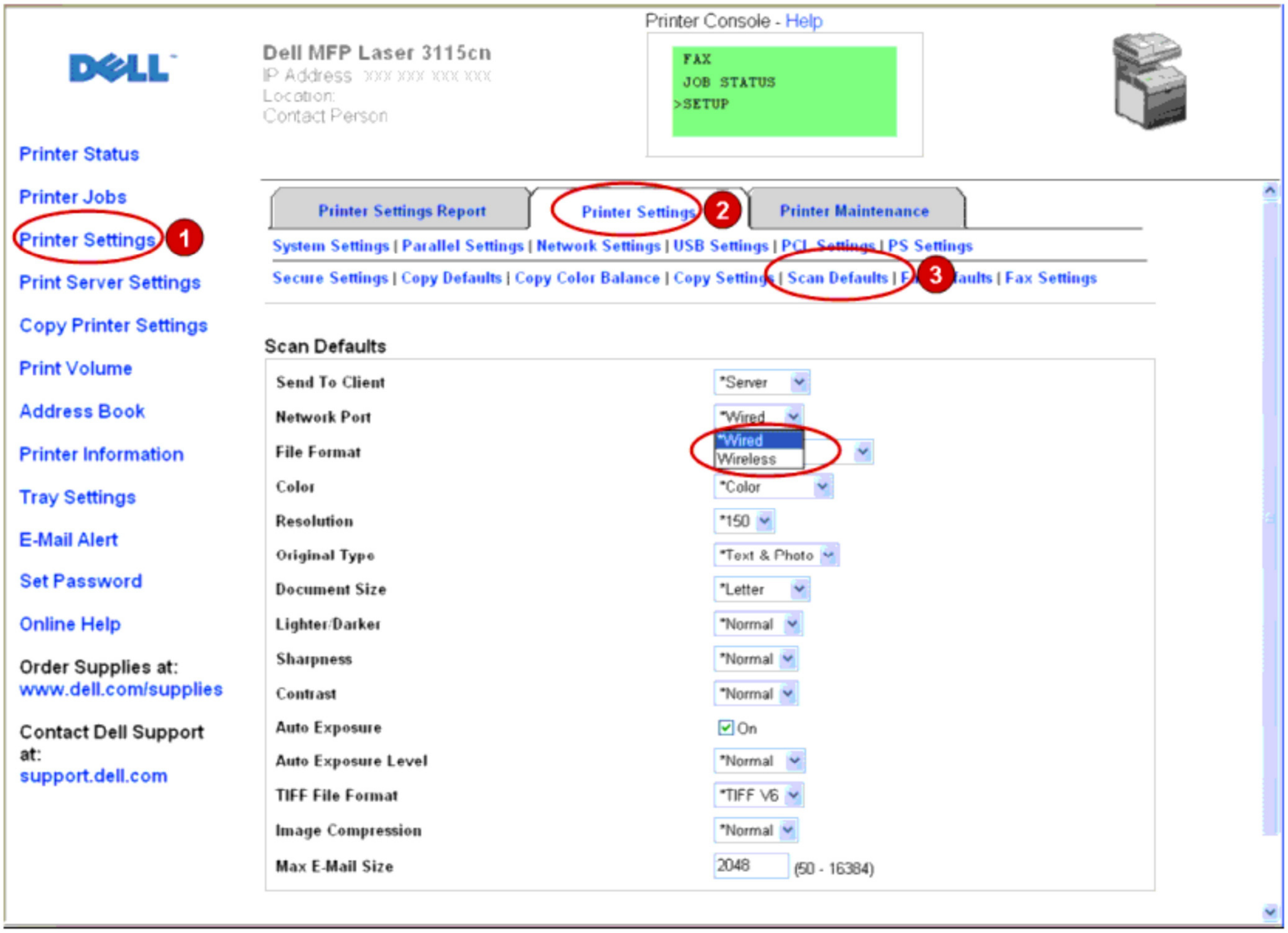
NOTE: Ensure that you enter an IP address in the **Server Address** box correctly.

Scan to Computer/Server Through Wireless Setup

NOTE: This step can be performed only if you have the Wireless Network Card (Sold separately).

If you are intending to perform Scan to Computer/Server through your wireless network connection, you will need to configure the scan network path as follows:

1. Open a web browser.
2. Type in the IP address of the printer and click **Go**. The printer's web page appears.
3. Click **Printer Settings**, then click the **Printer Settings** tab, then click the **Scan Defaults** button. If a security login dialog box appears, type in the correct User name and Password.
4. Change from **Wired** to **Wireless** in the **Network Port** entry.


DELL
Dell MFP Laser 3115cn
IP Address xxx xxx xxx xxx
Location:
Contact Person
Printer Console - Help
FAX
JOB STATUS
>SETUP
Printer Status
Printer Jobs
Printer Settings
1
Print Server Settings
Copy Printer Settings
Print Volume
Address Book
Printer Information
Tray Settings
E-Mail Alert
Set Password
Online Help
Order Supplies at:
www.dell.com/supplies
Contact Dell Support at:
support.dell.com
Printer Settings Report
Printer Settings
2
Printer Maintenance
System Settings | Parallel Settings | Network Settings | USB Settings | PCL Settings | PS Settings
Secure Settings | Copy Defaults | Copy Color Balance | Copy Settings | Scan Defaults | Fax Defaults | Fax Settings
3
Wired
Wireless

Scan Defaults

Send To Client	*Server
Network Port	*Wired
File Format	
Color	*Color
Resolution	*150
Original Type	*Text & Photo
Document Size	*Letter
Lighter/Darker	*Normal
Sharpness	*Normal
Contrast	*Normal
Auto Exposure	☑ On
Auto Exposure Level	*Normal
TIFF File Format	*TIFF V6
Image Compression	*Normal
Max E-Mail Size	2048 (50 - 16384)

Sharing a Folder With Sub-folder From Your Computer

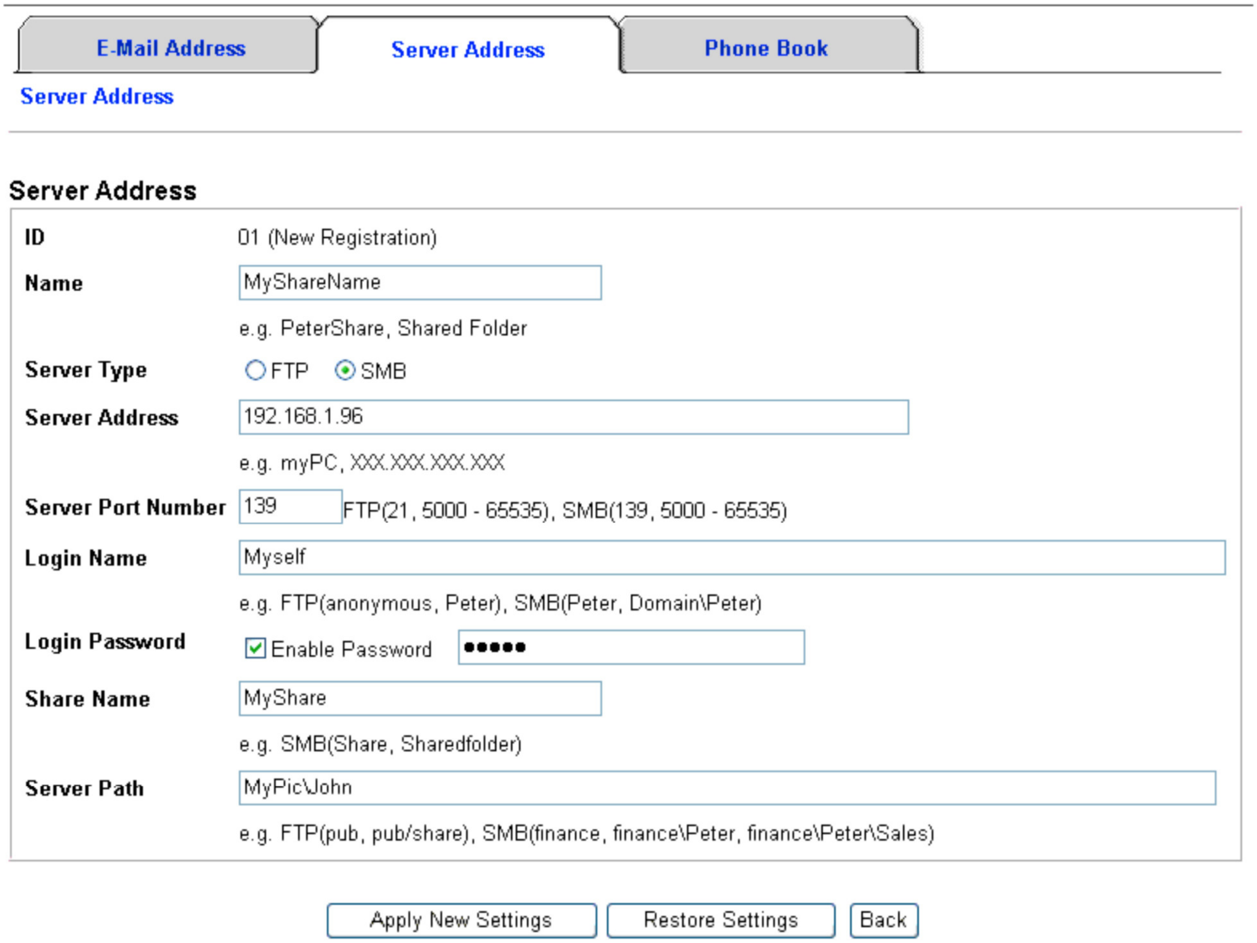
To create and share a folder, follow the steps found in "Sharing a Folder From Your Computer". To add sub-folder, you will need to create a sub-folder from your share folder.

1. Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, `MyShare`).
2. From the folder, create your desired sub-folder. (Example of sub-folder name, `MyPic\John`. You should now see `MyShare\MyPic\John` in your directory)

After you have created a folder and sub-folder, you will now need to setup the Address

Book. See "Setting Up the Address Book" for the details.

Example of an entry for Scan to Computer with sub-folder, SMB.



Server Address

ID 01 (New Registration)

Name MyShareName

e.g. PeterShare, Shared Folder

Server Type ○ FTP ● SMB

Server Address 192.168.1.96

e.g. myPC, XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX

Server Port Number 139 FTP(21, 5000 - 65535), SMB(139, 5000 - 65535)

Login Name Myself

e.g. FTP(anonymous, Peter), SMB(Peter, Domain\Peter)

Login Password ☑ Enable Password ●●●●●

Share Name MyShare

e.g. SMB(Share, Sharedfolder)

Server Path MyPic\John

e.g. FTP(pub, pub/share), SMB(finance, finance\Peter, finance\Peter\Sales)

NOTE: Ensure that you enter an IP address in the **Server Address** box correctly.

Start to send the scanned file on the Network

1. From the operator panel, press ▼ until `>SCAN` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `Scan to Network` appears.
3. Press ◀ or ▶ to select the option you selected in "Setting Up the Address Book", and then press ✓ .

   Server: Stores the scanned image on the server by using the FTP protocol.

   Computer: Stores the scanned image on the computer by using the SMB protocol.

   Search Address: Select the server address registered in Address Book.

NOTE: Users need to be registered before you can select Server/Computer on the operator panel.

4. Press **Start** to send the scanned files.

Setting Problems

`SMB/FTP Error 016-781 Scan Press` ✓	· Ensure the server address is correct. · If the server address is correct, then change the settings for the firewall.

`Login Error`
`016-782 Scan`
`Press` ✓
	· Ensure the shared name or password is correct.

`SMB/FTP Error`
`016-783 Scan`
`Press` ✓
	· Ensure the specified server path name and access right to the folder are correct.
	· Ensure the server path is set correctly.

`SMB/FTP Error`
`016-784 Scan`
`Press` ✓
	· Change the access rights for the shared folder.

Create a Password for Your User Login Account

The Scan to Computer/Server feature requires a user login account with a valid and non-empty password for authentication. If you do not use a password for your user login, you can create a password on your User Login Account with the following instructions.

For Microsoft Windows XP and Windows 2000:

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **User Accounts**.
2. Click **Change an account**.
3. Click **Create a password** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Vista:

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**.
2. Click **User Accounts and Family Safety**.
3. Click **User Accounts**.
4. Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Server 2008:

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**.
2. Double-click **User Accounts**.
3. Click **Create a password** for your account and add in a password for your user login account.

Locate the IP Address of Your Computer

You can locate the IP address of your computer with the following instructions.

1. For Windows 2000/Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2008: Click **Start**→ **Run**.
   For Windows Vista: Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Accessories**→ **Run**.
2. Type `cmd` in the text field and click **OK**. A command prompt window will open.
3. Type `ipconfig` and press **Enter**.
4. Locate IP Address and note down the IP Address XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX

Sending an E-Mail with the Scanned Image

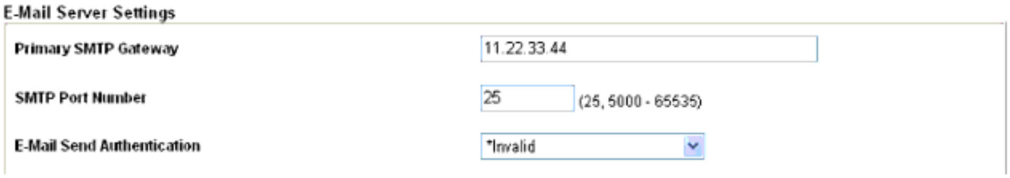
To send an e-mail attached with the scanned image from your multifunction printer, follow the steps below:

- Set E-Mail Alert
- Register a user
- Start to send e-mail with the scanned file

Setting E-Mail Alert

1. Form the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, click **E-Mail Alert**.

   The E-mail Server Alert Settings page appears.



E-Mail Server Settings

Primary SMTP Gateway: 11.22.33.44

SMTP Port Number: 25 (25, 5000 - 65535)

E-Mail Send Authentication: *Invalid

2. Specify the settings for E-Mail Alert as follows:

   Primary SMTP gateway: Enter the IP address of the e-mail server.

   E-Mail Send Authentication: Specify Invalid to enable the e-mail server.

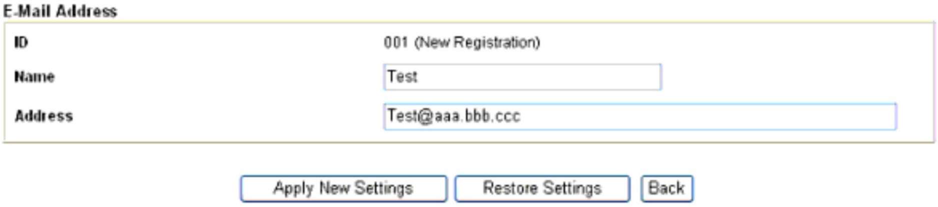
NOTE: If the error message including `016-506` or `016-764` is displayed, contact your server administrator for the settings for E-Mail Send Authentication.

3. Click the **Apply New Settings** button.

Registering a New User

1. Form the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, click **Address Book**, and then click the **E-Mail Address** tab.
2. Click the **Create** button.

   The E-mail Server Settings page for registering a new user appears.



E-Mail Address

ID: 001 (New Registration)

Name: Test

Address: Test@aaa.bbb.ccc

3. Enter the following:
   - Name
   - Address
4. Click the **Apply New Settings** button.

Start to send e-mail with the scanned file

1. From the operator panel, press ▼ until `>SCAN` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `Scan to E-Mail` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the setting listed below, and then press ✓ .

   Enter E-Mail: Type the e-mail address directly.

Address Book: Select the e-mail address registered in the **Address Book**.

NOTE: Users need to be registered before you can select Address Book on the operator panel.

4. Press ▶ to select `<TO>` or `<BCC>`.
5. Press **Start** to send e-mail.

Setting Problems

`Mail Size Limits`
`016-985 Scan`
`Press` ✓
	· Change the file format and resolution.

`SMTP Error`
`016-764 Scan`
`Press` ✓
	· Ensure the SMTP server address is correct.

`Address Error`
`016-767 Scan`
`Press` ✓
	· Ensure the e-mail address is correct.

Faxing

- FAX Languages Setting Procedure
- Setting the Machine ID
- Using the Number Keypad to Enter Characters
- Setting the Time and Date
- Changing the Clock Mode
- Setting Sounds
- Sending a Delayed Fax
- Specifying the Fax Settings
- Sending a Fax
- Sending a Fax from the driver (Direct Fax)
- Receiving a Fax
- Color Fax
- Automatic Dialing
- Other Ways to Fax

FAX Languages Setting Procedure

1. Using **Fax Initial Setup** in **Windows Installer** is recommended. Please follow to the procedure of the display.
2. When you are not using Windows OS, set directly from the operator panel. Please follow to the procedure bellow.
    a. Press ▼ until `>Country` appears from `Fax Settings`, and then press ✓ .
    b. Select the country you use. (Factory default value: `United States`)

Initialization is required after you set the country. When the restart verification of system is displayed, please select `YES`. After restart, the printer returns to the main screen.

    c. Press ▼ until `>Clock Settings` appears from `System Settings`, and then press ✓ .
    d. Specify the date using the number keypad.
    e. Specify the time using the number keypad.
    f. Specify the `TimeZone` using ▶ or ◀ . (Factory default value: -5:00)

NOTE: In case of either one, when you configure the languages setting, the information, which is registered to the device, is initialized.

Setting the Machine ID

In most countries, you are required by law to indicate your fax number on any fax you send. The Machine ID, containing your telephone number and name or company name, will be printed at the top of each page sent from your multifunction printer.

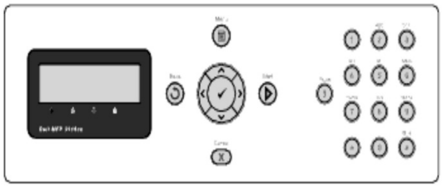
1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Fax Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>G3ID` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Enter your fax number using the number keypad.

NOTE: If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press ◀ to delete the last digit.

6. Press ✓ when the number on the display is correct.
7. Press ▼ until `>Send Header Name` appears, and then press ✓ .
8. Enter your name or company name using the number keypad.
   You can enter alphanumeric characters using the number keypad, including special symbols by pressing the 0 button.
   For details on how to use the number keypad to enter alphanumeric characters, see "Using the Number Keypad to Enter Characters".
9. Press ✓ when the name on the display is correct.
10. Press **Cancel** to return to the standby mode.

Using the Number Keypad to Enter Characters

As you perform various tasks, you may need to enter names and numbers. For example, when you set up your multifunction printer, you enter your name or your company's name and telephone number. When you store speed dial or group dial numbers, you may also need to enter the corresponding names.



- When prompted to enter a letter, press the appropriate button until the correct letter appears on the display.
  For example, to enter the letter O, press 6.
- Each time you press 6, the display shows a different letter, M, N, O and finally 6.
- To enter additional letters, repeat the first step.
- Press ✓ when you are finished.

Keypad Letters and Numbers

Key	Assigned numbers, letters or characters
1	@ : . / 1
2	a b c A B C 2
3	d e f D E F 3
4	g h I G H I 4
5	j k l J K L 5
6	m n o M N O 6
7	p q r s P Q R S 7
8	t u v T U V 8 t
9	w x y z W X Y Z 9 w
0	0
*	- _ ~
#	@ . \ _ ! " # $ % & ' ~ ^ | ` ; : ? (space) + - * / = ( ) [ ] { } < >

Changing Numbers or Names

If you make a mistake while entering a number or name, press ◀ to delete the last digit or character. Then enter the correct number or character.

Inserting a Pause

For some telephone systems, it is necessary to dial an access code and listen for a second dial tone. A pause must be entered in order for the access code to function. For example, enter the access code 9 and then press **Pause** before entering the telephone number. "-" appears on the display to indicate when a pause is entered.

Setting the Time and Date

NOTE: It may be necessary to reset the correct time and date if loss of power to the multifunction printer occurs.

To set the time and date:

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>System Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Clock Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Press ▼ until `>Set Date` appears, and then press ✓ .
6. Enter the correct date using the number keypad.

NOTE: If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press ◀ to reenter the digit.

7. Press ✓ when the date on the display is correct.
8. Press ▼ until `>Set Time` appears, and then press ✓ .
9. Enter the correct time using the number keypad.
10. Press ✓ when the time on the display is correct.
11. Press **Cancel** to return to the standby mode.

NOTE: The multifunction printer beeps and does not allow you to proceed to the next step if a wrong number is entered.

Changing the Clock Mode

You can set the current time using either the 12-hour or the 24-hour format.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>System Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Clock Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Press ▼ until `>Time Format` appears, and then press ✓ .
6. Press ▶ until the desired format appears, and then press ✓ .
7. Press **Cancel** to return to the standby mode.

Setting Sounds

Speaker, Ringer, Key Sounds and Alarm Sounds

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>System Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Alert Tone` appears, and then press ✓ .

5. Press ▼ until the desired tone appears, and then press ✓ .
6. Press ▶ until the desired volume appears, and then press ✓ .
   The multifunction printer works normally even if the ringer is turned off.
7. Press **Cancel** to return to the standby mode.

Speaker Volume

NOTE: You can turn on/off the speaker only when the telephone line is connected.

1. Press ▼ until `>FAX` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>OnHook` appears.
3. Press ▶ to select `On`, and then press ✓ .
4. Press **Cancel** to return to the standby mode.

Sending a Delayed Fax

The Delayed Start mode can be used to save scanned documents for transmission at a specified time in order to take advantage of lower long distance rates.

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
   OR
   Place a single document face down on the document feeder glass.
   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document".
2. Press ▼ until `>FAX` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs (see "Adjusting the Document Resolution").
   If you need to change the contrast, see "Lighter/Darker".
4. Press ▼ until `>Delayed Start` appears.
5. Press ▶ to select `On`, and then press ✓ .
6. Enter the start time using the number keypad.
7. Enter the number of the remote machine using the number keypad, and then press ✓ .
   To enter the number, you can use speed dial or group dial numbers. For details, see "Automatic Dialing".
   Press Start to scan data.

Once Delayed Start mode is activated, your multifunction printer stores all of the documents to be faxed into its memory and sends them at the programmed time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.

Specifying the Fax Settings

Changing the Fax Settings Options

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Fax Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until the desired menu item appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Use ▶ to find the status or use the number keypad to enter the value for the option you have selected.
6. Press ✓ to save the selection.
7. Press **Back** to return to the previous screen.
8. If necessary, repeat steps 4 through 7.
9. To return to the standby mode, press **Cancel**.

Available Fax Settings Options

You can use the following settings options for configuring the fax system:

Option	Description
Interval Timer	You can specify the interval time (3-255 minutes) of the resend attempts.
Number of Redial	You can specify the number of redial attempts, 0-9. If you enter 0, the multifunction printer will not redial.
Int. of Redial	Your multifunction printer can automatically redial a remote fax machine if it was busy. Intervals from 1-15 minutes can be entered.
Ans Select	You can select the default fax receiving mode. · TEL Mode (manual receive mode): Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code, or by setting `OnHook` to `On` (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine) and then pressing **Start**. · FAX Mode (automatic receive mode) · TEL/FAX Mode: When the multifunction printer receive an incoming a fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in Auto Ans. TEL/FAX, and then the multifunction printer automatically receive a fax. If incoming data is not a fax, the multifunction printer beeps from the internal speaker. · Ans/FAX Mode: The multifunction printer can share one telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the multifunction printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication in your country is serial, this mode is not available. · DRPD Mode: Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Auto Answer Fax	The multifunction printer answers an incoming call and automatically goes into the receive mode. The number of rings before the multifunction printer answers can be set in the Auto Answer Fax option. If the user memory is full, the multifunction printer is changed to the Tel mode.
Auto Ans. TEL/FAX	The multifunction printer can share one telephone line with an external telephone. In this mode, the multifunction printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication in your country is serial, this mode is not available.
Auto Ans. Ans/FAX	The multifunction printer can share one telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the multifunction printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication in your country is serial, this mode is not available.
Line Monitor	You can specify the volume of the internal speaker.
Ring Tone Volume	You can specify the volume for the incoming faxes.
Line Type	You can select the default line type. · PSTN · PBX
Dialing Type	You can select the dialing type. · PB · DP (10PPS) · DP (20PPS)
DM Prevention	Using the DM Prevention feature, the system only accepts faxes from the remote stations registered in the speed dial. This feature is useful for blocking any unwanted faxes. Select `Off` to turn the feature off. Anybody can send you a fax. Select `On` to turn the feature on.
Remote Receive	You can receive a fax by pressing the remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.
Remote Rcv Tone	You can specify the tone when Remote Receive is set to `On`.
Duplex Print	You can use duplex printing when you receive a fax. This option is available only when the optional duplexer is installed on your multifunction printer.
Send Header	Prints the sender record at the head of the fax. Select `Off` to turn this feature off. Select `On` to turn this feature on.
Send Header Name	Specifies the sender name in the sender report.
G3ID	Contains your telephone number, which is printed at the top of each page sent from your multifunction printer. This feature is available when you set Send Header to `On`.
Local Name	Contains your name or company name, which is printed on the report sheet.

DRPD Pattern	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Forward Settings	You can set your multifunction printer to forward incoming faxes to another fax number during a specified time period. When a fax arrives at your multifunction printer, it is stored in the memory. Then, the multifunction printer dials the fax number that you have specified and sends the fax. Select `Trans. at Error` to forward the incoming faxes when an error occurs. Select `Trans. Always` to always forward the incoming faxes. Select `Not Trans.` not to forward incoming faxes. You can set the fax number to which faxes are forwarded. Then, you can enter the start time and/or the end time. The Print Local Copy option allows you to set the multifunction printer to print the fax, if fax forwarding is completed with no error.
Fwd. Settings Num	You can set the number of the multifunction printer to always forward all of the incoming faxes to the specified destination.
Fwd. Set Print	Prints all of the ongoing faxes when you can set the multifunction printer to always forward the faxes to the specified destination.
Prefix Dial	You can select whether or not to add the prefix number when you send a fax.
Prefix Dial Num	You can set a prefix dial number up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the PABX exchange.
Discard Size	When receiving a document as long as or longer than the paper installed in your multifunction printer, you can set the multifunction printer to discard any excess at the bottom of the page. If the received page is outside the margin you set, it will print on two sheets of paper at the actual size. When the document is within the margin and the Auto Reduction feature is turned on, the multifunction printer reduces the document to fit it onto the appropriate sized paper and discard does not occur. If the Auto Reduction feature is turned off or fails, the data within the margin will be discarded.
Color Fax	Set whether the multifunction printer sends and receives color faxes.
Extel Hook Thresh	You can set the threshold value for the OnHook mode.
Country	You can select the country where the multifunction printer is used.
Fwd. Error Print	Prints the document failed to transfer when Forward Set Print is set to `Off`.

NOTE: Prefix Dial only supports the environment where you send a fax to send a fax to the external line number. To use Prefix Dial, you must do the following from the operator panel.

1. Use ▼ and ▶ to select `SETUP→Admin Menu→Fax Settings→Line Type`. Select `PBX`, and then press ✓ .
2. Use ▼ and ▶ to select `SETUP→Admin Menu→Fax Settings→Prefix Dial`. Select `On`, and then press ✓ .
3. Use ▼ and ▶ to select `SETUP→Admin Menu→Fax Settings→Prefix Dial Num`. Enter a maximum of five-digit prefix number from 0-9, *, and #.

Advanced Fax Settings

NOTE: The advanced fax settings are only meant for advanced users. Incorrect settings on the Dell 3115cn may damage the device.

If you are experiencing fax send or receive errors, there is an advanced fax settings menu which you can access and change the settings accordingly.

To enter the Diagnostic Menu (Customer Mode), follow the instructions.

1. Turn off the Dell MFP Laser 3115cn.
2. Disconnect all network, phone line, USB and Parallel cables from the device.
3. Turn on the Dell MFP Laser 3115cn while holding down the ▼ and ▲ button. The **Customer Mode** menu appears.
4. After all the advanced fax settings have been made, you will need to turn off and on the Dell MFP Laser 3115cn for the new settings to be effective.

Error Correction Mode (ECM)

Some of the legacy fax devices do not support the Error Correction Mode. You may experience fax send or receive errors due to this feature. You can disable the ECM with the following instructions.

1. When the printer is in **Customer Mode**, select **Fax/Scanner Diag** and press ✓ button.
2. Press the ▼ button until **Parameter** appears, then press the ✓ button.
3. Press the ▼ button until **FAX Parameter** appears, then press the ✓ button.

4. Press the ▼ button until **Capability ECM** appears, then press the ✓ button.
5. Press the ▼ button until **Disable** appears, then press the ✓ button to disable ECM.

Modem Speed

Some of the legacy fax devices do not support the V.34 modem speed of 33,600 bits per second (bps). You may experience fax send or receive errors due to the higher modem speed. You can disable the V.34 with the following instructions.

1. When the printer is in **Customer Mode**, select **Fax/Scanner Diag** and press ✓ button.
2. Press the ▼ button until **Parameter** appears, then press the ✓ button.
3. Press the ▼ button until **FAX Parameter** appears, then press the ✓ button.
4. Press the ▼ button until **Capability V34** appears, then press the ✓ button.
5. Press the ▼ button until **Disable** appears, then press the ✓ button to disable V.34.

You can also reduce the modem speed if you continue to experience fax communication problem.

- 14,400bps (V.17)
- 9,600bps (V.29) or
- 4,800bps (V.27ter).

You can change the modem transmission speed with the following instructions.

1. When the printer is in **Customer Mode**, select **Fax/Scanner Diag** and press ✓ button.
2. Press the ▼ button until **Parameter** appears, then press the ✓ button.
3. Press the ▼ button until **FAX Parameter** appears, then press the ✓ button.
4. Press the ▼ button until **G3M TX Modem Speed** appears, then press the ✓ button.
5. Press the ▼ button until **V17** appears, then press ✓ button to enable V.17 (14,400bps), select **V29** to enable V.29 (9,600bps), or select **V27ter** to enable V.27ter (4,800bps).

You can change the modem receive speed with the following instructions.

1. When the printer is in **Customer Mode**, select **Fax/Scanner Diag** and press ✓ button.
2. Press the ▼ button until **Parameter** appears, then press the ✓ button.
3. Press the ▼ button until **FAX Parameter** appears, then press the ✓ button.
4. Press the ▼ button until **G3M RX Modem Speed** appears, then press the ✓ button.
5. Press the ▼ button until **V27ter+V29+V33+V17** appears, then press the ✓ button to enable V.17 (14,400bps), select **V27ter+V29** to enable V.29 (9,600bps), or select **V27ter** to enable V.27ter (4,800bps).

Fax Data Encoding Method

Some of the legacy fax devices do not support the JBIG data encoding method. You may experience fax send or receive errors due to this data encoding method. You can disable the JBIG and select the MH, MR or MMR encoding with the following instructions.

You can change the modem transmission encoding with the following instructions.

1. When the printer is in **Customer Mode**, select **Fax/Scanner Diag** and press ✓ button.
2. Press the ▼ button until **Parameter** appears, then press the ✓ button.
3. Press the ▼ button until **FAX Parameter** appears, then press the ✓ button.
4. Press the ▼ button until **G3M TX Coding** appears, then press the ✓ button.
5. Press the ▼ button until **MMR** appears, then press the ✓ button to enable MMR encoding, select **MR** to enable MR encoding, or select **MH** to enable MH encoding.

You can change the modem receive encoding with the following instructions.

1. When the printer is in **Customer Mode**, select **Fax/Scanner Diag** and press ✓ button.

2. Press the ▼ button until **Parameter** appears, then press the ✓ button.
3. Press the ▼ button until **FAX Parameter** appears, then press the ✓ button.
4. Press the ▼ button until **G3M RX Coding** appears, then press the ✓ button.
5. Press the ▼ button until **MMR** appears, then press the ✓ button to enable MMR encoding, select **MR** to enable MR encoding, or select **MH** to enable MH encoding.

Sending a Fax

You can fax data from you multifunction printer. Also you can directly fax data transferred from the computer running Windows.

Loading an Original Document

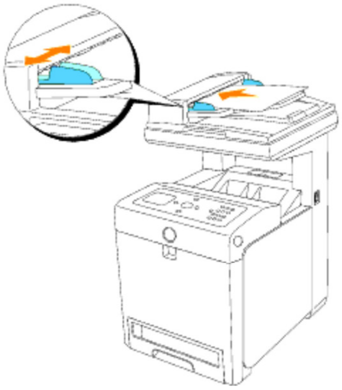
You can use the ADF or the document feeder glass to load an original document for faxing. Using the ADF, you can load up to 50 sheets of 75 g/m2 (20 lb) paper at a time. Using the document feeder glass, you can load one sheet at a time.

NOTE: Ensure that no document is in the ADF. If any document is detected in the ADF, it has priority over the document on the document feeder glass.

NOTE: To get the best scan quality, especially for gray scale images, use the document feeder glass instead of the ADF.

To fax a document using the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF):

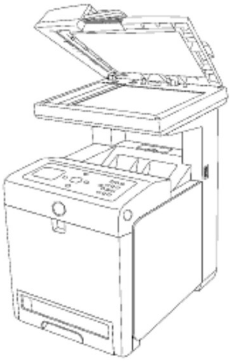
1. Place the document(s) face up on the ADF with the top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.



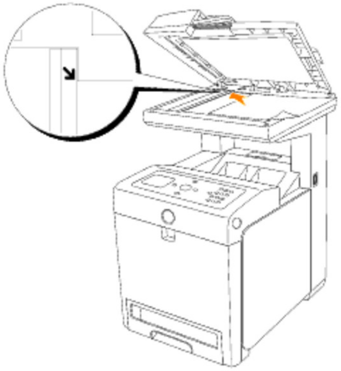
2. Adjust the document resolution, referring to "Adjusting the Document Resolution".

To fax a document from the document feeder glass:

1. Open the document cover.



2. Place the document face down on the document feeder glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the glass.



3. Adjust the document resolution, referring to "Adjusting the Document Resolution".
4. Close the document cover.

NOTE: If you are faxing a page from a book or magazine, lift the cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start faxing with the cover open.

Adjusting the Document Resolution

Use the Document Resolution setting to improve the output quality of the original or if scanning photographic materials.

1. Press ▼ until `>FAX` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Resolution` appears.
3. Press ▶ to select the desired setting, and then press ✓ .

Standard	Uses for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Uses for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Uses for documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote printer also supports the Super Fine resolution. See the note below.

NOTE: Faxes scanned in the Super Fine resolution transmits at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

Original Type

The Original Type setting is used to improve the image quality by selecting the document type for the current fax job.

To select the image quality:

1. Load the document to be faxed on the document feeder glass, and close the cover.
2. Press ▼ until `>FAX` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Original Type` appears.
4. Press ▶ to select the desired setting, and then press ✓ .

Text&Photo	Uses for documents with both text and photo/gray tones.
Photo	Uses for documents with photo or gray tones.
Text*	Uses for documents with text.

5. Press **Start** to begin faxing.

Lighter/Darker

Adjust the contrast to make the fax lighter or darker than the original.

To adjust the contrast:

1. Load the document to be faxed on the document feeder glass, and close the cover.

2. Press ▼ until `>FAX` appears, and then press ✓ .

3. Press ▼ until `>Lighter/Darker` appears.

4. Press ▶ to select the desired setting, and then press ✓ .

Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	
Darker3	
Lighter3	Works well with dark print.
Lighter2	
Lighter1	

5. Press **Start** to begin faxing.

Sending a Fax Automatically

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
   OR
   Place a single document face down on the document feeder glass.
   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document".

2. Press ▼ until `>FAX` appears, and then press ✓ .

3. Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs (see "Adjusting the Document Resolution").
   If you need to change the contrast, see "Lighter/Darker".

4. Press ▼ until `>Phone Book` appears, and then press ✓ .
   You can use speed or group dial numbers. For details, see "Automatic Dialing".

5. Press ▼ until the desired number appears.

6. Press **Start**.
   For the document loaded on the document feeder glass, the display asks if you want to load another page. Press ▶ to select `Yes` or `No`, and then press ✓ .
   After all of the pages are scanned, select No when the display shows "`Another Page?`"

7. The number is dialed and then the multifunction printer begins sending the fax when the remote fax machine is ready.

NOTE: Press **Cancel** to cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.

Sending a Fax Manually

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
   OR
   Place a single document face down on the document feeder glass.
   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document".

2. Press ▼ until `>FAX` appears, and then press ✓ .

3. Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs (see "Adjusting the Document Resolution").
   If you need to change the contrast, see "Lighter/Darker".

4. Press ▼ until `>Phone Number` appears.

5. Enter the remote fax machine's fax number using the number keypad.

6. When you hear a high-pitched fax tones from the remote fax machine:
   - If the document is loaded on the ADF, press Start.
   - If the document is not loaded on the ADF, press ▶ until the desired setting appears, and then press ✓ .

NOTE: Press **Cancel** and ✓ to cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.

Confirming Transmissions

When the last page of your document has been sent successfully, the multifunction printer beeps and returns to the standby mode.

If something goes wrong while sending your fax, an error message appears on the display. For a listing of error messages and their meanings, see "Understanding Multifunction Printer Messages".

If you receive an error message, press **Cancel** to clear the message and try to send the document again.

You can set your multifunction printer to print a confirmation report automatically after each fax transmission. For further details, see "Printing a Report".

Automatic Redialing

If the number you have dialed is busy or there is no answer when you send a fax, the multifunction printer will automatically redial the number every minute based on the number set in the redial settings.

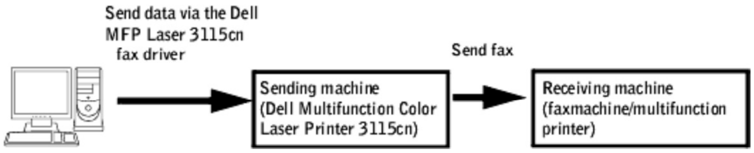
To change the time interval between redials and the number of redial attempts, see "Available Fax Settings Options".

Sending a Fax from the driver (Direct Fax)

You can send a fax directly from your computer by using the driver.

NOTE: Only black and white faxes can be sent using Direct Fax.

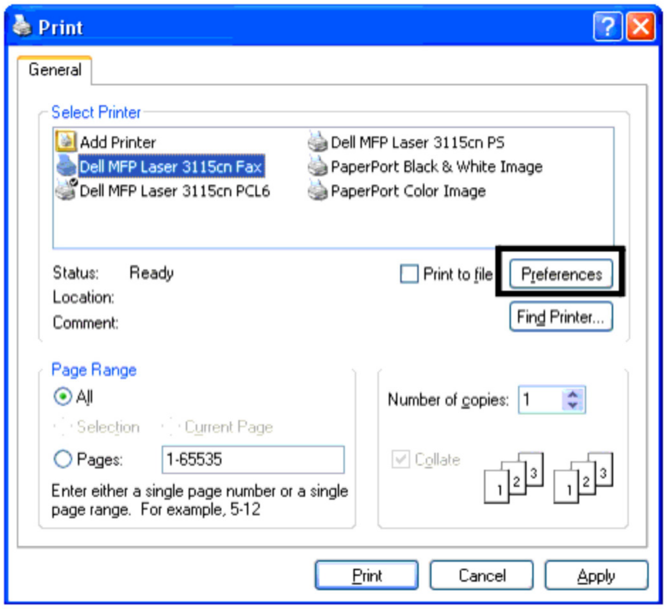
Example


Send data via the Dell MFP Laser 3115cn fax driver
Sending machine (Dell Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn)
Send fax
Receiving machine (faxmachine/multifunction printer)

Procedure

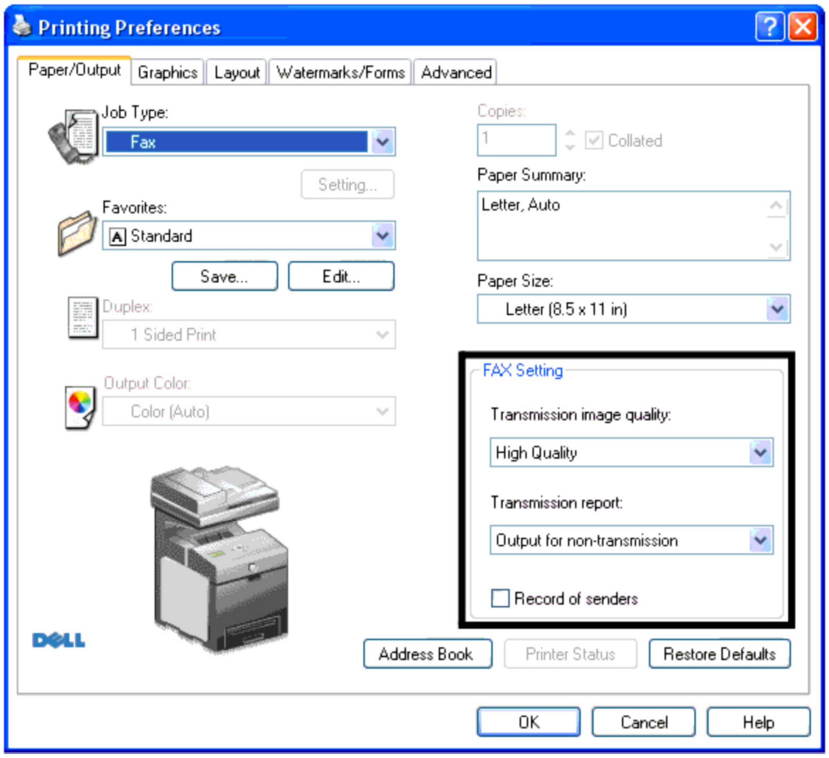
NOTE: The names of the dialog boxes and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the application you are using.

1. Open the file you want to send by fax.
2. Open the print dialog box from the application, and then select **Dell MFP Laser 3115cn Fax**.
3. Click **Preferences**.


Print
General
Select Printer
Add Printer
Dell MFP Laser 3115cn Fax
Dell MFP Laser 3115cn PCL6
Dell MFP Laser 3115cn PS
PaperPort Black & White Image
PaperPort Color Image
Status: Ready
Location:
Comment:
☐ Print to file
Preferences
Find Printer...
Page Range
● All
○ Selection
○ Current Page
○ Pages: 1-65535
Enter either a single page number or a single page range. For example, 5-12
Number of copies: 1
☑ Collate
Print
Cancel
Apply

4. The Printing Preferences dialog box opens. You can use the FAX Settings to set the following settings.

NOTE: The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.


Printing Preferences
Paper/Output
Graphics
Layout
Watermarks/Forms
Advanced
Setting...
Favorites:
Standard
Save...
Edit...
Duplex:
1 Sided Print
Output Color:
Color (Auto)
Copies:
1
Collated
Paper Summary:
Letter, Auto
Paper Size:
Letter (8.5 x 11 in)
FAX Setting
Record of senders
Address Book
Printer Status
Restore Defaults
OK
Cancel
Help

Job Type: Fax

Transmission image quality: High Quality

Transmission report: Output for non-transmission

☐ Record of senders

a. Transmission image quality

Purpose:

To set the output quality.

Values:

Standard	For documents with normal sized characters.
High Quality*	For documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super-high image quality	For documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote printer also supports Super Fine resolution. See the notes below.

NOTE: Faxes printed in the Super-high image quality by Direct Fax driver transmits at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

b. Transmission Report

Purpose:

To specify the communication result for the fax transmission.

Values:

Output regularly	Always prints the report for the fax transmission.
Output for non-transmission*	Prints the report when a communication error is detected.
Do not output	Does not print the report.

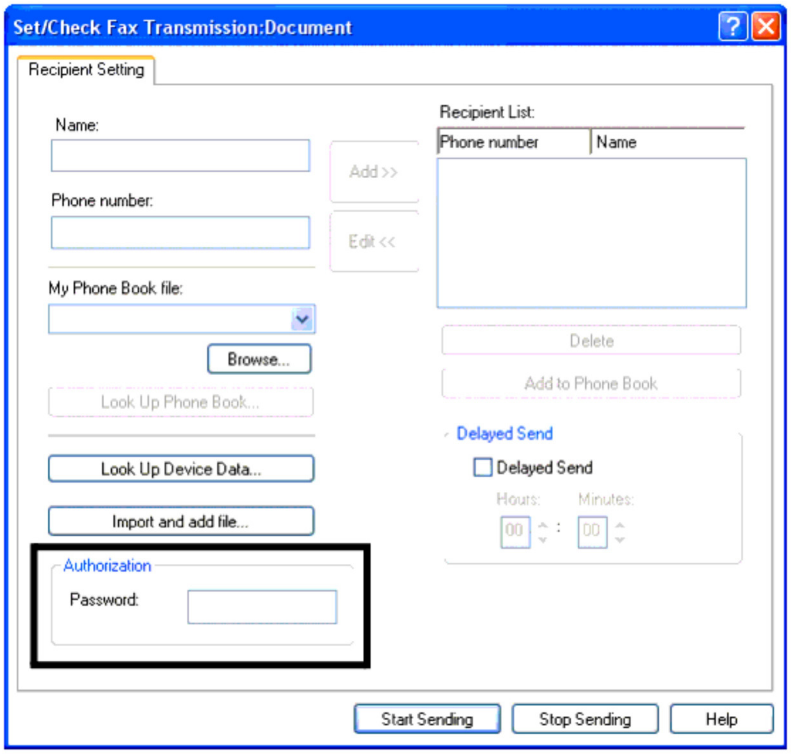
c. Record of senders

Prints the sender record at the head of the fax. Select Off to turn this feature off. Select On to turn this feature on.

5. Click **OK** to close the Printing Preferences dialog box.
6. Click **Print**. The Set/Check Fax Transmission: dialog box opens.

7. Enter the destination for the recipient. The following procedure is for entering the destination. For details on how to enter the destination, please refer to the Help file for the driver.
    a. Enter the name and phone number directly.
    b. Specify a destination that is saved to the Phone Book on the PC.
    c. Specify a destination that is saved to the Address Book on the Dell Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn.*

* This can only be used if the PC and the Dell Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn are connected with a USB cable.


Set/Check Fax Transmission:Document
Recipient Setting
Name:
Phone number:
Add >>
Edit <<
My Phone Book file:
Browse...
Look Up Phone Book...
Look Up Device Data...
Import and add file...
Authorization
Password:
Recipient List:
Phone number
Name
Delete
Add to Phone Book
Delayed Send
☐ Delayed Send
Hours:
Minutes:
00
00
Start Sending
Stop Sending
Help

NOTE: Enter the password in the Password field in the Authorization area before sending a fax from the Dell MFP Laser 3115cn Fax if the Scan/Fax Set (`Setup` → `Admin menu` → `Secure Settings`) settings on the Dell Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn have been set. If you do not enter the correct password, the fax will not be sent. You can check whether or not the fax was correctly sent on the Job History Report (`Setup` → `Reports` → `Job History`).

Receiving a Fax

About Receiving Modes

NOTE: To use the TEL/FAX or Ans/Fax mode, attach an answering machine to the Phone connector (☎) on the back of your multifunction printer.

When the memory is full, the fax is received in the TEL mode.

Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes

The instructions for loading paper in the paper tray are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying, except that faxes can only be printed on Letter-, A4-, or Legal-sized paper. For details about loading paper, see "Loading Print Media". For details about setting the paper type and size in the tray, see "Print Media Guidelines".

Receiving Automatically in the Fax Mode

Your multifunction printer is preset to the fax mode at the factory.

When you receive a fax, the multifunction printer answers the call on a specified number of rings and automatically receives the fax.

To change the number of rings, see "Available Fax Settings Options".

If you want to adjust the ringer volume, see "Setting Sounds".

Receiving Manually in the Tel Mode

You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code (see "Available Fax Settings Options"), or by setting OnHook to On (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine) and then pressing **Start**.

The multifunction printer begins receiving a fax and returns to the standby mode when the reception is completed.

Receiving Automatically in the TEL/FAX or Ans/FAX Mode

To use the TEL/FAX or Ans/Fax mode, you must attach an answering machine to the Phone connector (☎) on the back of your multifunction printer.

If the caller leaves a message, the answering machine stores the message as it would normally. If your multifunction printer hears a fax tone on the line, it automatically starts to receive fax.

NOTE: If you have set your multifunction printer to the Ans/FAX mode and your answering machine is switched off, or no answering machine is connected to your multifunction printer, your multifunction printer will automatically go into the Fax mode after a predefined number of rings.

Receiving Manually Using an External Telephone

This feature works best when you are using an external telephone connected to the Phone connector (☎) on the back of your multifunction printer. You can receive a fax from someone you are talking to on the external telephone without having to go to the fax machine.

When you receive a call on the external telephone and hear fax tones, press the two-digit keys on the external telephone.

The multifunction printer receives the document.

Press the buttons slowly in sequence. If you still hear the fax tone from the remote machine, try pressing the two-digit keys once again.

The remote receive code is set to `Off` at the factory. The first and the last asterisks are fixed, but you can change the middle number to whatever you choose. For details on changing the code, see "Available Fax Settings Options".

Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode

The DRPD mode is a telephone company service which enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. The particular number someone uses to call you on is identified by different ringing patterns, which consist of various combinations of long and short ringing sounds.

Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection option, Distinctive Ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. To set up Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection, you will need another telephone line at your location, or someone available to dial your FAX number from outside.

To set up the DRPD mode:

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Fax Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>DRPD Pattern` appears.
5. Use ▶ to select the desired setting, and then press ✓ .
6. To return to the standby mode, press **Cancel**.

To receive faxes in the DRPD mode, you need to set the menu to DRPD; see "Available Fax Settings Options".

Your multifunction printer provides five DRPD patterns. If this service is available from your telephone company, ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service.

Receiving Faxes in the Memory

Since your multifunction printer is a multi-tasking device, it can receive faxes while you are making copies or printing. If you receive a fax while you are copying, printing, or run out of paper or toner, your multifunction printer stores incoming faxes in the memory. Then, as soon as you finish copying, printing, or re-supply the consumables, the multifunction printer automatically prints the fax.

Polling Receive

You can receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

1. Press ▼ until `>FAX` appears, and then press ✓ .

2. Press ▼ until `>Polling Receive` appears.
3. Press ▶ to select `On`, and then press ✓ .

Color Fax

You can use the color fax function on your multifunction printer.

Conditions faxing in color

To send and receive color faxes you need to check the following conditions.

- Check that the sending or receiving party's fax is set for color faxes.
- You can only send one page if you send a fax using the document feeder glass.
- If the sender or the receiver is not a Dell Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn, the color fax function may not operate well. If this is the case, send the fax as black and white.
- Color faxes cannnot be sent while a fax is being sent or received.
- Automatic redial is not done if a transmission error occurs while a color fax is being transmitted.
- Color faxes are not forwarded even if the Forward Settings are set.
- Color faxes cannot be sent using direct fax.
- Color faxes cannot send document to multiple destinations at the same time.

Setting the Color Fax Function

To use the color fax function, turn on the color fax function. The factory default setting is off.

How to set the color fax function:

1. Press ▼ until `>Setup` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Fax Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Color Fax` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Press ▶ to select `On`, and then press ✓ .

Changes in the menu for color fax settings

The fax menu on the operator panel changes when Color Fax is turned on or off.

When color fax is off	When color fax is on	
	When "Black & White" is selected in the Fax menu	When "Color" is selected in the Fax menu
Phone Number Speed Dial Phone Book Add PhoneBook Entry Group Dial Resolution Original Type Lighter/Darker OnHook Polling Receive Delayed Start	Phone Number Speed Dial Phone Book Add PhoneBook Entry Group Dial Color Resolution Original Type Lighter/Darker OnHook Polling Receive Delayed Start	Phone Number Speed Dial Phone Book Add PhoneBook Entry Color Lighter/Darker OnHook Polling Receive

Checking whether or not a fax was sent in color

Even if you send a color fax, if the receiver does not have a color fax function or if their color fax function is turned off, the fax is sent in black and white. The following procedure explains how to check if a fax was sent in color or black and white.

Check on the panel:

`Color` or `Black & White` is displayed on the operator panel while a fax is sending.

- While a fax is sending in color, `Color` appears on the fourth line of the LCD panel.
- While a fax is sending in black and white, `Black & White` appears on the fourth line of the LCD panel.

Check on the activity report:

You can check the Mode field on the activity report.

- If the fax was sent in color, "Color" is output on the report.
- If the fax was sent in black and white, G3, SG3 or ECM is output on the report.
- If a fax sent as color is changed to black and white, *G3, *SG3, or *ECM is output on the report.

Check on the monitor report:

You can check in the mode field on the monitor report if a monitor report is set to be output by Fax Transmit (`Setup` → `Admin menu` → `System Settings`).

Not Print	Does not print the report.
Print at Error*	Prints the report when a communication error is detected.
Print Always	Always prints the report for the fax transmission.

- If the fax was sent in color, "Color" is output on the report.
- If the fax was sent in black and white, G3, SG3 or ECM is output on the report.
- If a fax sent as color is changed to black and white because the receiver could not accept a color fax, *G3, *SG3, or *ECM is output on the report.

Automatic Dialing

Speed Dialing

You can store up to 200 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations (001-200).

When the speed dial job specified in the delayed fax or redial exists and you change the speed dial number from the operator panel or Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, the destination of the fax may be changed.

Storing a Number for Speed Dialing

1. Press ▼ until `>FAX` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Add PhoneBook Entry` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Speed Dial` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Enter the three-digit speed dial number between 001 and 200, using the number keypad, and then press ✓ .
5. Enter the settings for Name, Phone Number, and Delete Dial by using ▼ , ✓ and number keys.
   If a number is already stored in the location you chose, the display shows the number to allow you to change it. To start over with another speed-dial number, press **Back**.
6. Enter the number you want to store using the number keypad, and then press ✓ .
   To insert a pause between numbers, press **Pause**. "-" appears on the display.
7. To assign a name to the number, enter the name. For details about how to enter names, see "Using the Number Keypad to Enter Characters".
   If you do not want to assign a name, skip this step.
8. Press **Back** when the name appears correctly or without entering a name.
9. To store more fax numbers, repeat steps 4 through 6.
   To return to the standby mode, press **Cancel**.

Sending a Fax Using a Speed Dial

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
   OR
   Place a single document face down on the document feeder glass.
   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document".
2. To enter the speed dial number do either of the following:
   a. Press ▼ until `>FAX` appears, and then press ✓ .
   b. Press ▼ until `>Speed Dial` appears.
   c. Use the Keypad buttons to enter the three-digit speed dial number between 001 and 200, using the number keypad, and then press ✓ .
      The corresponding entry's name briefly displays. To confirm the name again, press ✓ .
3. Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs (see "Adjusting the Document Resolution").
   If you need to change the contrast, see "Lighter/Darker".
4. The document scans into the memory.
   When the document is loaded on the document feeder glass, the LCD display asks if you want to send another page. Press ▶ to select `Yes` to add more documents or to select `No` to begin sending the fax immediately, and then press ✓ .
5. The fax number stored in the speed dial location is automatically dialed. The document is sent when the remote fax machine answers.

NOTE: Using the asterisk (*) in the first digit, you can send a document to multiple locations. For example, if you enter 00*, you can send a document to the locations registered between 001 and 009.

Group Dialing

If you frequently send the same document to several destinations, you can create a group of these destinations and set them under a two-digit group dial location. This enables you to use a group dial number setting to send the same document to all the destinations in the group.

NOTE: You cannot include one group dial number within another group dial number.

Setting Group Dial

1. Press ▼ until `>FAX` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Add PhoneBook Entry` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Group Dial` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Enter the one-digit speed dial number between 1 and 6, using the number keypad, and then press ✓ .
   If a number is already stored in the location you chose, the display shows the number to allow you to change it. To start over with another speed-dial number, press **Back**.
5. Enter the number you want to store using the number keypad, and then press ✓ .
   To insert a pause between numbers, press **Pause**. "-" appears on the display.
6. To assign a name to the number, enter the name. For details about how to enter names, see "Using the Number Keypad to Enter Characters".
   If you do not want to assign a name, skip this step.
7. Press **Back** when the name appears correctly or without entering a name.
8. To store more fax numbers, repeat steps 4 through 6.
   To return to the standby mode, press **Cancel**.

Editing Group Dial Numbers

You can delete a specific speed dial number from a selected group or add a new number to the selected group.

1. Press ▼ until `>FAX` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Add PhoneBook Entry` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Group Dial` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Enter the one-digit speed dial number between 1 and 6, using the number keypad, and then press ✓ .

NOTE: When you delete the last speed dial in a group, the group itself is not deleted.

5. Press **Back**.
6. If you want to edit another group, repeat from step 4.
   To return to the standby mode, press **Cancel**.

Sending a Fax Using Group Dialing (Multi-address Transmission)

You can use group dialing for Broadcasting or Delayed transmissions.

Follow the procedure of the desired operation (For Delayed transmission, see "Sending a Delayed Fax").

You can use one or more group numbers in one operation. Then continue the procedure to complete the desired operation.

Your multifunction printer automatically scans the document loaded in the Automatic Document Feeder or on the document feeder glass into the memory. The multifunction printer dials each of the numbers included in the group.

Printing a Speed Dial List

You can check your automatic dial setting by printing a Speed Dial list.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Admin Reports` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▶ until `>Speed Dial` appears, and then press ✓ .
   A list showing your speed dial entries prints out.

Other Ways to Fax

Using the Secure Receiving Mode

You may need to prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people. You can turn on the secure fax mode using the Secure Receive option to restrict printing out all of the received faxes when the multifunction printer is unattended. In the secure fax mode, all incoming faxes will go in memory. When the mode turns off, any faxes stored will be printed.

NOTE: Before operation, ensure Panel Lock is enabled.

To turn the secure receiving mode on:

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Secure Settings` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Secure Receive` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Press ▼ until `>Secure Receive Set` appears, and then press ✓ .
6. Press ▶ to select `Enable`, and then press ✓ .
7. Press ▼ to select `Change Password`, and then press ✓ .
8. Enter a four-digit passcode you want to use, using the number keypad and press ✓ .

NOTE: When you set Secure Receive Set to `Enable`, 0000 is set by default.

9. To return to the standby mode, press **Cancel**.
   When a fax is received in the secure receiving mode, your multifunction printer stores it into memory and the JOB STATUS screen displays "`Secure Receive`" to let you know that there is a fax stored.

To print received documents:

1. Press ▼ until `>JOB STATUS` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Secure Receive` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Enter the password, and then press ✓ .
   The faxes stored in memory are printed.

To turn the secure receiving mode off:

1. Access the **Secure Receive** menu by following steps 1 to 5 in "To turn the secure receiving mode on:".
2. Press ▼ to select `Disable`, and then press ✔ .
3. To return to the standby mode, press **Cancel**.

Printing Reports

The following reports are available:

Speed Dial

This list shows all of the numbers currently stored in the printer's memory as speed dial numbers.

You can print this Speed Dial list from the operator panel; see "Printing a Speed Dial List".

Address Book

This list shows all of the numbers currently stored in the printer's memory as **Address Book** information.

Server Address

This list shows all of the numbers currently stored in the printer's memory as Server Address information.

Fax Activity

This report shows information about the faxes you recently received or sent.

Fax Pending

This list shows the status of pending faxes. You may print this list to confirm your changes after changing any settings.

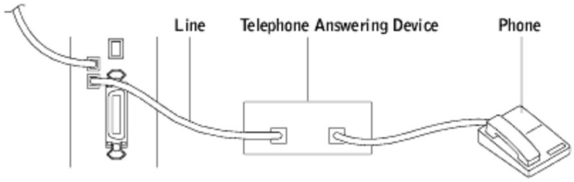
Printing a Report

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✔ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✔ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Admin Reports` appears, and then press ✔ .
4. Press ▶ to select the report or list you want to print.
   A list showing your speed dial entries prints out.
   Speed Dial: Speed Dial list
   Address Book: Address Book list
   Server Address: Server Address list
   Fax Activity: Fax activity information
   Fax Pending: Pending faxes
   Print Meter: Print volume report
5. Press ✔ .
   The selected information prints out.

Changing Setting Options

1. Press ▼ until `>FAX` appears, and then press ✔ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Fax Defaults` appears, and then press ✔ .
3. Press ▼ to select the desired menu item, and then press ✔ .
4. When the option you want appears on the display, press ▶ to select the desired status or enter the desired value using the number keypad.
5. Press ✔ to save the selection.
6. You can exit from the setup mode at any time by pressing **Cancel**.

Using an Answering Machine



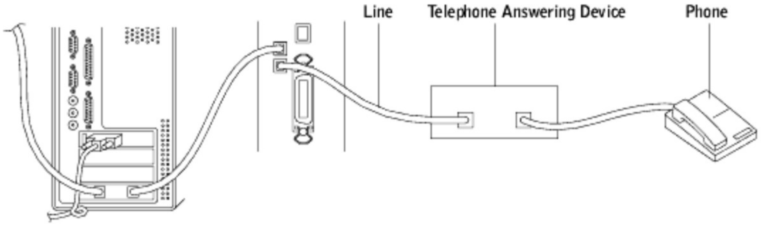
You can connect a telephone answering device (TAD) directly to the back of your multifunction printer as shown above.

- Set your multifunction printer to the Ans/FAX mode and set Auto Ans. Ans/FAX to specify the time for the TAD.
- When the TAD picks up the call, the multifunction printer monitors and takes the line if fax tones are received and then starts receiving the fax.
- If the answering device is off, the multifunction printer automatically goes into the Fax mode after a predefined number of rings.
- If you answer the call and hear fax tones, the multifunction printer will answer the fax call if you

→ Set `OnHook` to `On` (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine), and then press **Start** and hang up the receiver.
OR

→ Press the two-digit remote receive code and hang up the receiver.

Using a Computer Modem



If you want to use your computer modem for faxing or for a dial-up internet connection, connect the computer modem directly to the back of your multifunction printer with the TAD as shown above.

- Set your multifunction printer to the Ans/FAX mode and set Auto Ans. Ans/FAX to specify the time for the TAD.
- Turn off the computer modem's fax-receive feature.
- Do not use the computer modem if your multifunction printer is sending or receiving a fax.
- Follow the instructions provided with your computer modem and fax application to fax via the computer modem.
- If you want to capture images using your multifunction printer and Dell ScanDirect™, send images using your fax application with the computer modem.

Networking

- About Sharing the Multifunction Printer on a Network
- Setting Up the Locally Shared Printer
- Point and Print
- Peer-to-Peer
- Setting Up a Network-connected Printer
- Printing a Network Configuration Page
- Setting Network Protocols
- Static Addressing
- Dynamic Addressing (BOOTP/DHCP)
- Restoring the Network Configuration
- Resetting the Network Interface Card

About Sharing the Multifunction Printer on a Network

Locally-shared Printer

You can connect the multifunction printer directly to a selected computer, which is called the "host computer" on the network. The multifunction printer can then be shared by other users on the network through a Windows® 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista®, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2008, or Windows NT 4.0 network printer connection.

Wired Network-connected Printer

Your multifunction printer has a built-in network interface. For details, see "Connecting the Multifunction Printer to the Network".

Printing Across a Network

Whether the multifunction printer is locally connected or network-connected, you need to install the Dell™ Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn software on each computer that prints documents using the multifunction printer.

Setting Up the Locally Shared Printer

You can share your new printer on the network using the *Drivers and Utilities* CD that shipped with your multifunction printer, or using Microsoft's point and print or peer-to-peer method. However, if you use one of the Microsoft methods, you will not have all of the features, such as the status monitor and other printer utilities, that are installed with the *Drivers and Utilities* CD.

To share a locally-attached printer on the network, you need to share the multifunction printer, and then install the shared printer on network clients:

1. Click **Start→Settings→Printers and Faxes (Printers for Windows 2000)**.
2. Right-click this printer icon and select **Properties**.
3. From the **Sharing** tab, check the **Shared this printer (Shared for Windows 2000)** check box, and then type a name in the **Shared name (Share as for Windows 2000)** text box.
4. Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients printing to this multifunction printer.
5. Click **OK**.
   If you are missing files, you are prompted to insert the server operating system CD.

For Windows Vista:

1. Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.
2. Right-click the printer's icon and select **Sharing**.
3. Click the **Change sharing options** button.
4. The dialog box displaying "Windows needs your permission to continue" appears.
5. Click the **Continue** button.
6. Check the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.
7. Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients printing to this printer.
8. Click **OK**.

For Windows Server 2008:

1. Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Printers**.
2. Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.
3. Check the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.
4. Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients printing to this printer.
5. Click **OK**.

The PCL driver supports an Additional Driver for Windows Vista (not including Itanium). To register the Additional Driver, follow the instructions below.

1. Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

2. Right-click the printer's icon and select **Sharing**.
3. Click the **Change sharing options** button.
4. Click the **Continue** button.
5. Click **Additional Drivers** and select the processors of all the network clients printing with this printer.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Click the **Browse** button and locate the driver in the Drivers and Utilities CD

To check that the multifunction printer was successfully shared:

- Ensure the printer object in the **Printers and Faxes (Printers for Windows 2000)** folder shows it is shared. For example, in Windows 2000, a hand is shown underneath the printer icon.
- Browse **My Network Places (Network Neighborhood for Windows 2000)**. Find the host name of the server and look for the shared name you assigned to the multifunction printer.

Now that the multifunction printer is shared, you can install the multifunction printer on network clients using the point and print method or the peer-to-peer method.

Point and Print

This method is usually the best use of system resources. The server handles driver modifications and print job processing. This lets network clients return to their programs much faster.

If you use the point and print method, a subset of driver information is copied from the server to the client computer. This is just enough information to send a print job to the multifunction printer.

1. On the Windows desktop of the client computer, double-click **My Network Places (Network Neighborhood for Windows 2000)**.
2. Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
3. Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Install**.
   Wait for the driver information to copy from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers and Faxes (Printers for Windows 2000)** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.
   Close **My Network Places (Network Neighborhood for Windows 2000)**.
4. Print a test page to verify print installation.
5. Click **Start**→**Settings**→**Printers and Faxes (Printers for Windows 2000)**.
6. Select the multifunction printer you just created.
7. Click **File**→**Properties**.
8. From the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page (Print a Test Page for Windows 2000)**.

   When a test page prints successfully, printer installation is complete.

For Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008:

1. On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start**→ **Network**.
2. Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
3. Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
4. Click **Install driver**.
5. Click **Continue** in the User Account Control dialog box (You can skip this step in Windows Server 2008).
6. Wait for the driver information to copy from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers** dialog box. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.
7. Print a test page to verify printer driver installation.
8. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers** (**Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Printers** for Windows Server 2008).
9. Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.
10. From the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

If the test page prints successfully, the printer driver installation is complete.

Peer-to-Peer

If you use the peer-to-peer method, the printer driver is fully installed on each client computer. Network clients retain control of driver modifications. The client computer handles the print job processing.

1. Click **Start**→**Settings**→**Printers and Faxes (Printers for Windows 2000)**.
2. Click **Add Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
3. Click **Next (Network Print Server for Windows 2000)**.
4. Select **A network printer** or **a printer attached to another computer**, and then click **Next** (For Windows 2000, select the network printer from the **Shared printers** list). If the multifunction printer is not listed, type in the path of the multifunction printer in the text box.
   For example: `\\<server host name>\<shared printer name>`
   The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.
5. Click **Browse for a printer**, and then click **Yes** (For Windows 2000, click **OK**).
   If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, then you will need to provide a path to available drivers.
6. Select whether you want this multifunction printer to be the default printer for the client, click **Next**, and then click **Finish** (For Windows 2000, click **Finish**).
7. Print a test page to verify printer installation:
   a. Click **Start**→**Settings**→**Printers and Faxes (Printers for Windows 2000)**.
   b. Select the multifunction printer you just created.

c. Click **File→Properties**.

d. From the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page (Print a Test Page for Windows 2000)**. When a test page prints successfully, printer installation is complete.

For Windows Vista and Window Server 2008

1. Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers (Start→ Control Panel→ Printers** for Windows Server 2008).
2. Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
3. Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed** and type in the path of the printer in the **Select a shared printer by name** text box and click **Next**.

   For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

   The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned to the printer during the server installation process.
4. If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, then you will need to provide a path to available drivers.
5. Select whether you want this printer to be the default printer for the client, click **Next**.
6. If you want to the verify printer driver installation then click **Print a test page**.
7. Click **Finish**.

Setting Up a Network-connected Printer

You must set up the network protocols on the multifunction printer to use it as your network printer. Setting protocols can be accomplished by using the supplied network program.

You can configure the basic network parameters through the multifunction printer's operator panel. Use the printer operator panel to do the following:

- Print a Network Configuration Page
- Configure TCP/IP

Configuring Network Parameters on the Operator Panel

Item	**Requirements**
Network Interface	10/100 Base-TX
Network Operating System	Windows 98/Me, NT 4.0/2000/XP/Vista/Server 2003/Server 2008
Network Protocols	· TCP/IP on Windows · Port9100 on Windows 2000//XP/Vista/Server 2003/Server 2008

Dynamic Addressing Server	· DHCP · BOOTP

Printing a Network Configuration Page

The Network Configuration page shows how the network interface card on your multifunction printer is configured. The default settings are suitable for most applications.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Admin Reports` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Server Address` appears, and then press ✓ .

   The Network Configuration page prints out.

Setting Network Protocols

When you first install the multifunction printer, all supported network protocols are enabled when you power the multifunction printer on. If a network protocol is enabled, the multifunction printer may actively transmit on the network even when the protocol is not in use. This may slightly increase network traffic. To eliminate unnecessary traffic, you can disable unused protocols.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Wired Net` or `>Wireless Net` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Protocol` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Press ▶ to select the desired settings, and then press ✓ .
   - Port9100
   - FTP
   - SNMP UDP
   - E-Mail Alert
   - EWS

Configuring TCP/IP

- Static Addressing: TCP/IP address is assigned manually by the system administrator.
- Dynamic Addressing BOOTP/DHCP(default): TCP/IP address is assigned automatically by a DHCP or BOOTP server on your network.

Static Addressing

To enter the TCP/IP address from your multifunction printer's operator panel, take the following steps:

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Wired Net` or `>Wireless Net` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>TCP/IP` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Press ▼ until `>IP Address` appears, and then press ✓ .

   An IP address consists of 4 bytes.

   ```
   IP Address

   * 0. 0. 0. 0.
   ```

   Enter a number between 0 and 255 for each octet.

6. Enter the numbers from the keypad, and then press ▶ to move between octets and press ✓ .
7. Repeat 5 to complete the address from the 1st byte to the 4th byte.
8. Repeat 5 through step 8 to configure the other TCP/IP parameters.

Dynamic Addressing (BOOTP/DHCP)

To assign the TCP/IP address automatically using a DHCP or BOOTP server on your network, take the following steps:

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Wired Net` or `>Wireless Net` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>TCP/IP` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Press ▶ until `>DHCP` or `>BOOTP` appears, and then press ✓ .

Restoring the Network Configuration

You can return the network configuration to its default settings.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Wired Net` or `>Wireless Net` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Initialize NVM` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Press ▼ to select `Yes`, and then press ✓ .

   The network configuration is restored.

6. Power the multifunction printer off and back on or reset the network interface card.

Resetting the Network Interface Card

You can reset the network interface card when a network problems occurs.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Wired Net` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Initialize NVM` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Press▶ to select `Yes`, and then press ✓ .

Understanding Fonts

- Typefaces and fonts
- Bitmapped and Scalable Fonts
- Resident Fonts
- Symbol Sets

Typefaces and fonts

A font is a set of characters and symbols created with a distinct design. The distinct design is called a typeface. The typefaces you select add personality to a document. Well-chosen typefaces make a document easier to read.

The multifunction printer has numerous resident fonts in PCL 5/PCL 6 and Adobe PostScript 3. See "Resident Fonts" for a listing of all resident fonts.

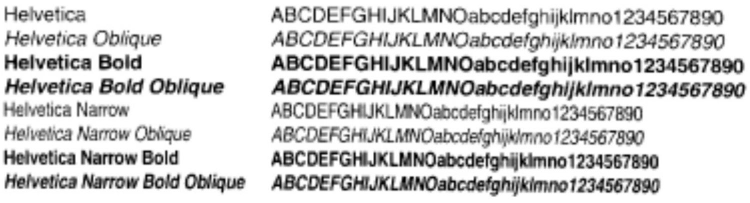
Weight and style

Typefaces are often available in different weights and styles. These variations modify the original typeface so you can, for example, emphasize important words in text or highlight book titles. The different weights and styles are designed to complement the original typeface.

Weight refers to the thickness of the lines that form the characters. Thicker lines result in darker characters. Some words commonly used to describe the weight of a typeface are bold, medium, light, black, and heavy.

Style refers to other typeface modifications, such as tilt or character width. Italic and oblique are styles where the characters are tilted. Narrow, condensed, and extended are three common styles that modify the character widths.

Some fonts combine several weight and style modifications; for example, Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique. A group of several weight and style variations of a single typeface is called a typeface family. Most typeface families have four variations: regular, italic (oblique), bold, and bold italic (bold oblique). Some families have more variations, as the following illustration for the Helvetica typeface family shows:

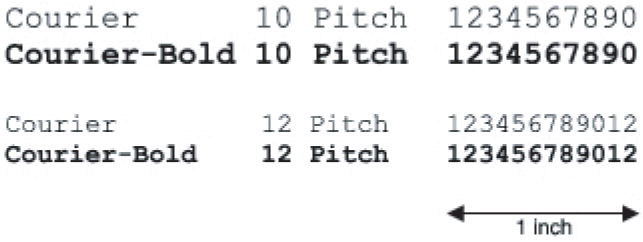


Helvetica	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890
Helvetica Oblique	*ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890*
Helvetica Bold	**ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890**
Helvetica Bold Oblique	***ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890***
Helvetica Narrow	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890
Helvetica Narrow Oblique	*ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890*
Helvetica Narrow Bold	**ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890**
Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique	***ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890***

Pitch and Point Size

The size of a font is specified as either a pitch or point size, depending on whether the font is fixed space or proportional.

In fixed space fonts, each character has the same width. Pitch is used to specify the size of fixed space fonts. It is a measure of the number of characters that will print in one horizontal inch of type. For example, all 10-pitch fonts print 10 characters per inch (cpi) and all 12-pitch fonts print 12 cpi:



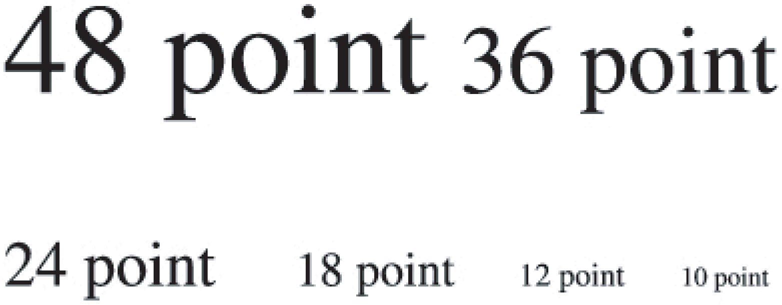
Courier 10 Pitch 1234567890
Courier-Bold 10 Pitch 1234567890

Courier 12 Pitch 123456789012
Courier-Bold 12 Pitch 123456789012

1 inch

In proportional (or typographic) fonts, every character can have a different width. Since proportional fonts have characters with different widths, the font size is specified in point size, not pitch. Point size refers to the height of the characters in the font. A point is defined as 1/72 inch. The characters in a font printed at 24 point will be twice as large as the characters in the same font printed at 12 point.

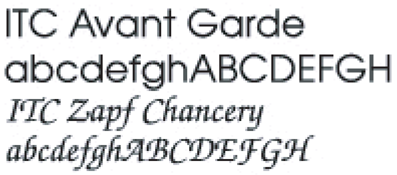
The following illustration shows samples of a font printed in different point sizes:



48 point 36 point

24 point 18 point 12 point 10 point

The point size of a font is defined as the distance from the top of the tallest character in the font to the bottom of the lowest character in the font. Due to the definition of point size, different fonts printed at the same point size may appear quite different in size. This is because there are other font parameters that affect how the font looks. However, the point size of a font is an excellent specification of the relative size of a font. The following examples illustrate two very different proportional fonts at 14 point:

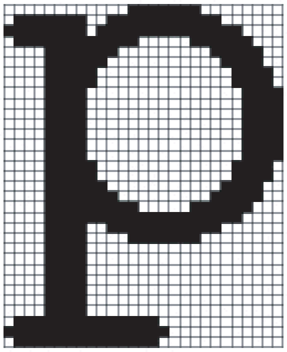


ITC Avant Garde
abcdefghABCDEFGH
ITC Zapf Chancery
abcdefghABCDEFGH

Bitmapped and Scalable Fonts

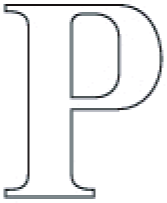
The multifunction printer uses both bitmapped and scalable fonts.

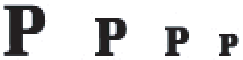
Bitmapped fonts are stored in print memory as predefined patterns of bits that represent a typeface at a specific size, style, and resolution. The following illustration shows an example of a character from a bitmapped font.



Bitmapped fonts are available in different type styles and point sizes as downloadable fonts.

Scalable fonts (also called outline fonts) are stored as computer programs that define the outlines of the characters in the font. Each time you print characters from a scalable font, the multifunction printer creates a bitmap of the characters at the point size you choose and saves it temporarily in print memory.





These temporary bitmapped fonts are deleted when you turn off or reset the multifunction printer. Scalable fonts provide the flexibility of printing in many different point sizes.

Your multifunction printer uses different scalable font formats for downloading fonts to the multifunction printer. PCL 5/PCL 6 uses Intellifont and TrueType scalable fonts. Adobe PostScript 3 uses Type 1 and TrueType scalable fonts. There are thousands of different scalable fonts available in these different font formats from numerous font suppliers.

If you plan to use many downloadable bitmapped or scalable fonts or if you plan to use many different sizes of scalable fonts, you may need to purchase additional memory for your multifunction printer.

Resident Fonts

Your multifunction printer is equipped with resident fonts stored permanently in print memory. Different fonts are available in PCL 5/PCL 6 and Adobe PostScript 3. Some of the most popular typefaces, like Courier and TimesNew (PCL 5/PCL 6)/Times New Roman (Adobe PostScript 3), are available for all printer languages.

The following table lists all the fonts resident in your multifunction printer. See "Printing a Font Sample List" for instructions on how to print samples of the fonts. You can select the resident fonts from your software program. You can also select the fonts from the operator panel if you are using PCL 5.

Resident scalable fonts	
PCL 5/PCL 6	PostScript 3
CG Times	Albertus
CG Times It	Albertus Italic
CG Times Bd	Albertus Light
CG Times BdIt	
	Antique Olive Roman
Univers Md	Antique Olive Italic
Univers MdIt	Antique Olive Bold
Univers Bd	Antique Olive Compact
Univers BdIt	Apple Chancery
Univers MdCd	Arial
Univers MdCdIt	Arial Italic
Univers BdCd	Arial Bold
Univers BdCdIt	Arial Bold Italic
	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book
AntiqueOlv	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique
AntiqueOlv It	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi
AntiqueOlv Bd	ITC AvantGarde Gothic Demi Oblique
	Bodoni Roman
CG Omega	Bodoni Italic
CG Omega It	Bodoni Bold
CG Omega Bd	Bodoni Bold Italic
CG Omega BdIt	Bodoni Poster
	Bodoni Poster Compressed
Garamond Antiqua	ITC Bookman Light
Garamond Krsv	ITC Bookman Light Italic
Garamond Hlb	ITC Bookman Demi
Garamond KrsvHlb	ITC Bookman Demi Italic

	Carta
Courier	Chicago
Courier It	Clarendon Roman
Courier Bd	Clarendon Bold
Courier BdIt	Clarendon Light
	Cooper Black
LetterGothic	Cooper Black Italic
LetterGothic It	Cooper Gothic 32BC
LetterGothic Bd	Cooper Gothic 33BC
	Coronet
Albertus Md	Courier
Albertus XBd	Courier Oblique
	Courier Bold
Clarendon Cd	Courier Bold Oblique
	Eurostile Medium
Coronet	Eurostile Bold
	Eurostile Extended No. 2
Marigold	Eurostile Bold Extended No. 2
	Geneva
Arial	Gill Sans
Arial It	Gill Sans Italic
Arial Bd	Gill Sans Bold
Arial BdIt	Gill Sans Bold Italic
	Gill Sans Light
TimesNew	Gill Sans Light Italic
TimesNew It	Gill Sans Extra Bold
TimesNew Bd	Gill Sans Condensed
TimesNew BdIt	Gill Sans Condensed Bold
	Goudy Oldstyle
Symbol	Goudy Oldstyle Italic

	Goudy Bold
Wingdings	Goudy Bold Italic
	Goudy Extra Bold
Line Printer	Helvetica
	Helvetica Oblique
Times Roman	Helvetica Bold
Times It	Helvetica Bold Oblique
Times Bd	Helvetica Narrow
Times BdIt	Helvetica Narrow Oblique
	Helvetica Narrow Bold
Helvetica	Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique
Helvetica Ob	Helvetica Condensed
Helvetica Bd	Helvetica Condensed Oblique
Helvetica BdOb	Helvetica Condensed Bold
	Helvetica Condensed Bold Oblique
CourierPS	Hoefler Text
CourierPS Ob	Hoefler Text Italic
CourierPS Bd	Hoefler Text Black
CourierPS BdOb	Hoefler Text Black Italic
	Hoefler Ornaments
SymbolPS	Joanna
	Joanna Italic
Palatino Roman	Joanna Bold
Palatino It	Joanna Bold Italic
Palatino Bd	Letter Gothic
Palatino BdIt	Letter Gothic Slanted
	Letter Gothic Bold
ITCBookman Lt	Letter Gothic Bold Slanted
ITCBookman LtIt	ITC Lubalin Graph Book
ITCBookmanDm	ITC Lubalin Graph Book Oblique

	ITC Lubalin Graph Demi
	ITC Lubalin Graph Demi Oblique
HelveticaNr	Marigold
HelveticaNr Ob	Monaco
HelveticaNr Bd	ITC Mona Lisa Recut
HelveticaNr BdOb	New Century Schoolbook Roman
	New Century Schoolbook Italic
N C Schbk Roman	New Century Schoolbook Bold
N C Schbk It	New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic
N C Schbk Bd	NewYork
N C Schbk BdIt	Optima Roman
	Optima Italic
ITC A G Go Bk	Optima Bold
ITC A G Go BkOb	Optima Bold Italic
ITC A G Go Dm	Oxford
ITC A G Go DmOb	Palatino Roman
	Palatino Italic
ZapfC MdIt	Palatino Bold
	Palatino Bold Italic
ZapfDingbats	Stempel Garamond Roman
	Stempel Garamond Italic
	Stempel Garamond Bold
	Stempel Garamond Bold Italic
	Symbol
	Tekton Regular
	Times Roman
	Times Italic
	Times Bold
	Times Bold Italic
	Times New Roman

	Times New Roman Italic
	Times New Roman Bold
	Times New Roman Bold Italic
	Univers 45 Light
	Univers 45 Light Oblique
	Univers 55
	Univers 55 Oblique
	Univers 65 Bold
	Univers 65 Bold Oblique
	Univers 57 Condensed
	Univers 57 Condensed Oblique
	Univers 67 Condensed Bold
	Univers 67 Condensed Bold Oblique
	Univers 53 Extended
	Univers 53 Extended Oblique
	Univers 63 Extended Bold
	Univers 63 Extended Bold Oblique
	Wingdings
	ITC Zapf Chancery Medium Italic
	ITC Zapf Dingbats

Symbol Sets

A symbol set is the collection of alphabetic and numeric characters, punctuation, and special characters available in the font you select. Symbol sets support the requirements for different languages or specific applications, such as math symbols used for scientific text.

In PCL 5/PCL 6, a symbol set also defines which character will print for each key on the keyboard (or more specifically, for each *code point*). Some applications require different characters at some code points. To support multiple applications and languages, your multifunction printer has 36 symbol sets for the resident PCL 5/PCL 6 fonts.

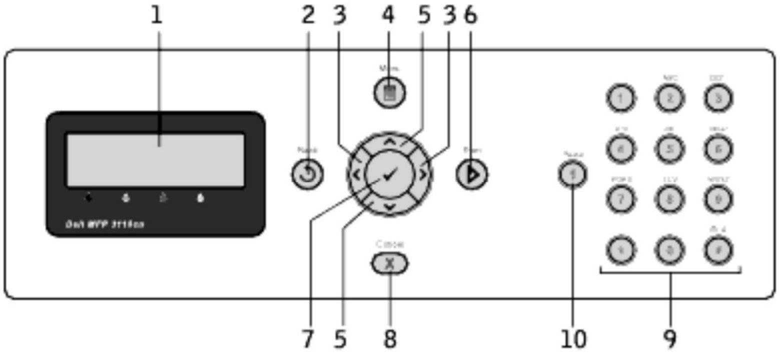
Symbol Sets for PCL 5/PCL 6

Not all font names support all of the symbol sets listed.

Roman 8 (Default)	ISO 8859-1 Latin 1	ISO 8859-2 Latin 2
ISO 8859-9 Latin 5	ISO 8859-10 Latin 6	PC-8
PC-8 DN	PC-775 Baltic	PC-850 Multilingual
PC-852 Latin 2	PC-1004 OS/2	PC Turkish
Windows 3.1 Latin 1	Windows 3.1 Latin 2	Windows 3.1 Latin 5
DeskTop	PS Text	MC Text
Microsoft Publishing	Math 8	PS Math
Pi Font	Legal	ISO 4 United Kingdom
ISO 6 ASCII	ISO 11 Swedish:names	ISO 15 Italian
ISO 17 Spanish	ISO 21 German	ISO 60 Norwegian v1
ISO 69 French	Windows 3.0 Latin 1	Windows Baltic
Symbol	Wingdings	ITC ZapfDingbats MS

Understanding Multifunction Printer Messages

The printer operator panel displays messages describing the current state of the multifunction printer and indicates possible printer problems you must resolve. This topic provides a list of all printer messages, explains what they mean, and tells you how to clear the messages.



1	LCD Panel	6	▷ (Start) button
2	↺ (Back) button	7	✓ button
3	◀ ▶ buttons	8	X (Cancel) button
4	▤ (Menu) button	9	Number pad
5	▲ ▼ buttons	10	, (Pause) button

Message **NOTE:** The first and second lines are displayed together. The third and forth lines blink every second.	**What this message means**	**What you can do**

`NNN-NNN`
`Restart Printer`
`Contact Support`
`IfMessageReturns`
	Error *NNN-NNN* relates to printer problems.	Turn off the multifunction printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell.
		See "Contacting Dell" in the *Owner's Manual* or in this manual.

`NNN-NNN` `Restart Printer`	The outer levers on both sides of the fuser unit are not securely	Confirm that the outer levers on both sides of the fuser unit are securely locked. If this does

Reseat Fuser Contact Support	locked. Error *NNN-NNN* relates to printer problems.	not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" in the *Owner's Manual* or in this manual.
016-316 Restart Printer Reseat Memory Contact Support	The multifunction printer detected an unsupported additional memory module in the memory slot.	Remove the additional memory module. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" in the *Owner's Manual* or in this manual.
016-318 Restart Printer Reseat Memory Contact Support	The additional memory module is not fully inserted into the slot.	Remove the additional memory module from the slot, and then reattach it firmly. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" in the *Owner's Manual* or in this manual.
016-340 Restart Printer Contact Support IfMessageReturns	A communication error occurred in the control card.	Turn the multifunction printer off and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" in the *Owner's Manual* or in this manual.
016-330 Restart Printer Reseat MPC Contact Support	A communication card error occurred between the network interface card and control card.	Turn off the multifunction printer to re-install the multi-protocol card, and then turn the multifunction printer back on again. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" in the *Owner's Manual* or in this manual.
016-338 Restart Printer Reseat Wireless Contact Support	An error occurred in the wireless printer adapter.	Turn the multifunction printer off and then on. Ensure the following: · The wireless printer adapter is securely inserted into the slot on the controller card. · Unauthorized USB devices are not used. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" in the *Owner's Manual* or in this manual.
NNN-NNN Restart Printer Reseat XXX Contact Support	*XXX* is not fully inserted. Error *NNN-NNN* relates to printer problems.	Confirm that the unit is securely inserted. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" in the *Owner's Manual* or in this manual.
Paper Jam 077-901 Open Front Cover Remove Paper	The multifunction printer detects a paper jam. *XXX* and *YYY* indicates a position that you open. Error *NNN-NNN* relates to printer problems.	Clear the paper path. When "Reg Cover" appears in *XXX*, the procedure to remove print media is different depending on whether the duplexer is attached or not. See "Clearing Jams".
Paper Jam 077-907 Open Front Cover & Belt Unit Remove Paper		
Paper Jam NNN-NNN Open XXX Open YYY		
Paper Jam	The multifunction printer detects	Pull out the specified tray and clear the paper

077-903 Remove Paper Open & close Front Cover	a paper jam. N indicates the tray number.	path. See "Clearing Jams".
Insert PrintCart NNN-NNN Insert XXX Cartridge	The specified print cartridge is either missing or not fully inserted into the multifunction printer. *XXX* is one of the following: · Black · Cyan · Yellow · Magenta Error *NNN-NNN* relates to printer problems.	Reinsert the specified print cartridge. See "Replacing Print Cartridges".
Replace Cart. NNN-NNN Replace XXX Cartridge	The print cartridge is low on toner. *XXX* is one of the following: · Black · Cyan · Yellow · Magenta Error *NNN-NNN* relates to printer problems.	Remove the specified print cartridge and install a new one. **NOTE:** If you do not replace the print cartridge, print quality problems may occur. Order a new print cartridge at the website (**www.dell.com/supplies** or **www.euro.dell.com/supplies**). See "Replacing Print Cartridges".
Error XXX Cart. 093-NNN Check XXX Cart. Contact Support	The density of the print cartridge is not enough. *XXX* is one of the following: · Yellow Print · Cyan Print · Magenta Print · Black Print	Confirm that the toner seal is removed from the specified print cartridge and the cartridge is installed correctly. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Replacing Print Cartridges". See "Contacting Dell" in the *Owner's Manual* or in this manual.
Close FrontCover 077-300 Front Cover Is Open	Printer cover is open.	Close the specified cover.
Load XXX NNN-NNN YYY yyy	Incorrect paper size is loaded in the specified tray. *XXX* indicates the number of the tray or multipurpose feeder. *YYY* indicates a paper size. *yyy* indicates paper quality. Error *NNN-NNN* relates to printer problems.	Load the specified paper in the specified trays. See "Loading Print Media in Standard and Optional Trays".
PDL Request 016-720 Data Violation Press ✓	Error relating to PDL emulation problems occurs.	· Press ✓ to clear the message, cancel the current print job, and conduct the next print job, if any. · Press **Cancel** to cancel the print job.
Invalid Job	When the configuration of the	· Press **Cancel** to cancel the print job.

`016-799`
`Data Violation`
`Press` ✓
	multifunction printer on the printer driver does not conform to the multifunction printer you are using, this message appears.	· Press ✓ to clear the message, cancel the current print job, and conduct the next print job, if any.
		· Ensure that the printer configuration on the printer driver conforms to the multifunction printer you are using.

`Over Heat`
`042-700`
`Cooling down`
`Please Wait...`
	Since it is abnormally hot inside the multifunction printer, printing is paused.	Wait for a while with the multifunction printer on until the error disappears.

`Memory Full`
`017-970`
`FaxJob Failure`
`Press` ✓
	The fax memory is full and cannot continue processing the current fax job.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· The fax memory is full and fax job is terminated. Print the received images, or wait for a while until sending images is completed.

`Memory Full`
`033-788`
`Fax Job Failure`
`Press` ✓
	The fax memory is full and cannot continue processing the current fax job.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· The fax memory is full. Remove the received images, or wait for a while until sending images is completed.

`Accumulation Limit`
`Not Stored`
`For Last Sheet`
`Press` ✓
	Exceeds the maximum sheets of paper at a time when you send a fax.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· The maximum sheets of paper at a time are loaded.
		· Load up to 50 sheets of paper at a time.

`No Answer`
`035-701`
`Fax Job Failure`
`Press` ✓
	No answer is received from the remote machine.
	(T1 timeout on sending data)
		· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· No answer is received from the remote machine. Check the status of the remote machine.

`Communication`
`035-702`
`Fax Job Failure`
`Press` ✓
	The communication was shut by the remote machine.
	(Received DCN)
		· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· The communication was shut by the remote machine. Check the status of the remote machine.

`No Answer`
`035-718`
`Fax Job Failure`
`Press` ✓
	No answer is received from the remote machine.
	(T1 timeout on receiving data)
		· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· No answer is received from the remote machine. Check the status of the remote machine.

`Communication`
`035-720`
`Fax Job Failure`
`Press` ✓
	The remote machine cannot receive data.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· The remote machine cannot receive data. Check the features of the remote machine.

`No Dial Tone`
`035-746`
`Fax Job Failure`
`Press` ✓
	Cannot detect a dial tone before dialing the number.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· A dial tone cannot be detected. Check the communication line.

`Busy`
`035-781`
`Fax Job Failure`
`Press` ✓
	The busy tone was detected after dialing the number.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· The busy tone was detected. Wait for a while and redial the number.

`No Dial Tone`
`035-749`
`Fax Job Failure`
`Press` ✓
	The remote machine does not respond after dialing the number.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· The remote machine does not respond. Check the status of the remote machine.

`Communication`
`033-513`
`Fax Job Failure`
`Press` ✓
	The fax memory is full and the communication was disconnected.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· The fax memory is full and the communication was disconnected. Print the received images, or wait for a while until sending images is completed.

`Paper Jam`
`005-121`
`Open ADF Cover and Clear Jam`
	Paper jam is detected in the ADF.	Remove the jammed paper.

`Paper Jam`
`005-110`
`Open ADF Cover and Clear Jam`
	Paper jam is detected in the ADF.	Remove the jammed paper.

`Cover Open`
`005-301`
`Close ADF Cover`
	The cover of the ADF is open.	Close the cover of the ADF.

`Memory Full`
`033-503`
`Fax Job Failure`
`Press` ✓
	The fax memory is full.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· The fax memory is full. Print the received images, or wait for a while until sending images is completed.

`SMB/FTP Error`
`016-781`
`Scan`
`Press` ✓
	Cannot connect the server to which you transfer files.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· Ensure settings for the server address are correct. If the server address is correct, contact your network administrator for the network and server environments.

`SMTP Error`
`016-764`
`Scan`
`Press` ✓
	An error occurred when you connect the SMTP server.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· Ensure the settings for the SMTP server are correct. If the settings are correct, contact your SMTP server administrator.

`Network Error`
`016-770`
`Scan`
`Press` ✓
	The MPC firmware of this version does not support Scan To EMail and SMB/FTP.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· Upgrade the MPC firmware.

`Login Error`
`016-782`
`Scan`
`Press` ✓
	Cannot log in the server to which you transfer files.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· Ensure the server name, login user name, and password are correct.

`SMB/FTP Error`
`016-783`
`Scan`
`Press` ✓
	Cannot find the specified path of the server to which you transfer files.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· Ensure the specified server path name and access right to the folder are correct.

`SMB/FTP Error`
`016-787`
`Scan`
	Cannot create a directory.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· Check you have the right to create a directory.

`Press` ✓		

`SMB/FTP Error`
`016-784`
`Scan`
`Press` ✓
	An error occurred when you transfer data to the server.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· Ensure the directory in the server is not full or you have the access right to the directory.

`SMB/FTP Error`
`016-789`
`Scan`
`Press` ✓
	Cannot transfer the file.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· Ensure you have the right to rename/delete files.
		· Ensure SP1 is already installed in the Windows Server 2003. If it is not installed, install SP1.

`SMB/FTP Error`
`016-788`
`Scan`
`Press` ✓
	Files of the same name exist.
	NOTE: This incident occurs when you scan data in the format of pdf and YYMMDDHHMMSS from the remote machine and 10000 numbers of files (img-YYMMDDHHMMSS, img-YYMMDDHHMMSS-0001.pdf, ... img-YYMMDDHHMMSS-9999.pdf) exist on the server. This also occurs when you create other multiple page files.
		· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· If files of the same name already exist, overwrite existing files, or save them as new names.
		· Delete existing files of the same name.

`Network Error`
`016-786`
`Scan`
`Press` ✓
	A time-out error occurred when you send or receive scanned data.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· Ensure the network cable is not disconnected. If the network cable is connected correctly, contact your server administrator.

`Server Full`
`016-785`
`Scan`
`Press` ✓
	Cannot transfer files because the hard disk on the FTP/SMB server is full.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· Delete unnecessary data in the hard disk to ensure a free space.

`SMTP Server Full`
`016-765`
`Scan`
`Press` ✓
	The SMTP server is full.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· Contact your SMTP server administrator.

`Address Error`
`016-767`
`Scan`
`Press` ✓
	The e-mail address of the destination is not correct.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· Check the e-mail address, and then scan data again.

`From Address Error`
`016-768`
`Scan`
`Press` ✓
	The e-mail address of the sender is not correct.	· Press ✓ to clear the message.
		· Check the e-mail address, and then scan data again.

`SMTP Login Error`	Cannot log in the SMTP server to	· Press ✓ to clear the message.

016-507 Scan Press ✓	which you send e-mail.	· Ensure the user name and password used in the SMTP server are correct.
SMTP Login Error 016-506 Scan Press ✓	There are unspecified settings.	· Press ✓ to clear the message. · Ensure the SMTP server or POP3 server is already specified from the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
POP login Error 016-505 Scan Press ✓	Cannot log in the POP3 server to which you send e-mail.	· Press ✓ to clear the message. · Ensure the settings for the SMTP server or POP3 server are correct from the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
SMTP Error 016-503 Scan Press ✓	Cannot resolve the name of the SMTP server to which you send e-mail.	· Press ✓ to clear the message. · Ensure the settings for the SMTP server are correct from the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. · Ensure the settings for the DNS server are correct.
POP Error 016-504 Scan Press ✓	Cannot resolve the name of the POP3 server to which you send e-mail.	· Press ✓ to clear the message. · Ensure that the settings for the POP3 server are correct from the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. · Ensure the settings for the DNS server are correct.
SMTP Error 016-766 Scan Press ✓	An error occurred in the SMTP server.	· Press ✓ to clear the message. · Contact your SMTP server administrator.
Network Not Ready 016-790 Scan Press ✓	The settings for the network environment required for scanning are not prepared.	· Press ✓ to clear the message. · Ensure the network cable is not disconnected. If the network cable is connected correctly, retry to log in the network.
File size limits 016-986 Scan Press ✓	After you convert data to the specified format, the size of data exceeds the maximum specified in each format.	· Press ✓ to clear the message. · Reduce the image quality, for example, change the scan resolution, or change the file format to reduce the file size.
Mail Size Limits 016-985 Scan Press ✓	The size of e-mail specified in Menu exceeds the maximum.	· Press ✓ to clear the message. · Reduce the image quality, for example, change the scan resolution, or change the file format to reduce the file size.
PCScan Time Out 017-988 Scan Job Failure Press ✓	The connection to the host computer is timed out and Scan To Application cannot start.	· Press ✓ to clear the message. · Ensure your computer starts up and the USB cable is connected securely. · Ensure the required software is installed. For details, see "Scanning".

Clearing Jams

Careful selection of appropriate print media and proper loading allow you to avoid most jams. See "Print Media Guidelines" for more information.

- Avoiding Jams
- Identifying the Location of Paper Jams
- Removing Print Jams from the ADF
- Removing Print Jams From the Multipurpose Feeder
- Removing Print Jams From the Standard Tray
- Removing Print Jams From the Fuser Unit
- Removing Print Jams From the Optional Duplexer
- Removing Print Jams From the Optional Feeder

NOTE: Before buying large quantities of any print media, Dell recommends trying a sample first.

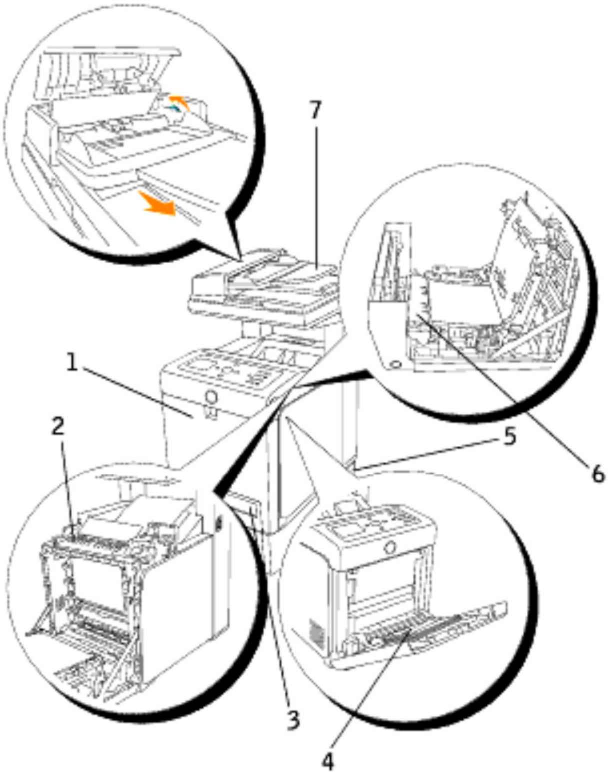
Avoiding Jams

- Use only recommended print media. See "Print Media Guidelines" for more information.
- See "Loading Print Media in Standard and Optional Trays" and "Loading the Multipurpose Feeder" to load printer media properly.
- Do not overload the print media sources. Ensure the stack print media height does not exceed the maximum height indicated by the load line labels in the trays.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, or curled print media.
- Flex, fan, and straighten print media before you load it. If a jam occurs with print media, try feeding one sheet at a time through the multipurpose feeder.
- Do not use print media that you have cut or trimmed yourself.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same print media source.
- Ensure the recommended print side is face up when you insert the print media. However, the recommended print side should be face down when using the multipurpose feeder.
- Keep print media stored in an acceptable environment. For more information, see "Storing Print Media".
- Do not remove the feeding tray during a print job.
- Push all trays in firmly after loading them.
- Ensure all cables that connect to the multifunction printer are correctly attached.

- Overtightening the guides may cause jams.
- Wipe the feeder rollers in the trays or multipurpose feeder with a cloth that is slightly dampened with water if jams caused by misfeeding paper occur frequently.

Identifying the Location of Paper Jams

The following illustration shows where paper jams may occur along the print media path.



⚠ **CAUTION: Do not attempt to clear any jams using tools or instruments. This may permanently damage the multifunction printer.**

1	Front cover
2	Fuser unit
3	Standard 250-sheet tray
4	Multipurpose feeder
5	Optional 550-sheet paper feeder
6	Optional duplexer
7	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)

Removing Print Jams from the ADF

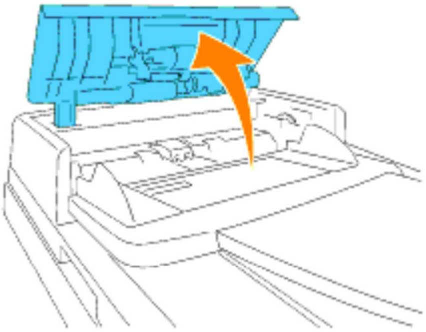
When a document jams while it passes through the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF), remove jams in the following procedure.

NOTE: To prevent document jams, use the document feeder glass for thick, thin or mixed documents.

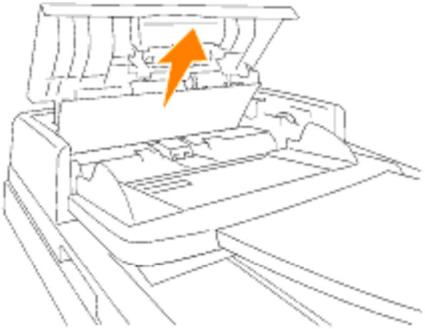
1. Remove the remaining documents from the ADF.

   If the document is jammed in the paper feed area:

   a. Open the ADF cover.

   b. Remove the document by gently pulling it straight up.

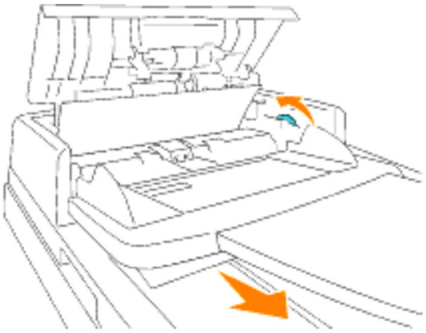
   

   If you find it difficult to pull the document, turn the dial behind the cover.

   a. Close the ADF cover. Then reload the document into the ADF.

   If the document is jammed in the paper exit area:

   a. Open the document cover and turn the dial to remove the misfed documents from the ADF output tray.



b. Close the document cover. Then load the documents back into the ADF.

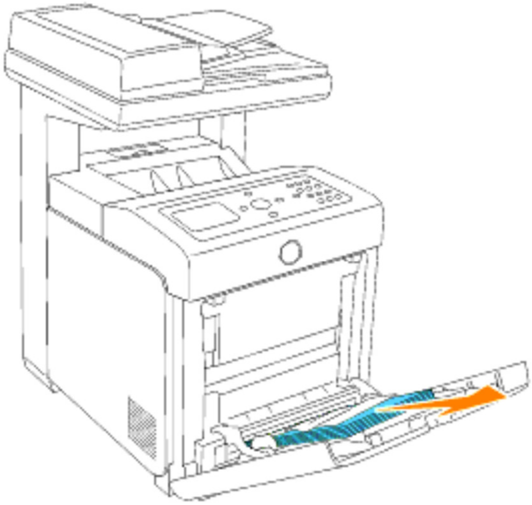
2. If you cannot see the paper or the paper does not move when you pulled, open the document cover.
3. Remove the document from the roller or the feed area by carefully pulling it gently to the right.
4. Close the document cover. Then load the documents back into the ADF.

Removing Print Jams From the Multipurpose Feeder

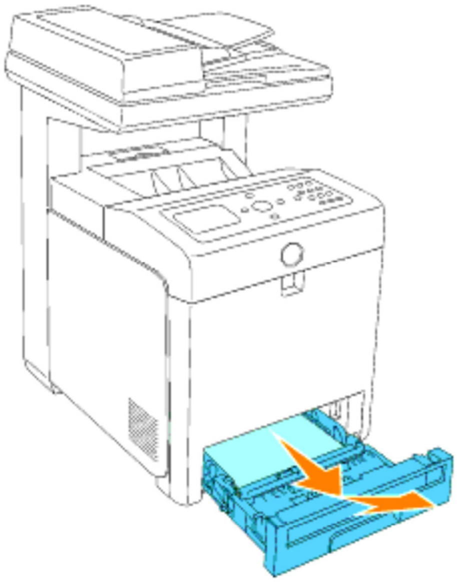
NOTICE: To protect the drums of the print cartridges against bright light, close the front cover within five minutes. If the front cover remains open for more than five minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

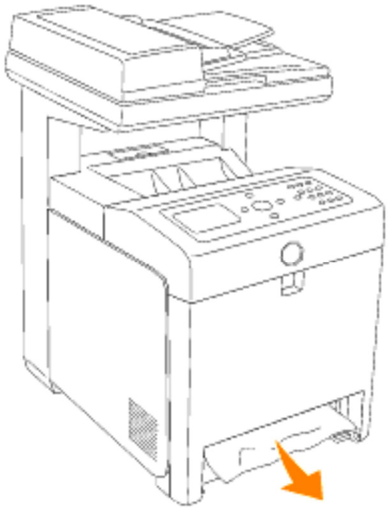
NOTE: To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1. Pull the jammed paper out of the multipurpose feeder. If no jammed paper can be found or it is hard to remove the paper, close the multipurpose feeder and go to the next step to remove the jammed paper from the inside of the multifunction printer.

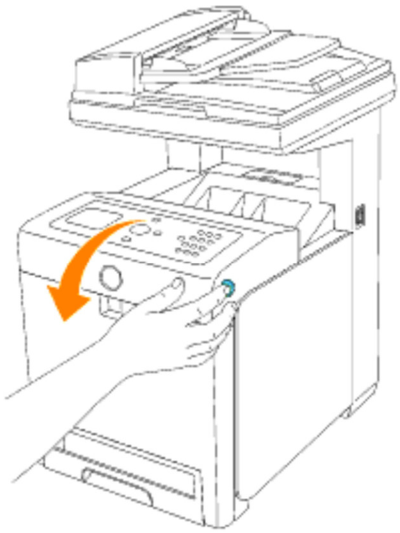


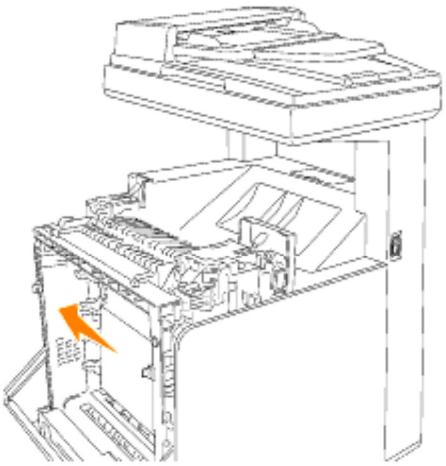
2. Remove the 250-sheet tray from the multifunction printer, and then pull out the jammed paper remaining inside the multifunction printer. If no jammed paper can be found or it is hard to remove the paper, go to the next step to remove the jammed paper from the inside of the multifunction printer.



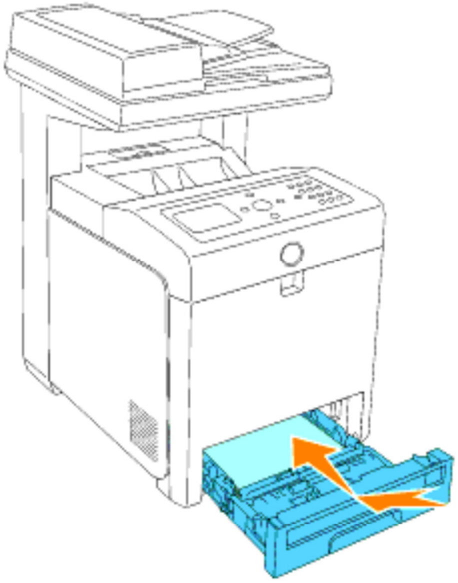


3. Open the front cover by pushing the button (right side) and remove the jammed paper. Then, confirm that there are no scraps of paper remaining inside the multifunction printer.





4. Insert the tray back into the multifunction printer, and push until it stops.



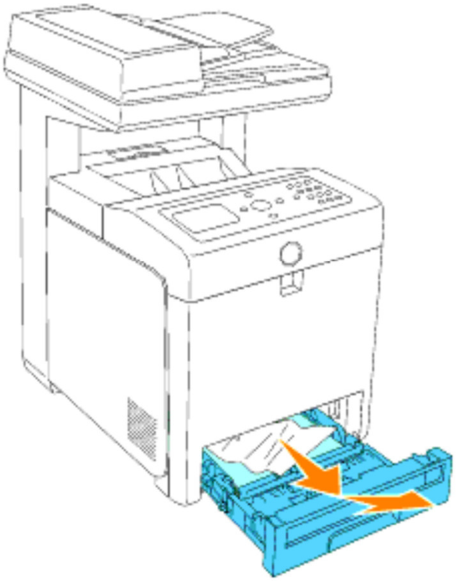
5. Open and close the front cover.

Removing Print Jams From the Standard Tray

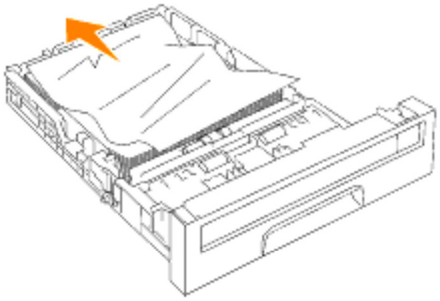
NOTICE: To protect the drums of the print cartridges against bright light, close the front cover within five minutes. If the front cover remains open for more than five minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

NOTE: To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

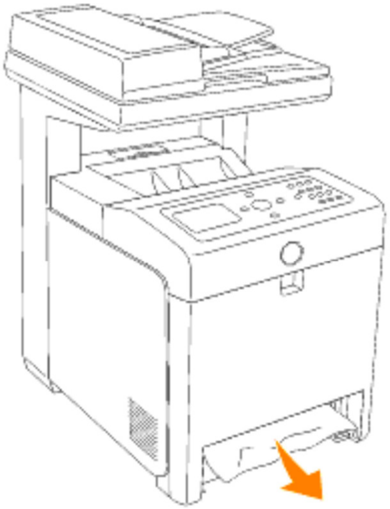
1. Pull the tray out of the multifunction printer until it stops. Hold the tray with both hands, lift the front slightly, and remove it from the multifunction printer.



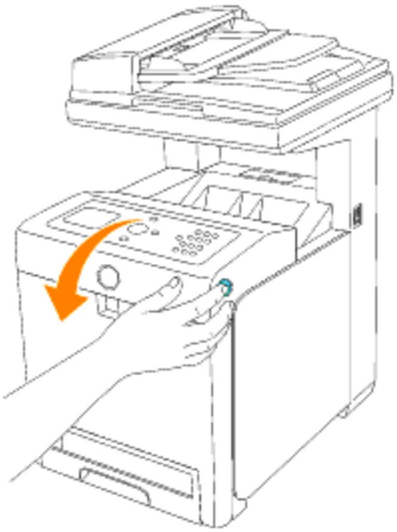
2. Remove all the jammed and/or creased paper from the tray.

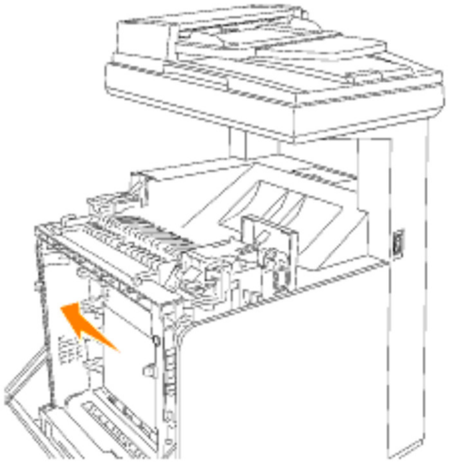


3. Pull the jammed paper out carefully to avoid tearing it. If it is still hard to remove the paper, go to the next step to remove the jammed paper from the inside of the multifunction printer.

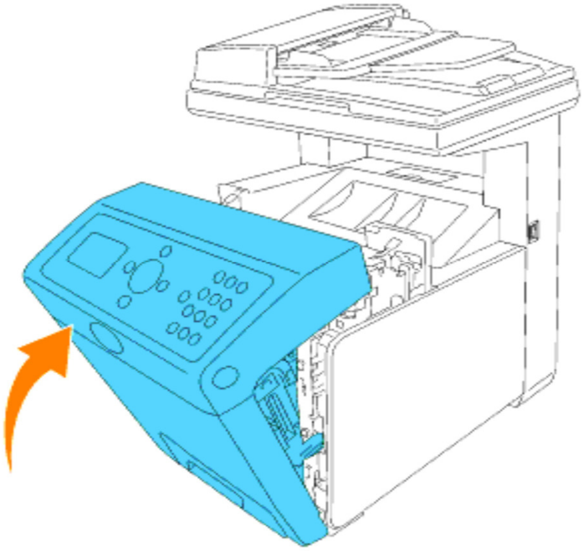


4. Open the front cover by pushing the button (right side) and remove the jammed paper. Then, confirm that there are no scraps of paper remaining inside the multifunction printer.

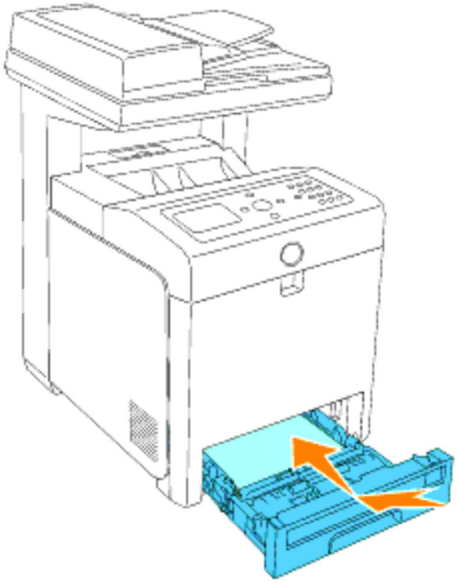




5. Close the front cover.



6. Insert the tray into the multifunction printer, and push until it stops.



⚠ **CAUTION: Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the multifunction printer.**

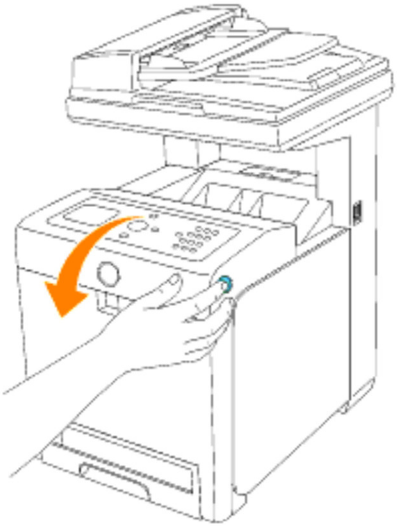
Removing Print Jams From the Fuser Unit

NOTICE: Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the transfer belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the transfer belt unit may reduce print quality.

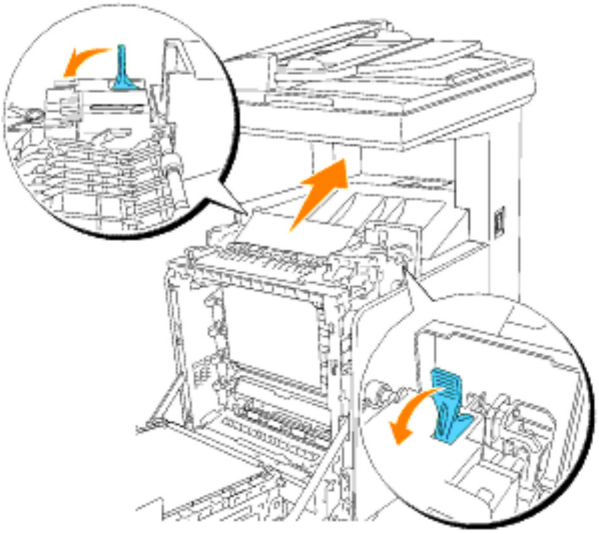
NOTICE: To protect the drums of the print cartridges against bright light, close the front cover within five minutes. If the front cover remains open for more than five minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

NOTE: To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1. Turn off the multifunction printer and wait for 30 minutes.
2. Push the button (right side) and open the front cover.

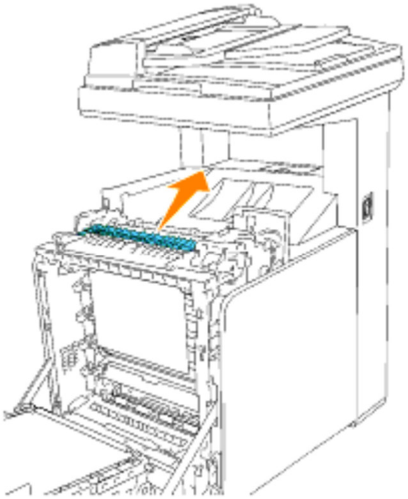


3. Lift the levers at both ends of the fuser unit, and remove the jammed paper. If any jammed paper cannot be found, go to the next step.

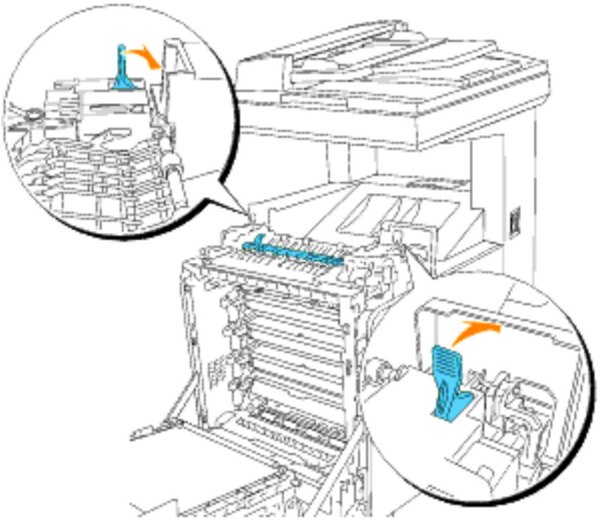


⚠ **CAUTION: The fuser unit is hot. Do not touch it, doing so may cause burns.**

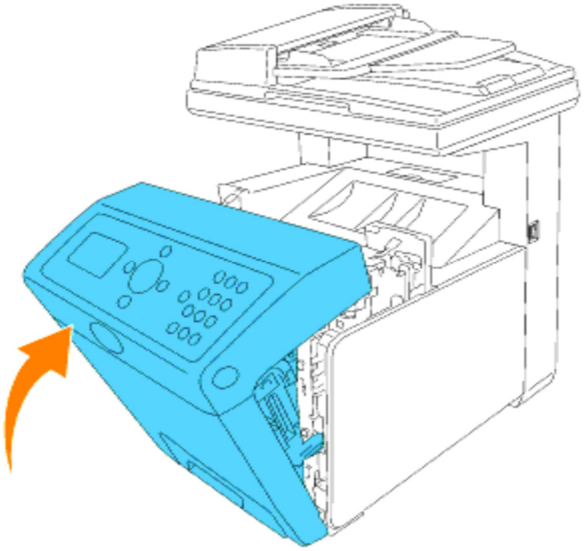
4. Open the cover of the fuser unit and remove the jammed paper.



5. Close the cover of the fuser unit and press down the levers at both ends of the fuser unit.



6. Confirm that there are no scraps of paper remaining inside the multifunction printer, and then close the front cover.



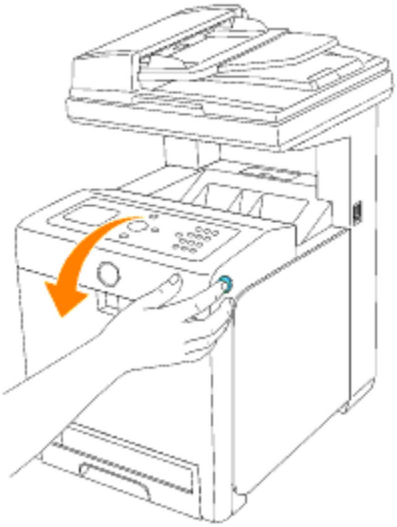
Removing Print Jams From the Optional Duplexer

NOTICE: Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the transfer belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the transfer belt unit may reduce print quality.

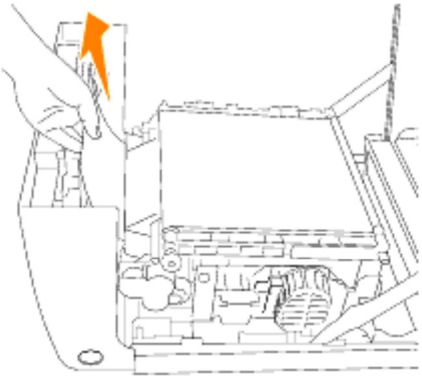
NOTICE: To protect the drums of the print cartridges against bright light, close the front cover within five minutes. If the front cover remains open for more than five minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

NOTE: To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

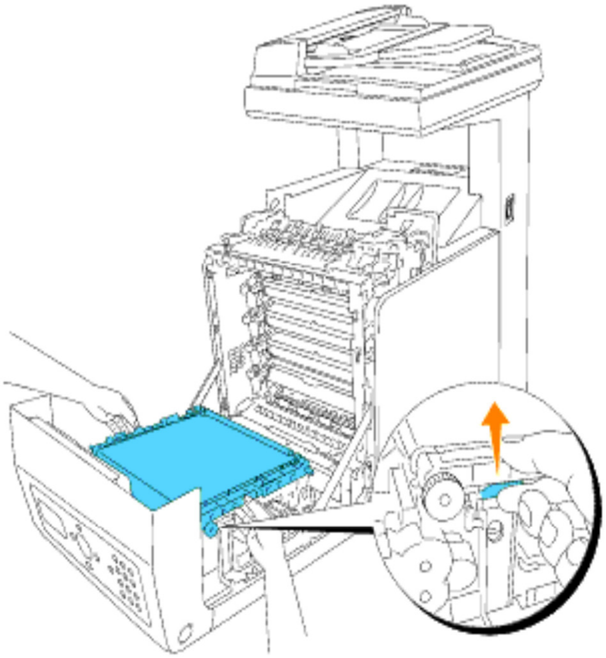
1. Push the button (right side) and open the front cover.



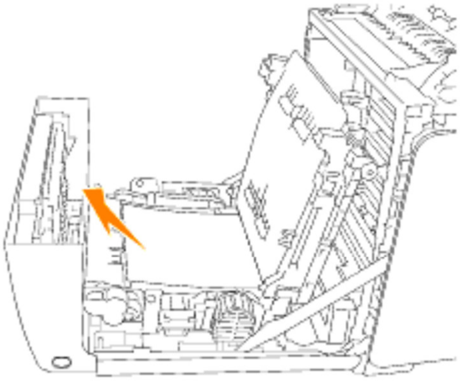
2. Pull out the jammed paper from the duplexer. If jammed paper cannot be found, go to the next step.



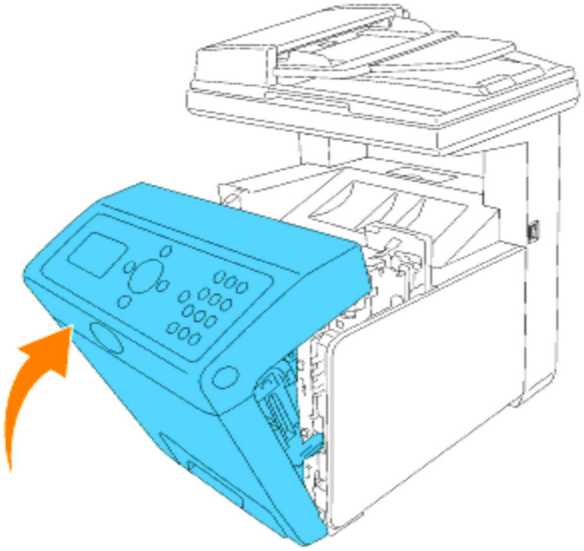
3. Pull up on the belt release levers and rotate the transfer belt unit up as shown in the illustration.



4. Remove the jammed paper and close the transfer belt unit.



5. Close the front cover.



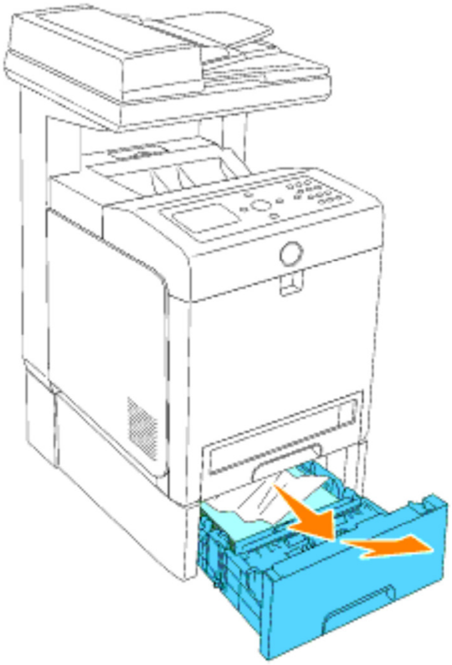
Removing Print Jams From the Optional Feeder

NOTICE: To protect the drums of the print cartridges against bright light, close the front cover within five minutes. If the front cover remains open for more than five minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

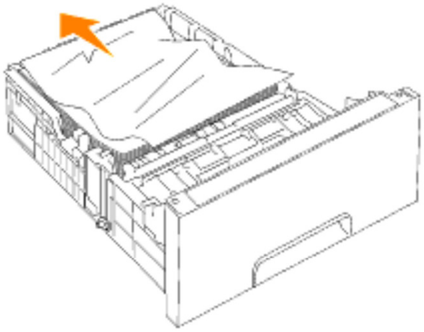
NOTE: To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1. Pull the tray out of the multifunction printer until it stops. Hold the tray with both hands, lift the front slightly, and remove it from the multifunction printer.

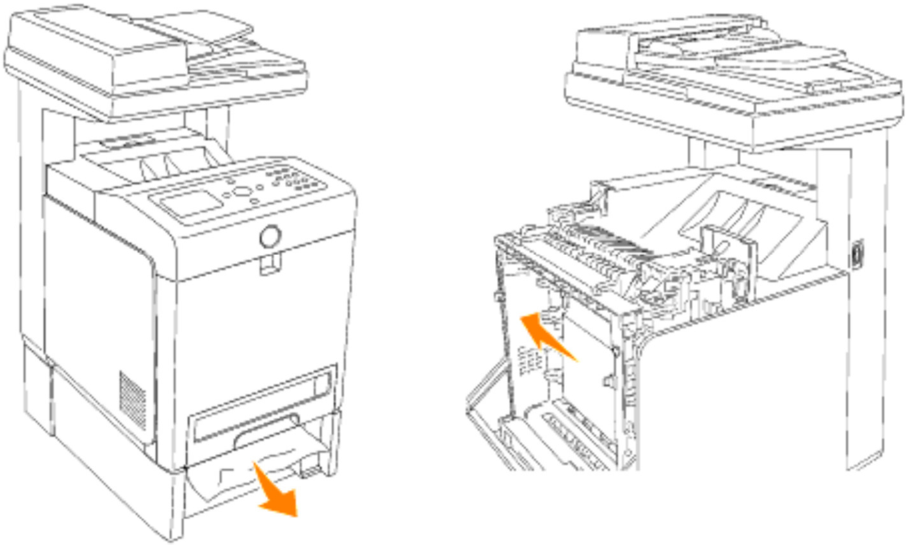
NOTE: Paper in the optional 550-sheet paper feeder feeds to the multifunction printer from the front of the 250-sheet tray, therefore paper jammed in the 250-sheet tray can block the optional tray module in the multifunction printer, preventing you from opening them. Look for the jammed paper sequentially, starting with the optional 550-sheet paper feeder.



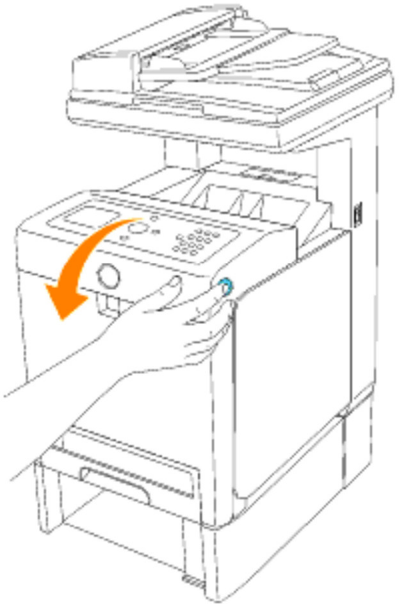
2. Remove all jammed and/or creased paper from the tray.



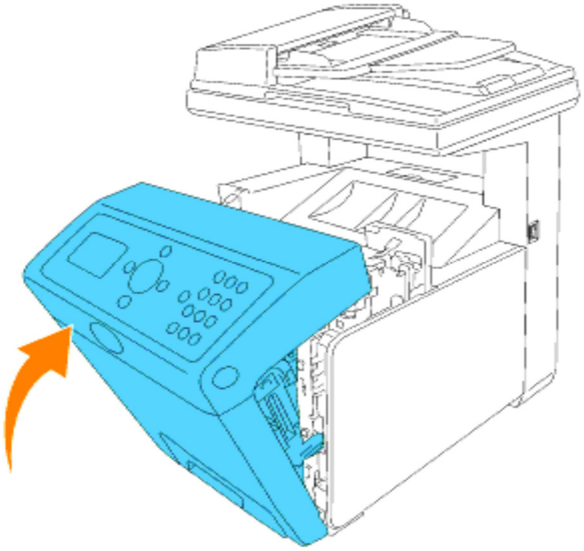
3. Pull the jammed paper out carefully to avoid tearing it. If it is still hard to remove the paper, go to the next step to remove the jammed paper from the inside of the multifunction printer.



4. Open the front cover by pushing the button (right side) and remove the jammed paper. Then, confirm that there are no scraps of paper remaining inside the multifunction printer.

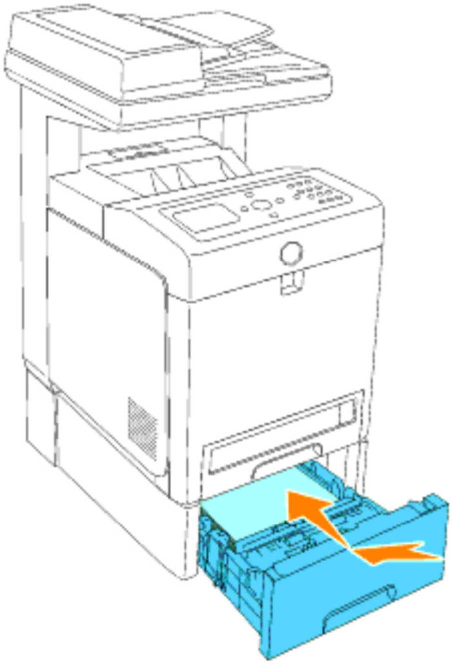


5. Close the front cover.



NOTE: If the paper jam message is not cleared after closing the front cover, pull out the 250-sheet tray from the multifunction printer and remove the jammed paper.

6. Insert the tray back into the multifunction printer, and push until it stops.



⚠ **CAUTION: Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the multifunction printer.**

Printing With Web Services for Devices (WSD)

This section provides information for network printing with WSD, Microsoft's new Windows Vista protocol.

- Printer Setup

Printer Setup

You can install your new printer on the network using the *Drivers and Utilities* CD that shipped with your printer, or using Microsoft's Windows **Add Printer** wizard.

However, when you use **IPv6 Mode**, you cannot install the printer driver from the *Drivers and Utilities* CD. Use the **Add Printer** wizard.

Installing a Printer Driver Using the Add Printer Wizard

1. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.
2. Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
3. Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
4. In the list of available printers, select the one you want to use, and then click **Next**. If your computer is connected to a network, only printers listed in **Active Directory** for your domain are displayed in the list.
5. If prompted, install the printer driver on your computer. If you are prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, type the password or provide confirmation.
6. Complete the additional steps in the wizard, and then click **Finish**.
7. Print a test page to verify print installation.
8. Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.
9. Right-click the printer you just created, and then click **Properties**.
10. On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**. When a test page prints successfully, printer installation is complete.

Maintaining Your Multifunction Printer

Periodically, your printer requires you to complete certain tasks to maintain optimum print quality. If several people are using the multifunction printer, you may want to designate a key operator to maintain your multifunction printer. Refer printing problems and maintenance tasks to this key operator.

- Determining the Status of Supplies
- Conserving Supplies
- Ordering Supplies
- Storing Print Media
- Storing Consumables
- Replacing Print Cartridges
- Replacing the Fuser Unit
- Replacing Separator Rollers
- Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit
- Adjusting Color Registration
- Cleaning the scanner
- Cleaning the Roller in the ADF

Determining the Status of Supplies

If your multifunction printer is connected to the network, the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** can provide instant feedback on remaining toner levels. Type the printer IP address in your Web browser to view this information. To use the E-Mail Alert Setup feature that notifies you when the multifunction printer requires new supplies, type your name or the name of the key operator in the e-mail list box.

On the operator panel, you can also confirm the following:

- Any supply or maintenance items that require attention replacing (However, the multifunction printer can only display information about one item at a time.)
- Amount of toner remaining in each print cartridge

Conserving Supplies

You can change several settings in your software program or on the operator panel to conserve print cartridge and paper.

Supply	Setting	Function	For more information
Print cartridge	Draft Mode in the Advanced	This check box allows the users to select a print mode that uses less toner. When this feature is used, the image quality will be lower than when it is not used.	
Print media	Multiple Up	The multifunction printer prints two or more pages on one side of a sheet. Values for **Multiple Up** are 2 Up, 4 Up, 8 Up, 16 Up, or 32 Up. Combined with the duplex setting, **Multiple Up** allows you to print up to 64 pages on one sheet of paper. (32 images on the front and 32 on the back)	
	Duplex	This allows you to print on both sides of a sheet of paper. Duplex printing is only available when the optional duplexer is installed on the multifunction printer.	

Ordering Supplies

You can order consumables from Dell on the Internet when using a networked printer. Type the IP address of your multifunction printer in your Web browser, launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, and click the **Order Supplies at:** to order toner for your multifunction printer.

You can also order print cartridges by the following method.

1. Click **Start**→**All Programs**→**Dell Printers**→**Additional Color Laser Software**→**Dell Supplies Management System**.

   The **Dell Supplies Management System** window appears.

2. Select your multifunction printer from the **Select Printer Model** list.
3. If ordering from the Web:
   a. When you cannot get information from the multifunction printer automatically by two- way communication, a window that prompts you to type the Service Tag number appears. Type your Dell printer Service Tag number in the field provided.
   Your Service Tag number is located inside the front door of your multifunction printer.
   b. Select an URL from the **Select Reorder URL** list.
   c. Click **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site**.
4. If ordering by phone, call the number that appears under the **By Telephone** heading.

Storing Print Media

To avoid potential paper feeding problems and uneven print quality, there are several things you can do.

- To achieve the best possible print quality, store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40%.

- Store cartons of print media on a pallet or shelf, rather than directly on the floor.
- If you store individual packages of print media out of the original carton, ensure that they rest on a flat surface so the edges do not buckle or curl.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

Storing Consumables

Store consumables in their original packaging until you need to use them. Do not store consumables in:

- Temperatures greater than 40°C (104°F).
- An environment with extreme changes in humidity or temperature.
- Direct sunlight.
- Dusty places.
- A car for a long period of time.
- An environment where corrosive gases are present.
- An environment with salty air.

Replacing Print Cartridges

⚠ **CAUTION: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in your *Owner's Manual* or *Product Information Guide*.**

NOTICE: To protect the drums of the print cartridges against bright light, close the front cover within five minutes. If the front cover remains open for more than five minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

Dell print cartridges are available only through Dell. You can order more cartridges online at **http://www.dell.com/supplies** or by phone. To order by phone, see "Contacting Dell" in the *Owner's Manual* or in this manual.

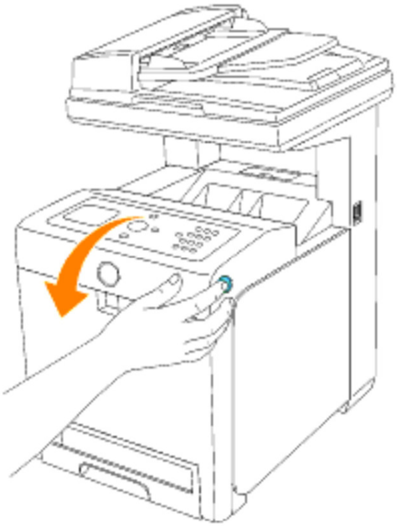
Dell recommends that you use Dell print cartridges for your multifunction printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

⚠ **CAUTION: Never throw used print cartridges into a fire. The residual toner could explode resulting in burns and injuries.**

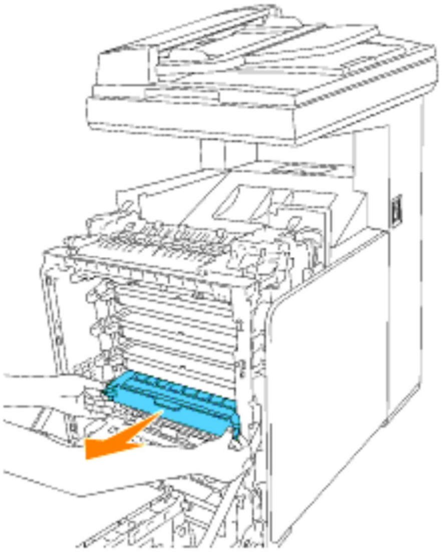
⚠ **CAUTION: Since the used print cartridge may spill some toner, do not shake it.**

Removing the Used Print Cartridge

1. Push the button (right side) and open the front cover.



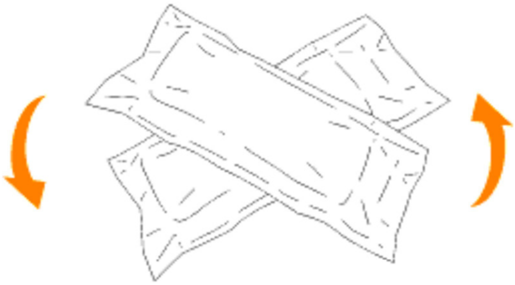
2. Grasp the handles at both ends of the print cartridge that you want to replace and pull it out.



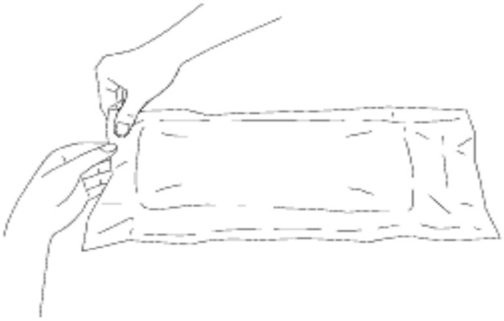
⚠ **CAUTION: Since the used print cartridge may spill some toner, do not shake it.**

Installing a New Print Cartridge

1. Select the new print cartridge which color matches the color of the handles on the printer cartridge to be replaced and shake it five or six times to distribute the toner evenly.

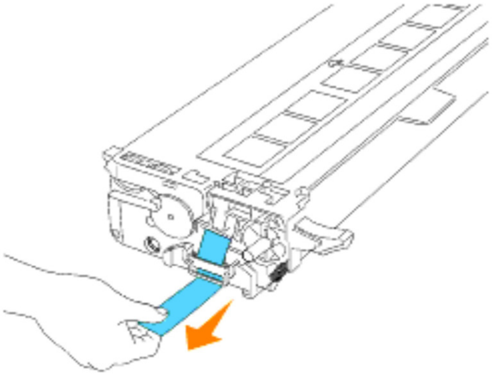


2. Remove the print cartridge from its packaging.



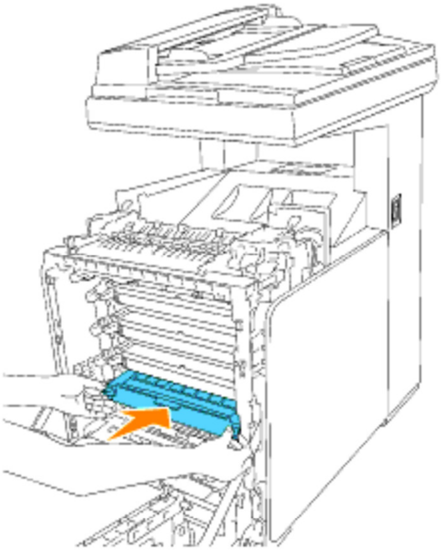
NOTE: To protect the drum against bright light, do not remove the orange protective cover of the print cartridge before the cartridge is inserted into its slot in the multifunction printer.

3. Completely remove the seal from the print cartridge by pulling the tab on the end of the print cartridge.

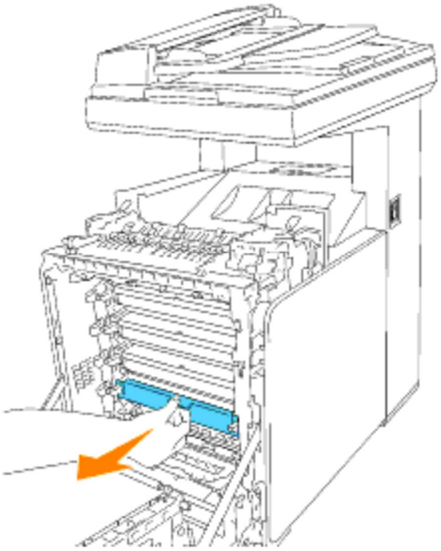


NOTE: Pull the seal out straight. Pulling the seal diagonally may tear it.

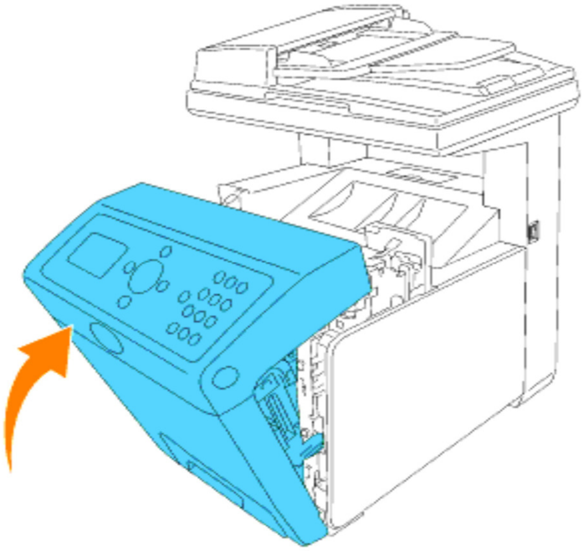
4. Grasp both handles of the print cartridge with the label facing up and slide the cartridge into the same color slot. Ensure the cartridge is fully inserted.



5. Remove the orange protective cover of the installed print cartridge and discard.



6. Close the front cover.



Replacing the Fuser Unit

⚠ **CAUTION: To prevent electric shock, always turn off the multifunction printer and disconnect the power cable from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.**

⚠ **CAUTION: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in your *Owner's Manual* or *Product Information Guide*.**

NOTICE: To protect the drums of the print cartridges against bright light, close the front cover within five minutes. If the front cover remains open for more than five minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

NOTE: Remove any print jobs from the output tray, and close the multipurpose feeder before opening the front cover.

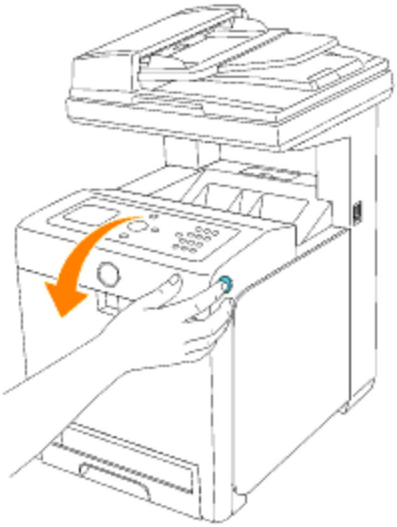
Dell fuser unit is available only through Dell. To order by phone, see "Contacting Dell" in the *Owner's Manual* or in this manual.

Dell recommends Dell fuser unit for your multifunction printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

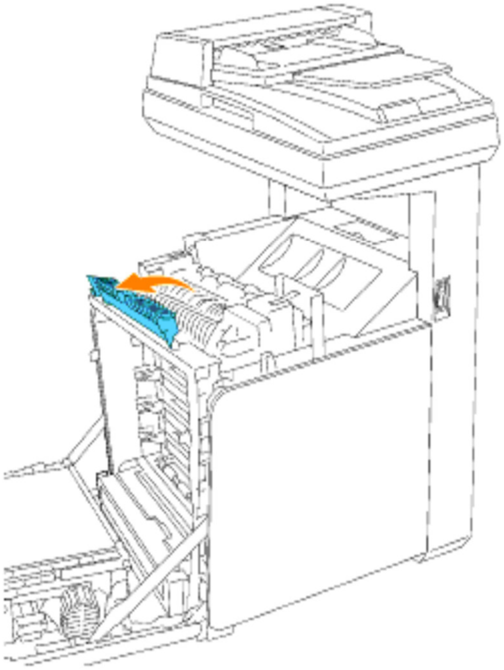
Removing the Used Fuser Unit

⚠ **CAUTION: To avoid burns, do not replace the fuser unit immediately after printing, as the fuser unit gets very hot during this process.**

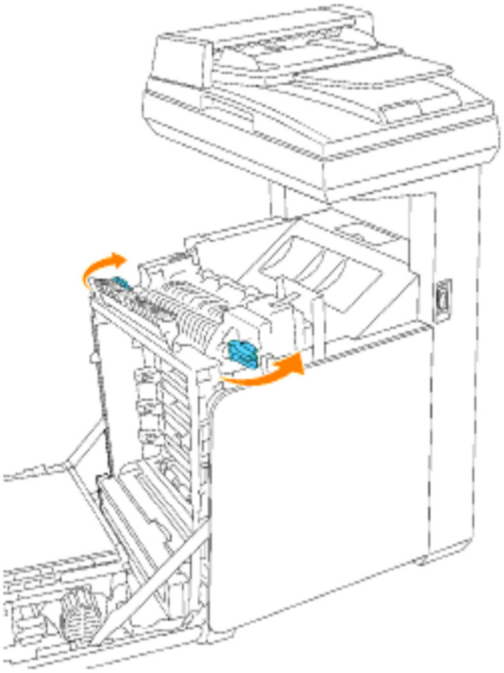
1. Turn off the multifunction printer and wait for 30 minutes for the fuser unit to cool down before removal.
2. Push the button (right side) and open the front cover.



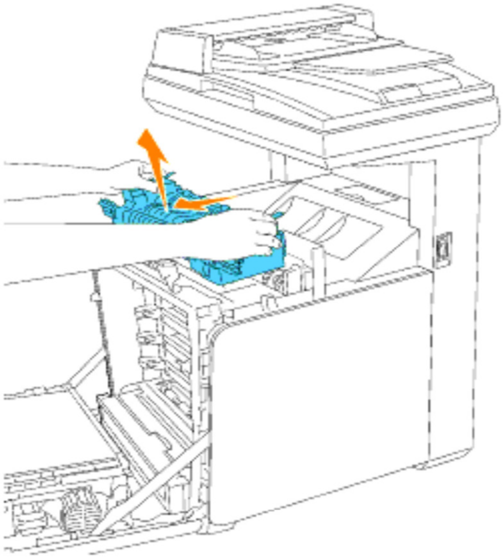
3. Lift the chute gate to its upright position.



4. Release the levers at both ends of the fuser unit.

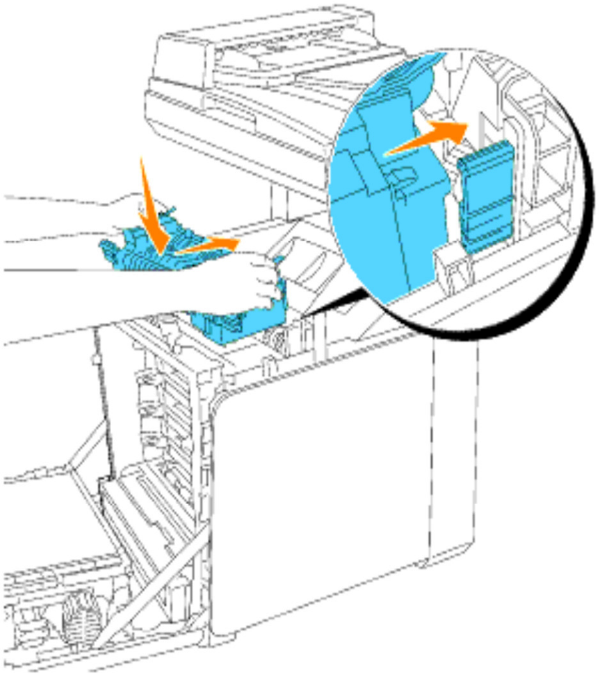


5. Hold both sides of the installed fuser unit, pull it towards the front of the multifunction printer to release the connection on the right side, then lift upward to remove.



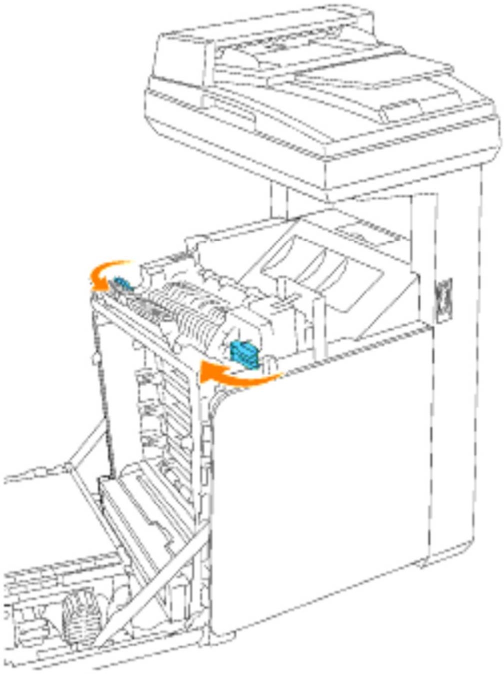
Installing a New Fuser Unit

1. Unpack a new fuser unit and hold both sides of the fuser unit with both hands.
2. With the connector of the fuser unit toward the slot, push the connector into the slot firmly.

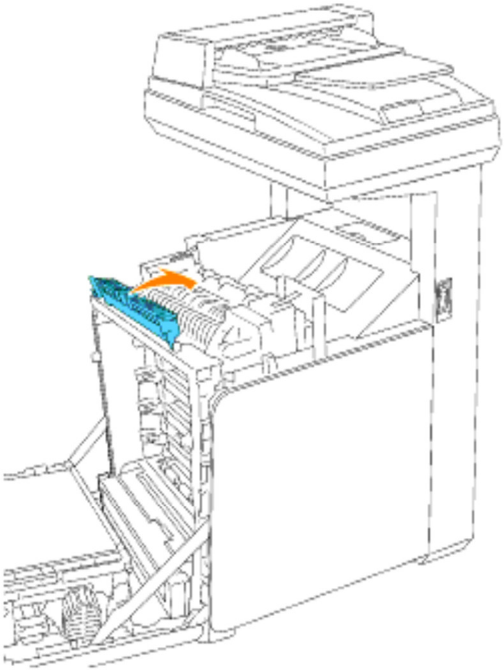


NOTE: Ensure that the fuser connector is firmly seated.

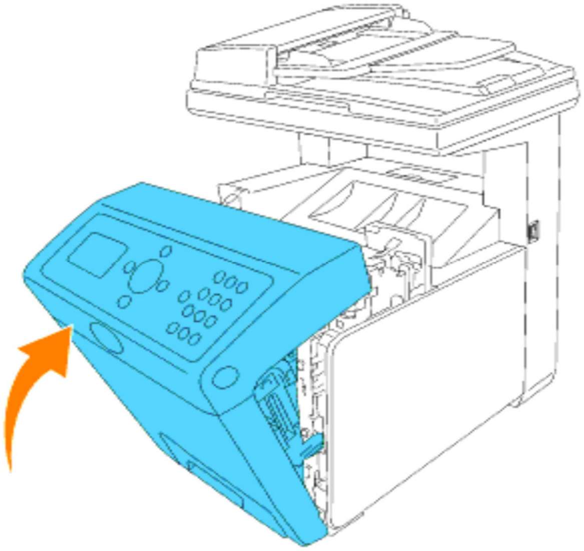
3. Lock both levers at the ends of the fuser unit.



4. Lower the chute gate to its horizontal position.



5. Close the front cover.



Replacing Separator Rollers

There are three separator rollers in the multifunction printer which need to be replaced periodically. One is in the tray and the others are inside the multifunction printer. Basically, all the separator rollers are replaced in the same way as described in this section.

⚠ **CAUTION: To prevent electric shock, always turn off the multifunction printer and disconnect the power cable from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.**

⚠ **CAUTION: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in your *Owner's Manual* or *Product Information Guide*.**

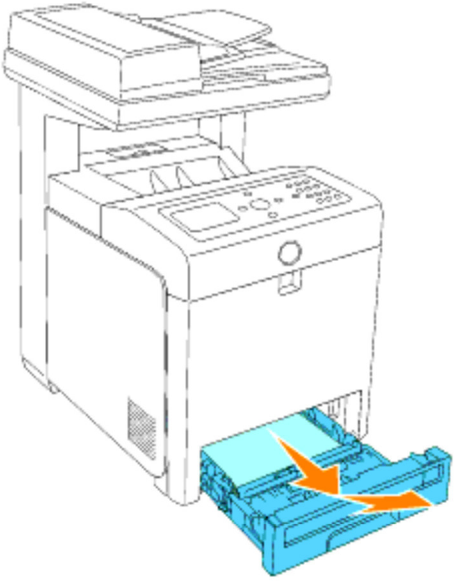
Dell separator rollers are available only through Dell. To order by phone, see "Contacting Dell" in the *Owner's Manual* or in this manual.

Dell recommends Dell separator rollers for your multifunction printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

Removing the Used Separator Roller in Tray

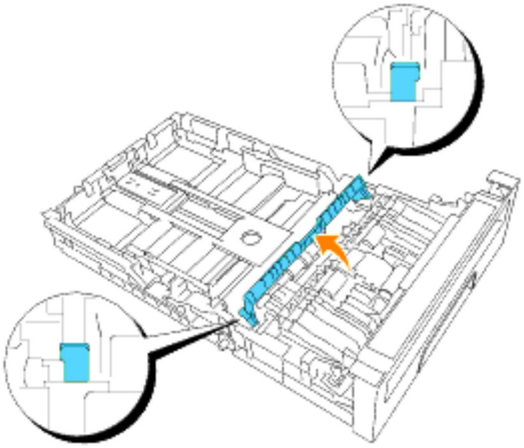
NOTE: Remove any print jobs from the tray before pulling the tray out of the multifunction printer.

1. Pull the tray out of the multifunction printer until it stops. Hold the tray with both hands, lift the front slightly, and remove it from the multifunction printer.

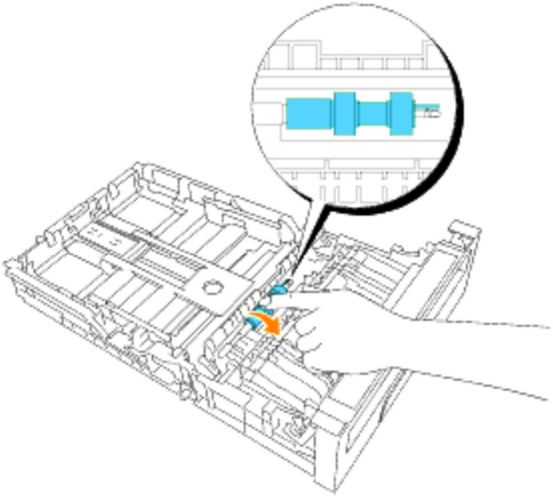


NOTE: Remove all paper from the tray before opening the separator roller cover.

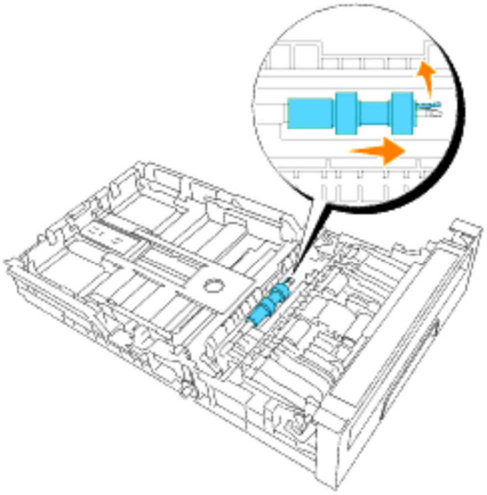
2. Push back the handles on each side of the separator roller cover as shown in the following illustration and open the cover.



3. Turn the separator roller until the roller hook can be seen.

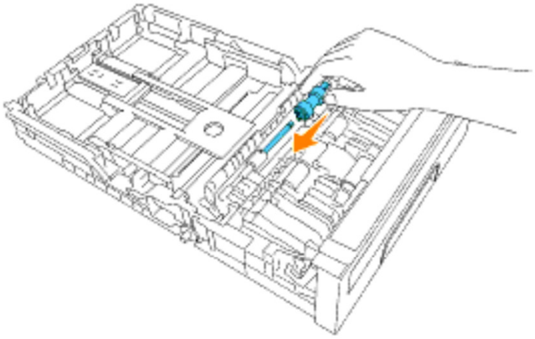


4. Pull the separator roller hook out of the groove in the axle, and then slide the separator roller to the right.

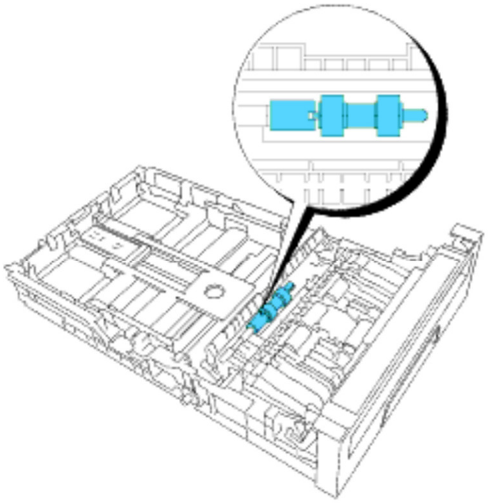


Installing the New Separator Roller in the Tray

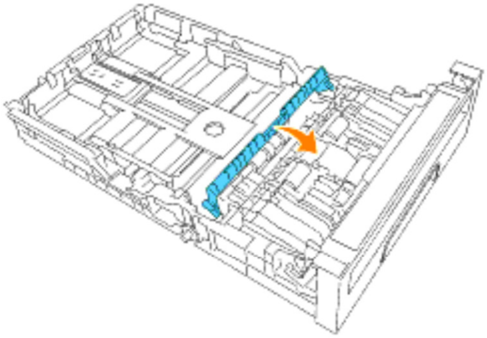
1. Align the hole of the new separator roller with the axle.



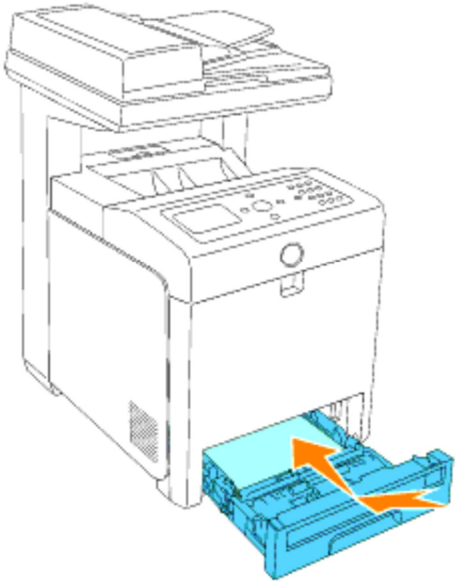
2. Slide the separator roller along the axle so the protrusions fit completely into the slots and the roller hook reseats into the groove on the axle.



3. Close the separator roller cover until both sides click into place.



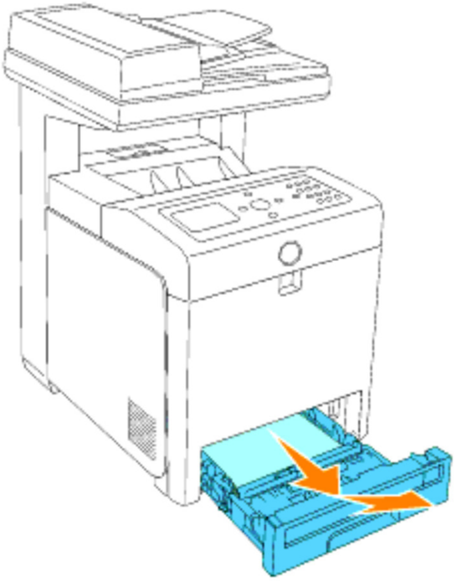
4. Load paper into the tray and replace it into the multifunction printer.



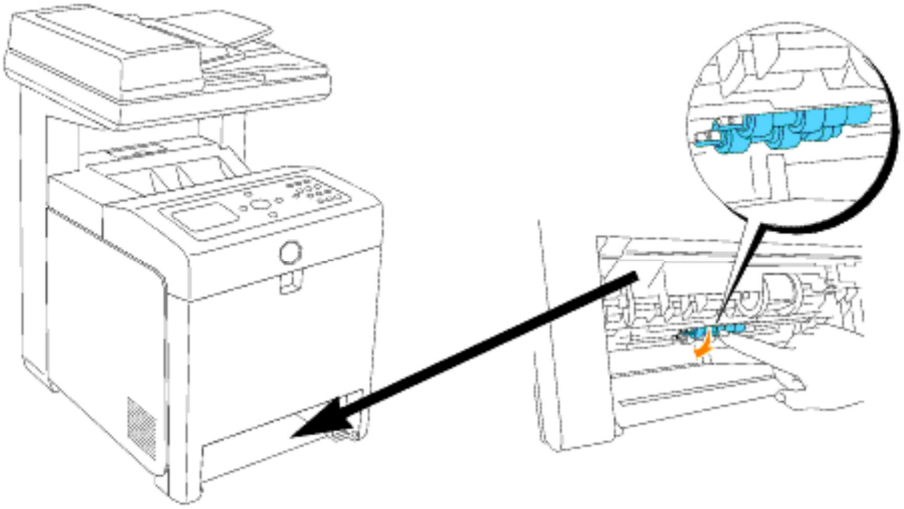
Removing the Used Separator Roller Inside the Multifunction

Printer

1. Pull the tray out of the multifunction printer until it stops. Hold the tray with both hands, lift the front slightly, and remove it from the multifunction printer.

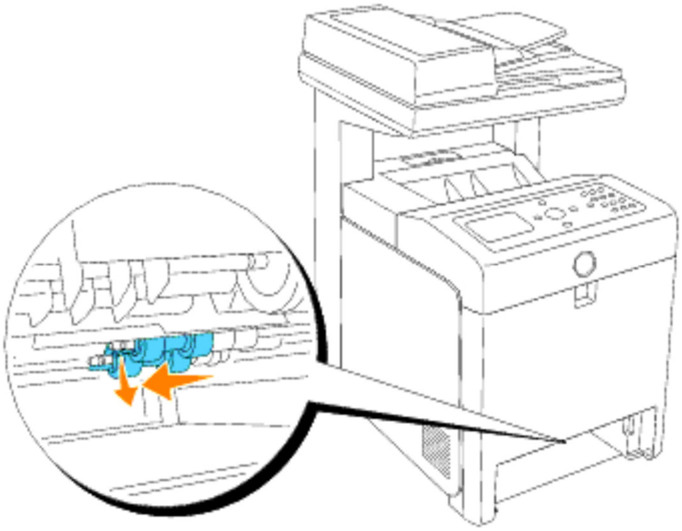


2. Turn the separator roller until the roller hook can be seen.

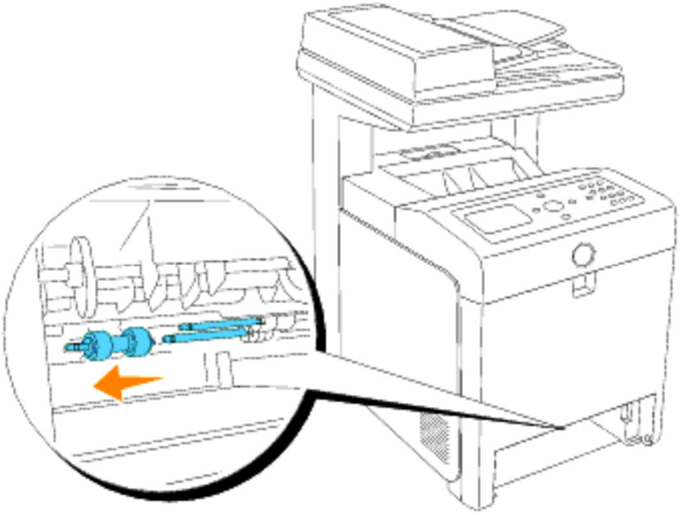


NOTE: The roller is located approximately 165 mm (6.5 in.) inside the machine as measured from the face of the paper tray opening.

3. Pull the separator roller hook out of the groove on the axle, and then slide the separator roller to the left.

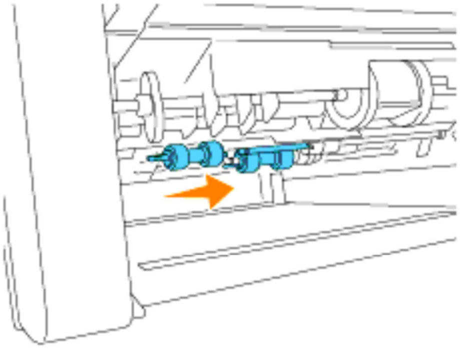


4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to remove the other separator roller from the inside of the multifunction printer.

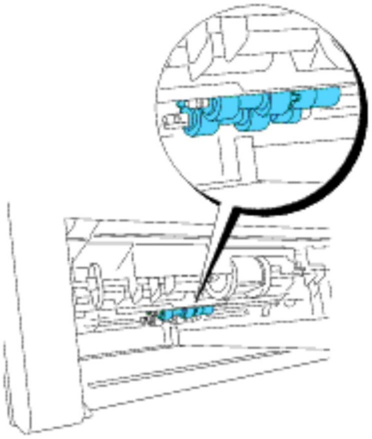


Installing the New Separator Roller Inside the Multifunction Printer

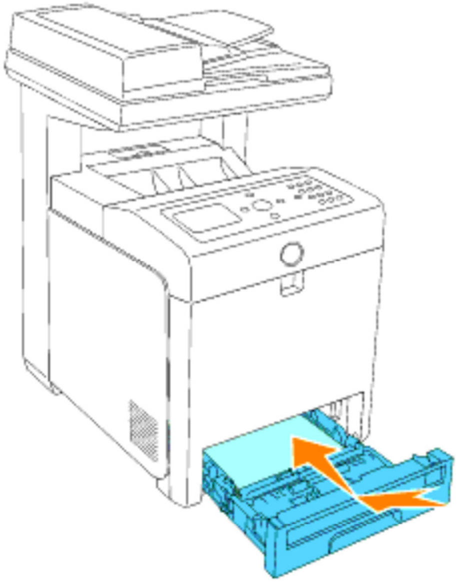
1. Align the hole of the new separator roller with the axle.



2. Slide the separator roller along the axle so the protrusions fit completely into the slots and the roller hook re-seats into the groove on the axle.



3. Replace the tray into the multifunction printer.



Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit

⚠ **CAUTION: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in your *Owner's Manual* or *Product Information Guide*.**

➡ **NOTICE:** Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the transfer belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the transfer belt unit may reduce print quality.

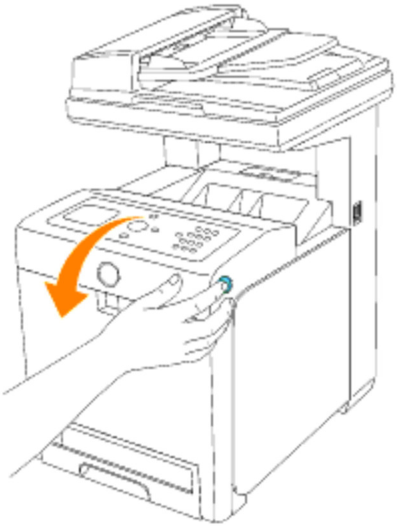
➡ **NOTICE:** To protect the drums of the print cartridges against bright light, close the front cover within five minutes. If the front cover remains open for more than five minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

Dell transfer belt units are available only through Dell. To order by phone, see "Contacting Dell" in the *Owner's Manual* or in this manual. Dell recommends Dell transfer belt units for your multifunction printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

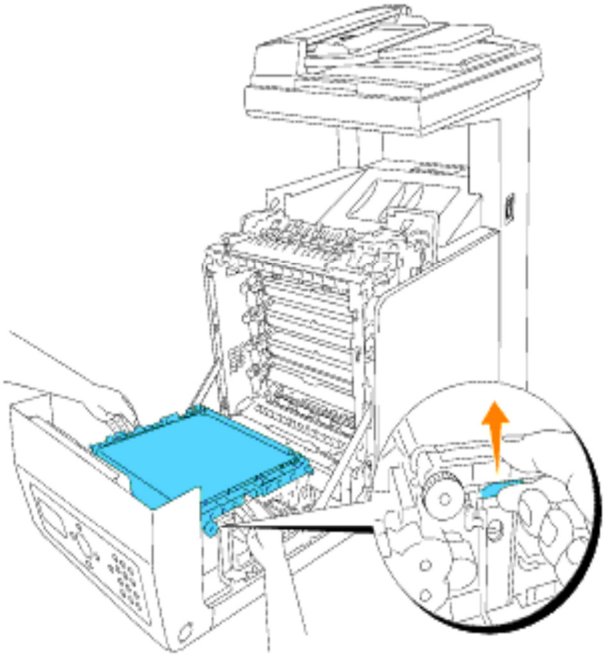
Removing the Used Transfer Belt Unit

NOTE: Remove any print jobs from the output tray, and close the multipurpose feeder cover before opening the front cover.

1. Ensure that the multifunction printer is turned off.
2. Push the button (right side) and open the front cover.

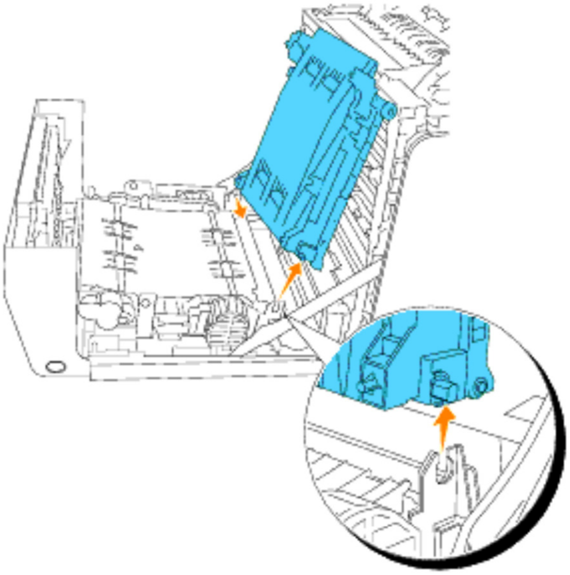


3. Pull up on the belt release levers and rotate the transfer belt unit up as shown in the illustration.



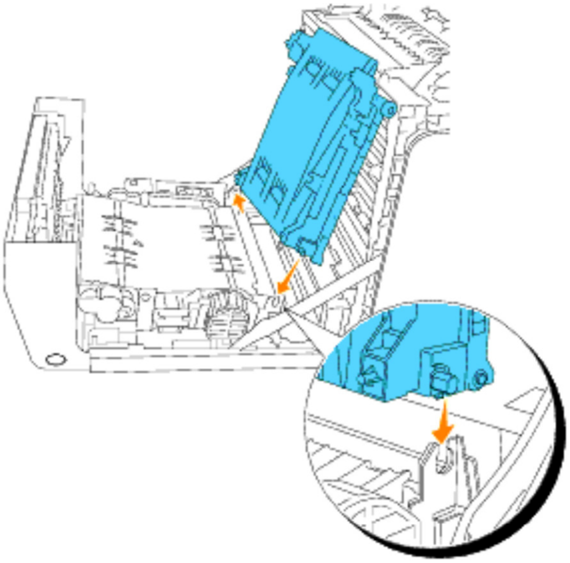
CAUTION: **Do not touch the inside of the multifunction printer. Some parts may be hot. Allow time for the multifunction printer to cool before attempting to remove parts in this area.**

4. Hold both sides of the transfer belt unit with both hands and pull up the left side of the unit until the peg on the left side comes out of the groove. Then, shift the transfer belt unit to the right and remove the unit from the multifunction printer.

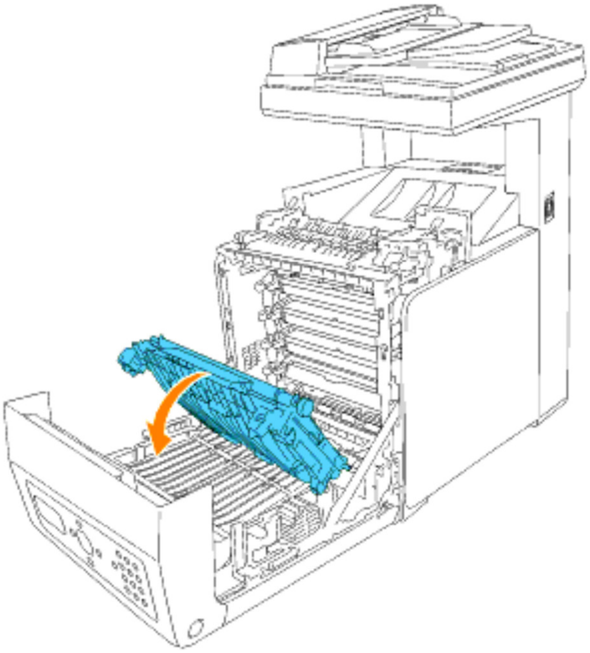


Installing a New Transfer Belt Unit

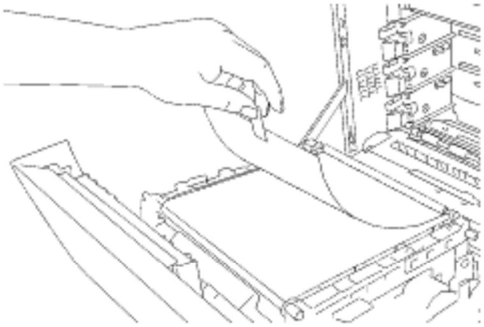
1. Unpack a new transfer belt unit.
2. Insert the left peg into the corresponding left side belt unit hole, then align the right peg with the groove, and then push down on the right side of the transfer belt unit to seat into place.



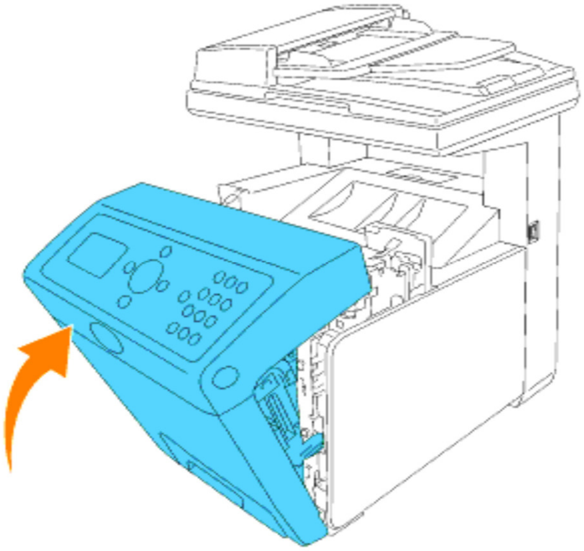
3. Close the transfer belt unit by pulling it down until it clicks.



4. Remove the film cover from the installed transfer belt unit and discard.



5. Close the front cover.



Adjusting Color Registration

To adjust the color registration when you first install the multifunction printer or after moving it to a new location, follow the procedure below. See "Operator Panel" and "Color Reg Adjust" for information about the operator panel.

Printing the Color Registration Chart

Use the operator panel to print the color registration chart.

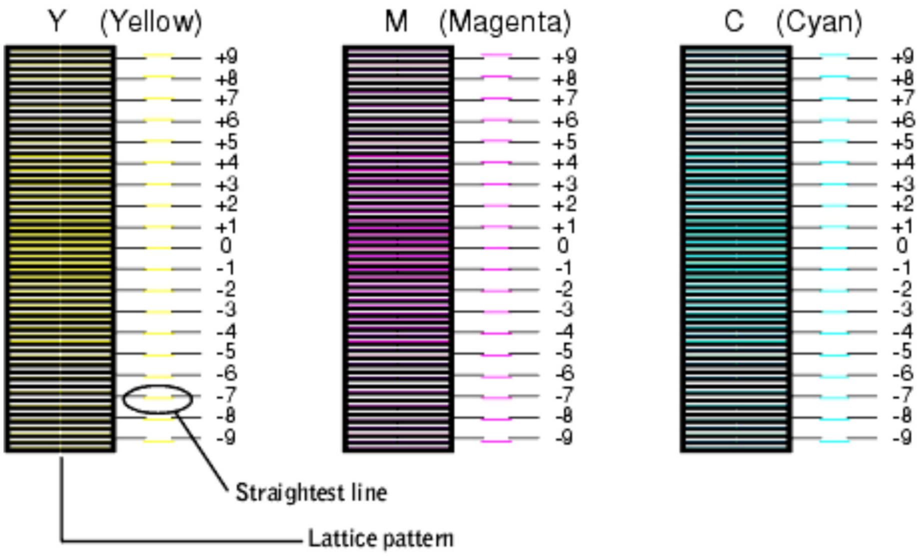
1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Maintenance` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Color Reg Adjust` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Press ▼ until `>ColorRegi Chart` appears, and then press ✓ .

The color registration chart is printed.

Determining Values

From the lines to the right of the **Y** (Yellow), **M** (Magenta), and **C** (Cyan) pattern, find the values of the straightest lines.

NOTE: You can also use the densest colors of the lattice pattern to find the straightest lines. The colors printed at the highest density are those next to the straightest lines. When 0 is the value nearest the straightest line, you do not need to adjust the color registration. When the value is not 0, follow the procedure outlined in "Entering Values".



Entering Values

Using the operator panel, enter the values that you found in the color registration chart to make adjustments.

1. Press ▼ until `>SETUP` appears, and then press ✓ .
2. Press ▼ until `>Admin Menu` appears, and then press ✓ .
3. Press ▼ until `>Maintenance` appears, and then press ✓ .
4. Press ▼ until `>Color Reg Adjust` appears, and then press ✓ .
5. Press ▼ until `>Enter Number` appears, and then press ✓ .

   The cursor is located at the first digit of the `Enter Number`.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ until you reach the value (for example, `+3`) displayed on the chart.
7. Press ▶ once and move the cursor to the next value.
8. Repeat steps 6 and 7 to enter all of the digits of the `Enter Number`, and then press ✓ .
9. Press ▼ until `>ColorRegi Chart` appears, and then press ✓ .
   The color registration chart is printed with the new values.
10. Color registration adjustment is complete when the straightest **Y** (Yellow), **M** (Magenta), and **C** (Cyan) lines are next to the **0** line.

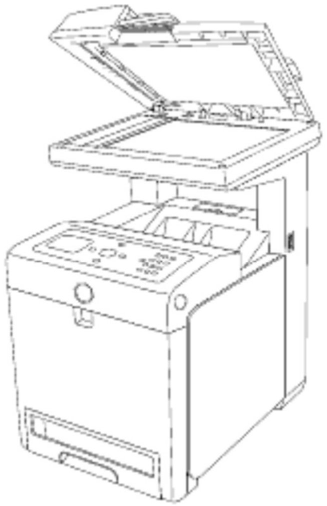
CAUTION: After printing the color registration chart, do not turn off the multifunction printer until the printer motor has stopped running.

NOTE: If **0** is not next to the straightest lines, determine the values and adjust the multifunction printer again.

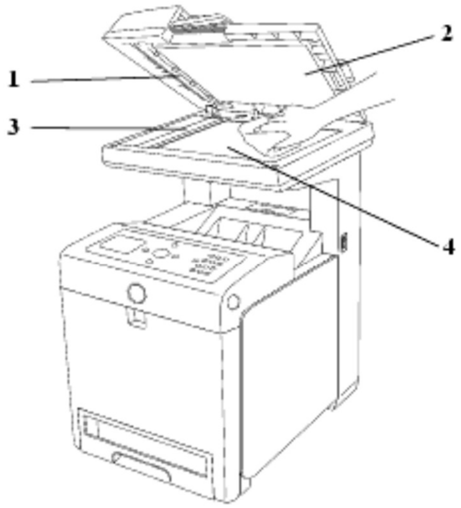
Cleaning the scanner

Keeping the scanner clean helps ensure the best possible copies. Dell recommends cleaning the scanner at the start of each day and during the day, as needed.

1. Slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.
2. Open the document cover.



3. Wipe the surface of the document feeder glass and ADF glass until it is clean and dry.



1	White Sheet **NOTE:** Handle with care.
2	Document Cover
3	ADF Glass
4	Document Feeder Glass

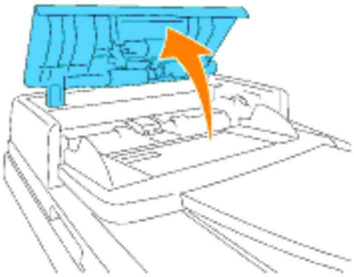
4. Wipe the underside of the white document cover and white sheet until it is clean and dry.

5. Close the document cover.

Cleaning the Roller in the ADF

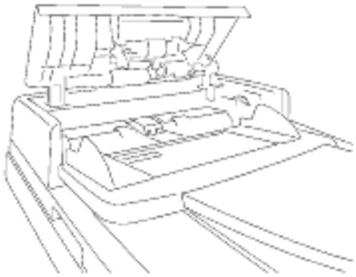
Keeping the two rollers in the ADF clean helps ensure the best possible copies. Dell recommends cleaning the rollers at regular intervals.

1. Open the cover of the ADF.



2. Wipe the roller with a dry soft lint-free cloth or paper towel until it is clean.

   If the rollers get soiled with ink stains, paper from the ADF may also be soiled. In this case, slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with a neutral detergent or water, and then remove the contamination from the roller until it is clean and dry.



Removing Options

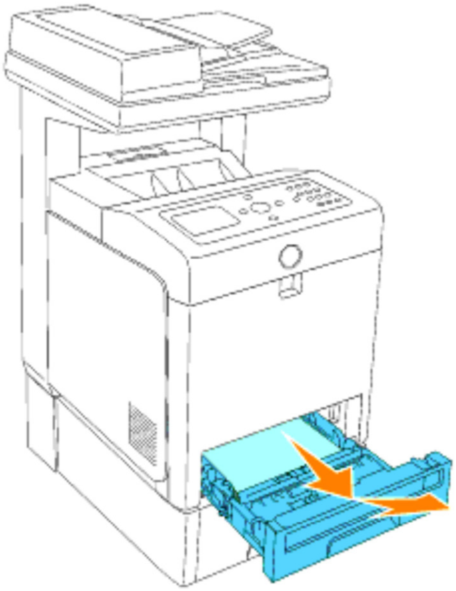
If the printer location needs to change or the multifunction printer and print media handling options need to be shipped to a new location, all print media handling options must be removed from the multifunction printer. For shipping, pack the multifunction printer and print media handling options securely to avoid damage.

- Removing the Optional 550-Sheet Paper Feeder
- Removing the Optional Duplexer
- Removing the Optional Memory Card
- Removing the Optional Multi-Protocol Card
- Removing the Wireless Printer Adapter

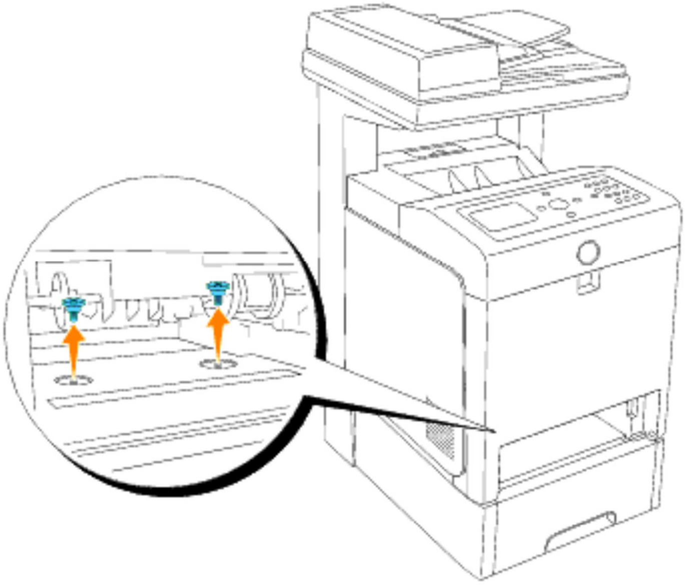
Removing the Optional 550-Sheet Paper Feeder

NOTE: If you are removing the optional 550-sheet paper feeder, be sure to turn off the multifunction printer, unplug the power cable, and disconnect all cables from the back of the multifunction printer before completing these tasks.

1. Turn off the multifunction printer and unplug the printer power cable.
2. Pull the tray out of the multifunction printer until it stops. Hold the tray with both hands, lift the front slightly, and remove it from the multifunction printer.

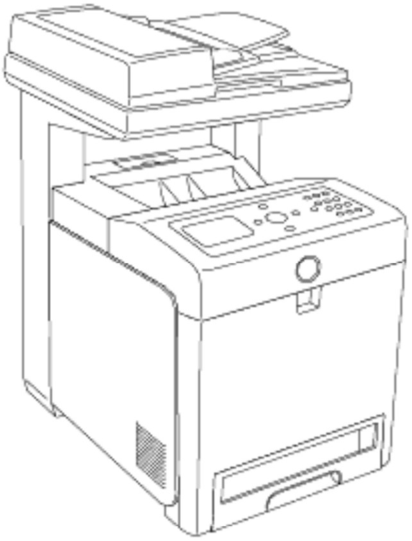


3. Remove the two screws joining the multifunction printer and the optional 550-sheet paper feeder by unscrewing them with a coin or similar object.

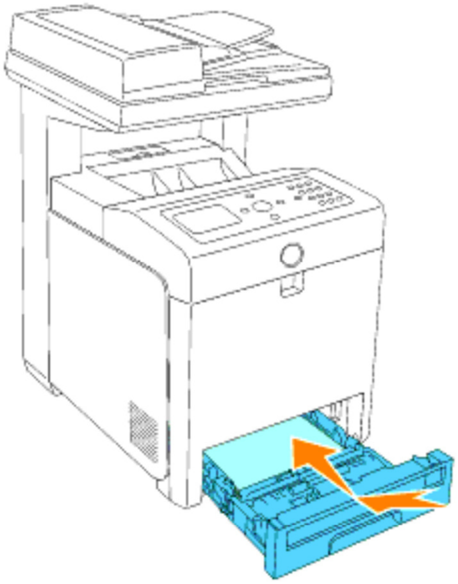


4. Gently lift the multifunction printer off the tray module, and place it on a level surface.

⚠ **CAUTION: To lift the multifunction printer safely, remove the print cartridges and lift it with two people facing the front and back. Never try to lift the multifunction printer while facing its right and left sides.**



5. Insert the tray into the multifunction printer, and push until it stops.

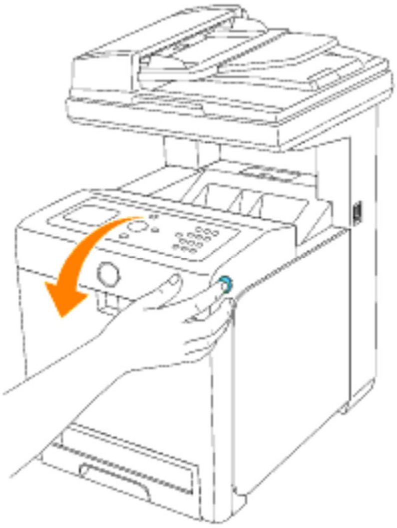


Removing the Optional Duplexer

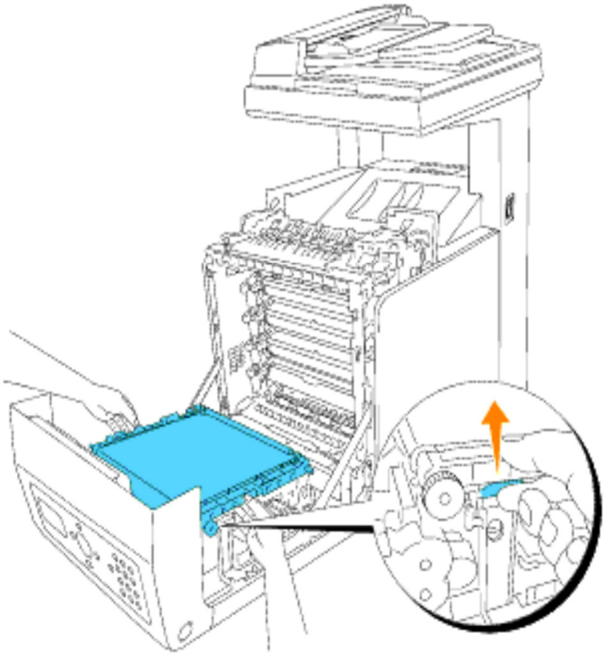
NOTICE: Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the transfer belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the transfer belt unit may reduce print quality.

NOTICE: To protect the drums of the print cartridges against bright light, close the front cover within five minutes. If the front cover remains open for more than five minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

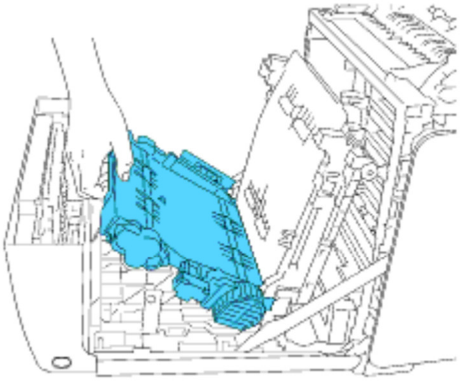
1. Ensure that the multifunction printer is turned off and unplug the power cord from the rear of the multifunction printer.
2. Push the button (right side) and open the front cover.



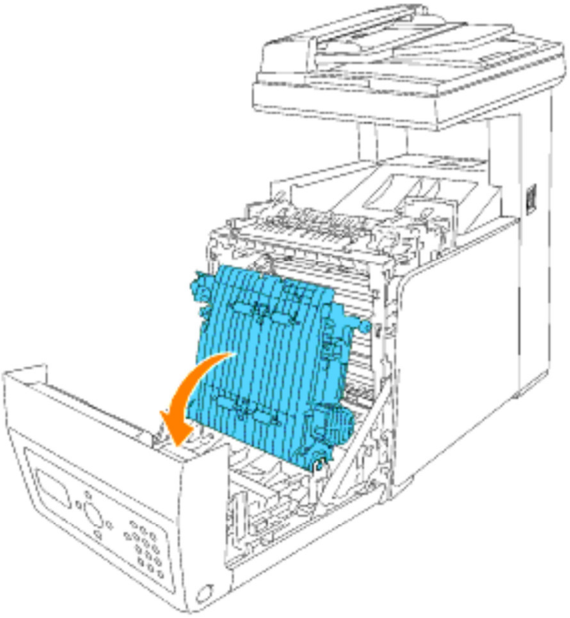
3. Pull up on the belt release levers and rotate the transfer belt unit up as shown in the illustration.



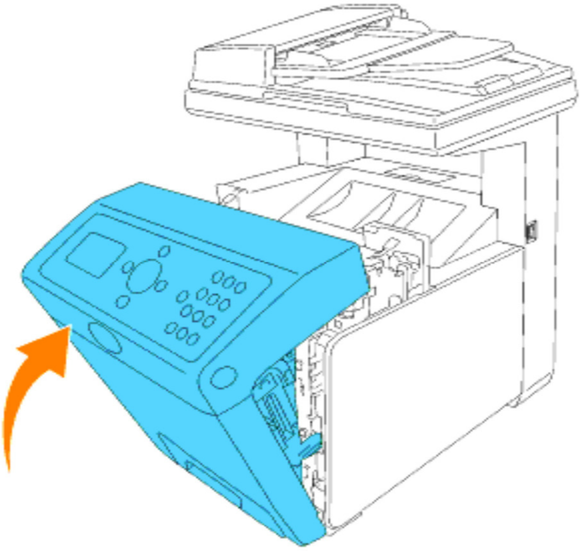
4. Hold the latch of the duplexer as shown in the following illustration and pull out the duplexer from the multifunction printer.



5. Close the transfer belt unit by pulling it down.



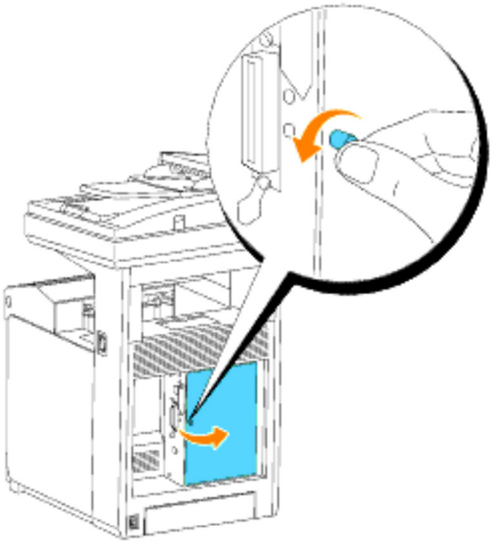
6. Close the front cover.



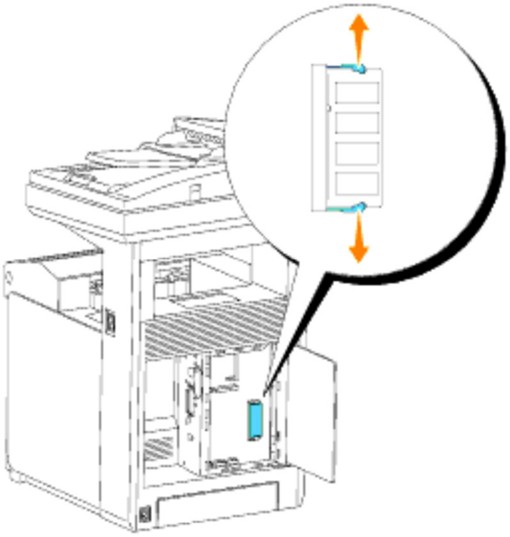
Removing the Optional Memory Card

1. Ensure that the multifunction printer is turned off and unplug all cables including the power cord from the rear of the multifunction printer.

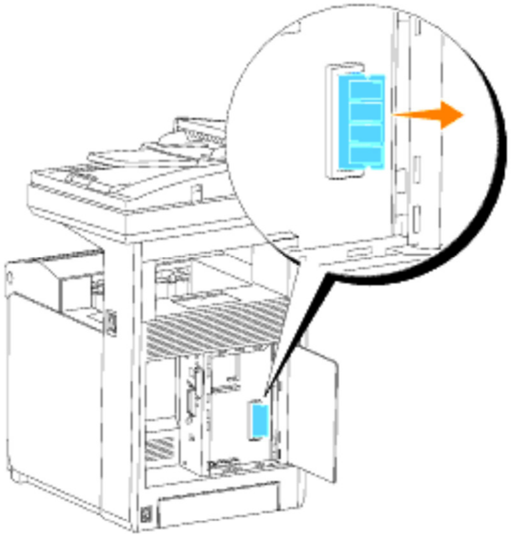
2. Turn the screw on the control board cover gently in a counter-clockwise direction and open the cover.



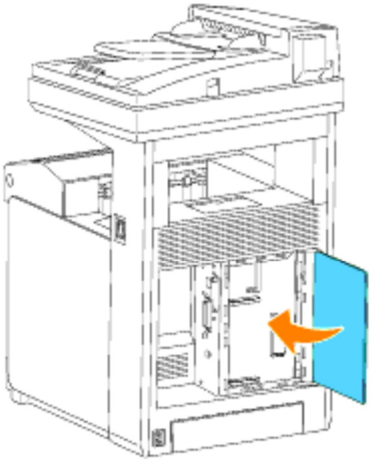
3. Pull the latches on both edges of the socket outward at the same time to raise the memory card up.



4. Hold the memory card and pull it out.



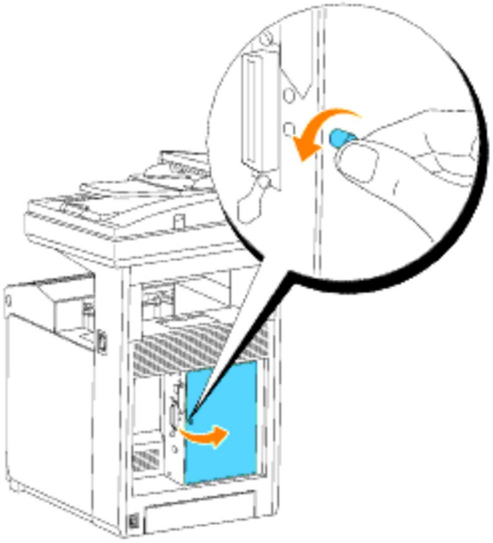
5. Close the control board cover and turn the screw clockwise.



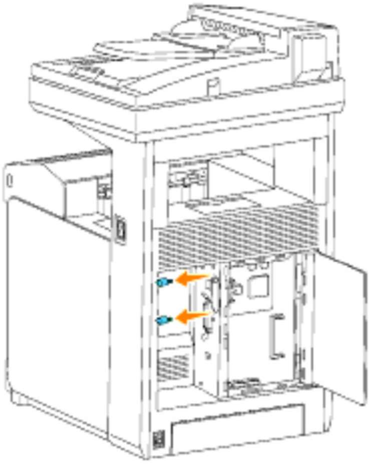
Removing the Optional Multi-Protocol Card

NOTE: If the optional wireless printer adapter is also installed, it must be removed first.

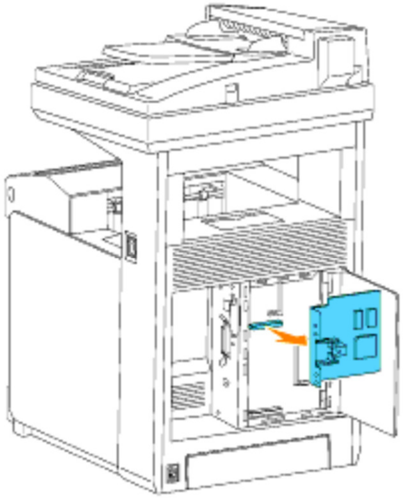
1. Ensure that the multifunction printer is turned off and unplug all cables including the power cord from the rear of the multifunction printer.
2. Turn the screw on the control board cover gently in counter-clockwise direction and open the cover.



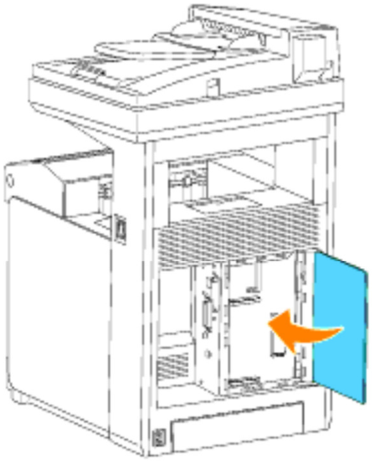
3. Remove the two screws from the multipurpose card on the back side of the control board.



4. Hold the multi-protocol card and remove it from the control board.

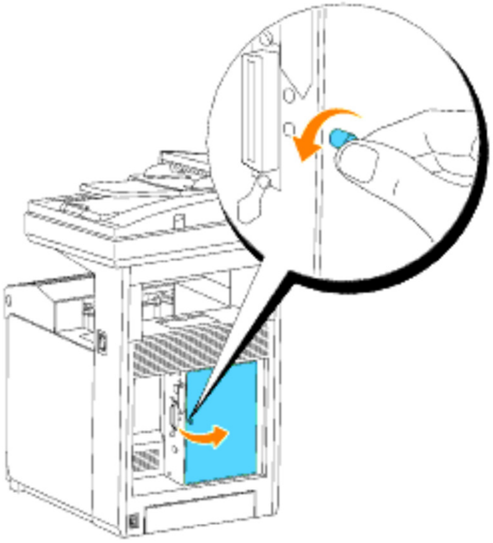


5. Close the control board cover and turn the screw clockwise.

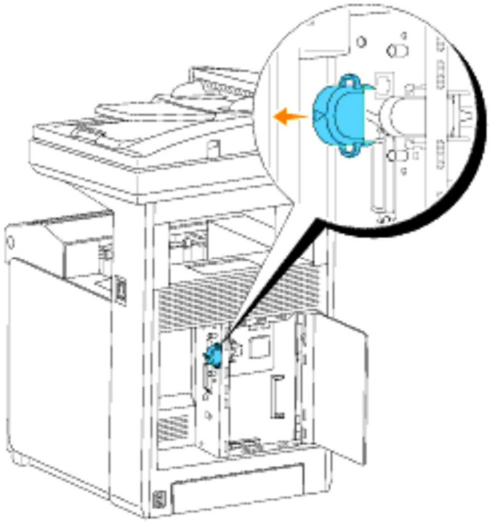


Removing the Wireless Printer Adapter

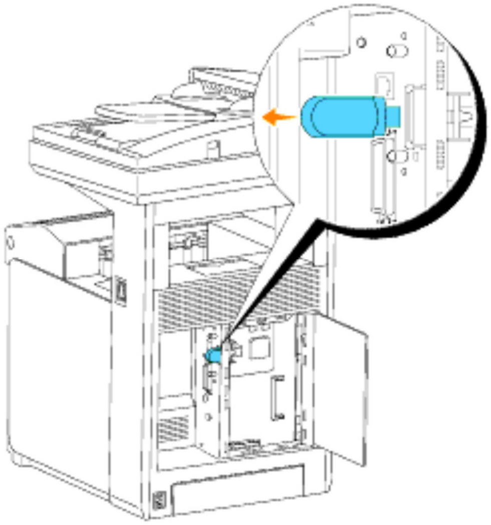
1. Ensure that the multifunction printer is turned off.
2. Turn the screw on the control board cover gently in a counter-clockwise direction and open the cover.



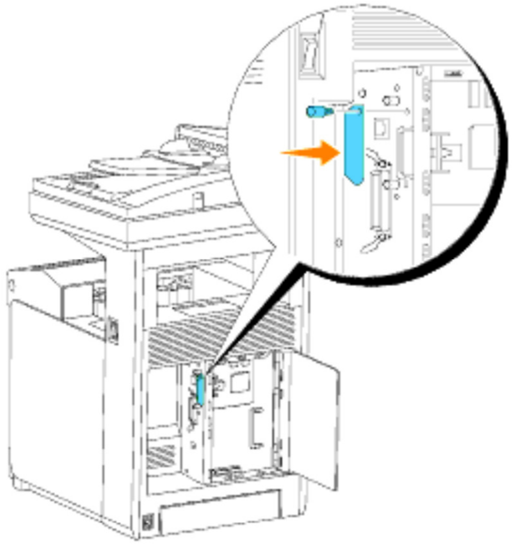
3. Remove the wireless printer adapter cap from the control board by releasing the cap's hooks.



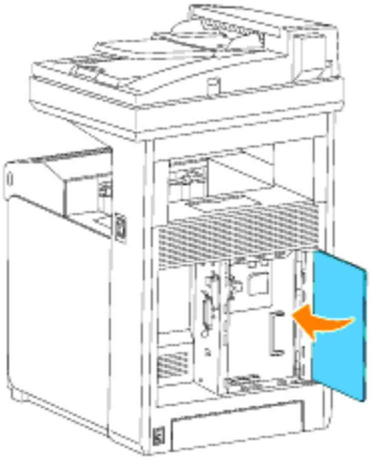
4. Remove the wireless printer adapter from the multifunction printer.



5. Attach the plate by tightening the screw on the back side of the multifunction printer to cover the wireless printer adapter socket.



6. Close the control board cover and turn the screw clockwise.



Printer Specifications

- OS Compatibility
- Power Supply
- Dimensions
- Memory
- Page Description Language (PDL)/Emulation, Operating System, and Interface
- Environmental
- Cables
- Copier Specification
- Scanner Specification
- Facsimile Specifications

OS Compatibility

Your Dell™ Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn is compatible with Windows® (Windows Vista®, Windows® XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise x64 Edition, Windows Server®2008, Windows Server 2008 Enterprise x64 Edition, Windows 2000, Windows NT® 4.0); Mac OS X[3] (10.2.8/10.3.9/10.4.x); Novell®[3] (3.X, 4.X, 5.X, 6, 6.5) but not supported[1]; Linux[3] (RedHat ES 3/4 (English), SuSE 9.2/9.3 (English), TurboLinux 10 Desktop (English)) but not supported[2]; UNIX[3] (RedHat AS 2.1, HP-UX 11.i, Solaris 9/10) (English).

[1] Your Dell Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn is compatible with Microsoft, Novell and Linux operating systems, but Dell technical phone support only supports factory-installed operating systems (Microsoft) for the first 30 days for free. See **http://www1.us.dell.com/content/products/compare.aspx/laser?c=us&cs=555&l=en&s=biz** for more details. The customer will have to purchase technical support from the manufacturer of the operating system in order to get technical assistance beyond 30 days.

[2] If the customer has other operating systems, such as Novell or Linux, and has purchased Gold Technical Support (for more information on Gold Technical Support, see **http://www1.us.dell.com/content/topics/global.aspx/services/en/gts?c=us&cs=555&l=en&s=biz**), the telephone support will be a "best effort" attempt to resolve the operating system issue. If the manufacturer needs to be contacted, the customer must pay an additional fee for that support. The only time that Dell pays for the third party support is when Dell is responsible for the issue. In the case of getting the multifunction printer installed and working, this is configuration and the customer would be responsible for paying.

[3] Mac OS X, Novell, Linux, and UNIX support network scanning and printing only.

Power Supply

Rated Voltage	220-240 VAC	110-127 VAC
Frequency	50/60 Hz	50/60 Hz
Current	5 A	11 A

Dimensions

Height: 730 mm (28.74 in.) Width: 460 mm (18.11 in.) Depth: 520 mm (20.47 in.)

Weight (not including cartridge): 35 kg (77.2 lb)

Memory

Base memory	128 MB
Maximum memory	1152 MB (128+1024 MB)
Connector	200 pin DDR2 SO-DIMM
DIMM Size	256 MB, 512 MB, 1024 MB
Speed	PC2-3200, PC2-4200, PC2-5300

Page Description Language (PDL)/Emulation, Operating System, and Interface

PDL/Emulations	Adobe PostScript 3, PCL 6, PCL5c	
OSes	Microsoft Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise x64 Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 Enterprise x64 Edition, Windows 2000, Windows NT 4.0, UNIX (Solaris 9/10, HP-UX 11.i), Linux (Red Hat ES 3/4, SuSE 9.2/9.3, TurboLinux 10 Desktop), Mac OS X (10.2.8, 10.3.9, 10.4.x)	
Interfaces	Standard local:	USB, IEEE 1284
	Standard network:	10Base-T/100Base-TX Ethernet

	Optional network:	IEEE802.11b/802.11g (Wireless)

MIB Compatibility

A Management Information Base (MIB) is a database containing information about network devices (such as adapters, bridges, routers, or computers). This information helps network administrators manage the network (analyze performance, traffic, errors, and so on). Dell Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn complies with standard industry MIB specifications, allowing the multifunction printer to be recognized and managed by various printer and network management software systems, such as IBM Tivoli, Hewlett-Packard OpenView, CA Unicenter, Hewlett-Packard Web JetAdmin, and so on.

Environmental

Operation

Temperature	5-32°C
Relative humidity	15-85% RH (no condensation)

Print Quality Guarantee

Temperature	10-28°C
Relative humidity	15-85% RH (no condensation) (Temperature should be 28°C or below at 85% RH.)

Storage

Temperature range	-20-40°C (0-104 °F)
Storage humidity range	5-95% RH (no condensation)

Altitude

Operating	Up to 3,100 m (10,000 feet)
Storage	70.9275 Kpa

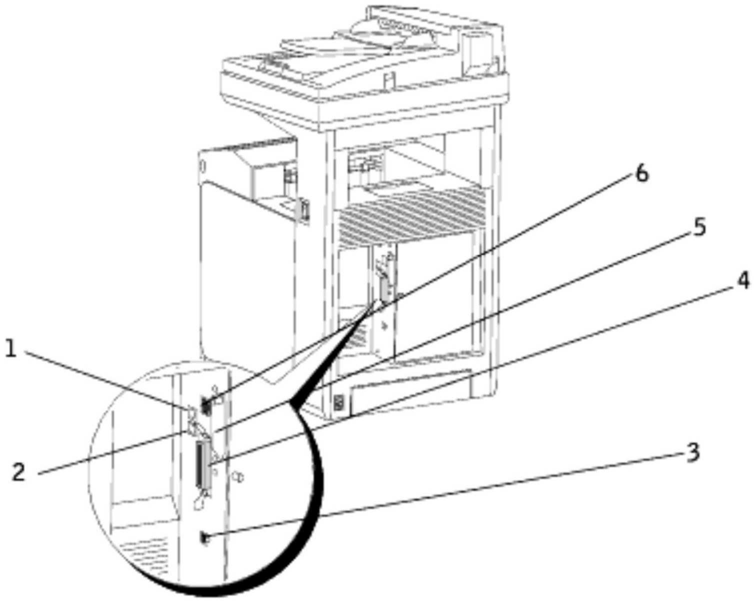
Chemical Emission

Concentration of ozone	0.019 mg/m^3

Cables

Your interconnection cable must meet the following requirements:

	Connection type	Connection specifications and symbols	
1	Wall jack connector		FAX
2	Phone connector		☎
3	USB	USB2.0	
4	Parallel	IEEE 1284	|O|O|
5	Wireless	IEEE802.11b/802.11g	
6	Ethernet	10 Base-T/100 Base-TX	🖧



Copier Specification

Item	Description
Copy Resolution	Optical: 600 x 600 dpi
Copy Speed	Color 17 cpm, Black&White 30 cpm (In case when scanned from document feeder glass, and feed paper from standard tray)
Paper Size	A5, A4, B5, Executive, Letter, Legal 13", Legal 14
Zoom Rate	Document feeder glass: 25% - 400%, ADF: 25% - 400%
Multiple copies	1 - 99 pages
Copy mode (=Original Type)	Text, Text&Photo, Photo, Best
Scanning method	Charge coupled device (CCD) module

Scanner Specification

Item	Description
Compatibility	TWAIN, WIA (Windows Image Acquisition) **NOTE:** WIA is not available for Windows 2000.
Scan Resolution	Optical: 600 x 600 dpi Enhanced: 9,600 x 9,600 dpi (Gray and Color only in TWAIN)
Color bit depth	24 bit (WIA, TWAIN), 48 bit (TWAIN)
Mono bit depth	1 bit for Line art 8 bit for Gray scale
Effective scanning length	Document feeder glass: 297 mm. ADF: 355.6 mm
Effective scanning width	215.9 mm
Scan speed (Text mode)	Monochrome: 469.8 µs/line (300 dpi), 423 µs/line (600 dpi) Color: 939.8 µs/line (8 bit), 1879.6 µs/line (16 bit)

Facsimile Specifications

Compatibility	ITU-T Group 3
Applicable line	Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) or behind PABX
Data coding	MH/MR/MMR/JBIG
Modem speed	33.6 Kbps

Transmission speed	Approx. 3 seconds/page *Transmission time applies to memory transmission of text data with ECM compression using only ITU-T No.1 Chart.
Scanning speed	Document glass: approx. 3 seconds/A4 (at standard fax resolution mode) ADF: approx. 5 seconds/Letter (at standard fax resolution mode), 7.5 seconds/Letter (at fine fax resolution mode)
Maximum document length	Document glass: 297 mm ADF: 356 mm
Paper size	Letter, A4, Legal
Resolution	Standard: 203 x 98 dpi, Fine: 203 x 196 dpi, Super Fine: 406 x 392 dpi
User Memory	4 MB (320 pages)
Halftone	256 levels

Safety and Regulatory Information

- Safety Information
- Regulatory Information
- Noise Emissions Levels
- Laser Notice
- Energy Star
- MSDS Materials for Dell Printer
- Telecommunication Line Cord
- When Using the Telephone Equipment

Safety Information

CAUTION: Read and follow all safety instructions in your *Owner's Manual* or *Product Information Guide* prior to setting up and operating your printer.

Regulatory Information

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Compliance Information Statement (US Only)

The Dell™Multifunction Color Laser Printer has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Class B limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

- Consult your point of purchase or service representative for additional suggestions.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

NOTE: To assure compliance with FCC regulations on electromagnetic interference for a Class A computing device, use a properly shielded and grounded CABLE. Use of a substitute cable not properly shielded and grounded may result in a violation of FCC regulations.

FCC Identification Information

The following information is provided on the device or devices covered in this document in compliance with FCC regulations:

- Model number: Dell™ Multifunction Color Laser Printer
- Company name:

Dell Inc.
One Dell Way
Round Rock, Texas 78682 USA
512-338-4400

FCC Information

This device, IEEE 802.11g Wireless LAN USB Adapter, complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received; including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Warning: Changes or modifications to this unit not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user authority to operate the equipment.

Tested to comply with FCC standard. FOR HOME OR OFFICE USE.

FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement:

1. This equipment complies with FCC RF radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment, under 47 CFR 2.1093 paragraph (d)(2).
2. This Transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

The **IEEE 802.11g Wireless LAN USB Adapter** has been tested to the FCC exposure requirements (Specific Absorbtion Rate).

Industry Canada Compliance Statement

This Class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations.

Avis de Conformité aux Normes de l'industrie du Canada

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B respecte toutes les exigences du Règlement sur le matériel brouilleur du Canada.

European Community (EC) Directives Conformity

This product has been determined to be in compliance with 73/23/EEC (Low Voltage Directive), 89/336/EEC (EMC Directive), and amendments of the European Union.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

CE Notice (European Union)

Marking by the symbol CE indicates compliance of this Dell printer to the EMC Directive and the Low Voltage Directive of the European Union. Such marking is indicative that this Dell system meets the following technical standards:

- EN 55022 — *Information Technology Equipment — Radio Disturbance Characteristics — Limits and Methods of Measurement*.
- EN 55024 — *Information Technology Equipment - Immunity Characteristics - Limits and Methods of Measurement*.
- EN 61000-3-2 — *Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) - Part 3: Limits - Section 2: Limits for Harmonic Current Emissions (Equipment Input Current Up to and Including 16 A Per Phase)*.
- EN 61000-3-3 — *Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) - Part 3: Limits - Section 3: Limitation of Voltage Fluctuations and Flicker in Low-Voltage Supply Systems for Equipment With Rated Current Up to and Including 16 A*.
- EN 60950 — *Safety of Information Technology Equipment*.

NOTE: EN 55022 emissions requirements provide for two classifications:

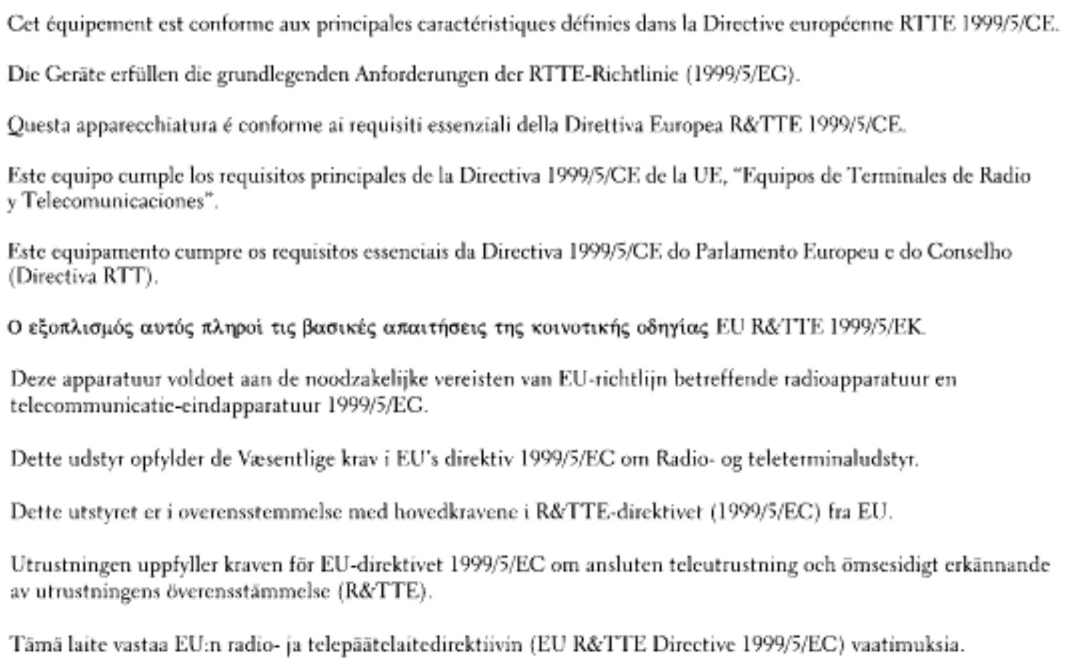
- Class B is for typical domestic areas.

This Dell device is classified for use in a typical Class B domestic environment.

A *Declaration of Conformity* in accordance with the preceding directives and standards has been made and is on file at Dell Inc. Products Europe BV, Limerick, Ireland.

CE Mark Notice

This equipment complies with the essential requirements of the European Union Directive 1999/5/EC.



Cet équipement est conforme aux principales caractéristiques définies dans la Directive européenne RTTE 1999/5/CE.

Die Geräte erfüllen die grundlegenden Anforderungen der RTTE-Richtlinie (1999/5/EG).

Questa apparecchiatura é conforme ai requisiti essenziali della Direttiva Europea R&TTE 1999/5/CE.

Este equipo cumple los requisitos principales de la Directiva 1999/5/CE de la UE, "Equipos de Terminales de Radio y Telecomunicaciones".

Este equipamento cumpre os requisitos essenciais da Directiva 1999/5/CE do Parlamento Europeu e do Conselho (Directiva RTT).

Ο εξοπλισμός αυτός πληροί τις βασικές απαιτήσεις της κοινοτικής οδηγίας EU R&TTE 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Deze apparatuur voldoet aan de noodzakelijke vereisten van EU-richtlijn betreffende radioapparatuur en telecommunicatie-eindapparatuur 1999/5/EG.

Dette udstyr opfylder de Væsentlige krav i EU's direktiv 1999/5/EC om Radio- og teleterminaludstyr.

Dette utstyret er i overensstemmelse med hovedkravene i R&TTE-direktivet (1999/5/EC) fra EU.

Utrustningen uppfyller kraven för EU-direktivet 1999/5/EC om ansluten teleutrustning och ömsesidigt erkännande av utrustningens överensstämmelse (R&TTE).

Tämä laite vastaa EU:n radio- ja telepäätelaitedirektiivin (EU R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC) vaatimuksia.

Información NOM (únicamente para México)

La información siguiente se proporciona en el dispositivo o en los dispositivos descritos en este documento, en cumplimiento con los requisitos de la Norma Oficial Mexicana (NOM):

Exportador:	Dell Inc. One Dell Way Round Rock, TX 78682
Importador:	Dell Computer de México, S.A. de C.V. Paseo de la Reforma 2620 - 11° Piso Col. Lomas Altas 11950 México, D.F.
Enviar a:	Dell Computer de México, S.A. de C.V. al Cuidado de Kuehne & Nagel de México S. de R.L. Avenida Soles No. 55 Col. Peñon de los Baños 15520 México, D.F.
Número del modelo:	Dell Multifunction Color Laser Printer 3115cn
Tensión de alimentación:	110-127 VAC
Frecuencia:	50/60 Hz
Consumo de corriente:	11 A

Noise Emissions Levels

The following measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 and reported in conformance with ISO 9296.

1-meter average sound power level, B	
Printing	Without option: 6.3B
	With full option: 6.8B
Idling	4B

Laser Notice

The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of 21CFR, Chapter 1, Subchapter J for Class I (1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class I laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1.

Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The printer contains internally a Class IIIb (3b) laser that is nominally a 5 milliwatt gallium arsenide laser operating in the wavelength region of 770-795 nanometers. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation above a Class I level during normal operation, user maintenance, or prescribed service condition.

Energy Star

ENERGY STAR® Compliance

Any Dell product bearing the ENERGY STAR® emblem on the product or on a start-up screen is certified to comply with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) ENERGY STAR® requirements as configured when shipped by Dell.

ENERGY STAR® Emblem

The EPA's ENERGY STAR® program is a joint effort between the EPA and manufacturers to reduce air pollution by promoting energy-efficient products.

You can help reduce electricity usage and its side effects by turning off your product when it is not in use for extended periods of time, particularly at night and on weekends.

MSDS Materials for Dell Printer

All MSDS materials for Dell Printers can be found at the following URL:
http://www1.us.dell.com/content/topics/global.aspx/corp/environment/en/prod_design?c=us&l=en&s=corp&~section=001

Telecommunication Line Cord

⚠ **CAUTION: To reduce the risk of fire, use only No. 26 AWG or larger telecommunication line cord.**

When Using the Telephone Equipment

When using your telephone equipment, basic safety precautions should always be followed to reduce the risk of fire, electric shock and injury to persons, including the following:

- Do not use this product near a bath tub, wash bowl, kitchen sink or laundry tub, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Avoid using a telephone during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.

- Do not use the telephone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.
- Use only the power cord indicated in this manual.

Appendix

- Dell Technical Support Policy
- Contacting Dell
- Warranty and Return Policy

Dell Technical Support Policy

Technician-assisted technical support requires the cooperation and participation of the customer in the troubleshooting process and provides for restoration of the operating system, software program and hardware drivers to the original default configuration as shipped from Dell, as well as the verification of appropriate functionality of the printer and all Dell-installed hardware. In addition to this technician assisted technical support, online technical support is available at Dell Support. Additional technical support options may be available for purchase.

Dell provides limited technical support for the printer and any Dell-installed software and peripherals. Support for third-party software and peripherals is provided by the original manufacturer, including those purchased and/or installed through Software & Peripherals (DellWare), ReadyWare, and Custom Factory Integration (CFI/DellPlus).

Contacting Dell

You can access Dell Support at **http://www.support.dell.com/**. Select your region on the top page, and fill in the requested details to access help tools and information.

You can contact Dell electronically using the following addresses:

- **World Wide Web**
  http://www.dell.com/
  http://www.dell.com/ap/ (for Asian/Pacific countries only)
  http://www.euro.dell.com (for Europe only)
  http://www.dell.com/la/ (for Latin American countries)

- **Anonymous file transfer protocol (FTP)**
  ftp://ftp.dell.com/
  Log in as user: anonymous, and use your email address as your password.

- **Electronic Support Service**
  mobile_support@us.dell.com
  support@us.dell.com
  apsupport@dell.com (for Asian/Pacific countries only)
  support.euro.dell.com (for Europe only)

- **Electronic Quote Service**
  apmarketing@dell.com (for Asian/Pacific countries only)

- **Electronic Information Service**

Warranty and Return Policy

Dell Computer Corporation ("Dell") manufactures its hardware products from parts and components that are new or equivalent to new in accordance with industry-standard practices. For information about the Dell warranty for your printer, see the *Owner's Manual* or *Product Information Guide*.